Е. В. Зверховская, Е. Ф. Косиченко

ПРАКТИКУМ ПО ГРАММАТИКЕ АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

Рекомендовано Учебно-методическим объединением
по образованию в области лингвистики
Министерства образования и науки Российской Федерации
в качестве учебного пособия для студентов,
обучающихся по направлению
подготовки бакалавров «Лингвистика»

БХВ-Петербург
2016

УДК 372.881.111.1
ББК 81.2 Англ
З-43

З-43 **Зверховская Е. В.**
Практикум по грамматике английского языка. Учеб. пособие / Е. В. Зверховская, Е. Ф. Косиченко. — СПб.: БХВ-Петербург, 2016. — 688 с.

ISBN 978-5-9775-3578-6

Пособие представляет собой справочник по грамматике английского языка и одновременно сборник упражнений с ключами, содержит 25 тематических разделов. Левая сторона разворота книги содержит правила, изложенные в схемах и таблицах, а также упражнения на отработку соответствующих правил, а правая сторона представлена примерами, иллюстрирующими использование правил, и ключами к упражнениям. В пособии использованы преимущества современного метода опоры на родной язык. Материал может применяться как для групповых, так и для индивидуальных занятий.

Для студентов вузов, лицеев и колледжей, слушателей курсов, а также лиц, самостоятельно изучающих английский язык

УДК 372.881.111.1
ББК 81.2 Англ

РЕЦЕНЗЕНТЫ:

Е. В. Воевода, д-р пед. наук, доцент, проф. кафедры английского языка №2, зав.кафедрой педагогики и психологии МГИМО

А. В. Бондаренко, канд. филол. наук, доцент кафедры лексикологии английского языка МГЛУ

Группа подготовки издания:

Главный редактор	Екатерина Кондукова
Зам. гл. редактора	Людмила Еремеевская
Зав. редакцией	Екатерина Капалыгина
Компьютерная верстка	Людмилы Гауль
Корректор	Елена Толстякова
Дизайн обложки	Марины Дамбиевой

Подписано в печать 31.07.15.
Формат 60x90$^{1}/_{16}$. Печать офсетная. Усл. печ. л. 43.
Тираж 1500 экз. Заказ №

«БХВ-Петербург», 191036, Санкт-Петербург, Гончарная ул., 20
Первая Академическая типография «Наука»
199034, Санкт-Петербург, 9 линия, 12/28

ISBN 978-5-9775-3578-6

© Зверховская Е. В., Косиченко Е. Ф., 2004, 2016
© ООО «БХВ-Петербург», 2016

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Предлагаемое пособие по грамматике английского языка является одновременно кратким систематическим справочником, содержащим четкие объяснения правил употребления грамматики, и сборником упражнений.

Особенностью книги является ее структура, в соответствии с которой левая сторона разворота содержит правила и упражнения, а правая — примеры и ключи к упражнениям. Основополагающим принципом построения книги выступает опора на родной язык, что делает работу с грамматикой более эффективной и предупреждает возникновение типичных ошибок.

Начало каждого раздела предваряют таблицы, в которых схематично изложены основные положения соответствующей грамматической темы, что дает возможность учащимся повторить правило, прежде чем приступать к выполнению упражнений. Параллельно таблицам на правом развороте книги даны примеры применения этого правила.

По аналогии с теоретическим материалом, практические упражнения и ключи к ним даны параллельно друг к другу, что упрощает работу с книгой и делает ее полезной для аудиторной и самостоятельной работы.

В конце крупных разделов помещен урок на повторение, содержащий упражнения повышенной трудности, которые могут быть использованы для закрепления изученных тем и контроля. Таким образом, структура пособия позволит не только повторить изученный ранее грамматический материал, приобрести необходимые умения и навыки в области английской грамматики, но и оценить уровень сформированности грамматической компетенции учащихся. В плане преподавания пособие также может быть полезным при подготовке контрольных и самостоятельных работ.

Лексическое наполнение упражнений позволяет расширить словарный запас и использовать предлагаемые к изучению грамматические конструкции в ситуациях реального общения.

Книга четко организована, содержит ясные и наглядные объяснения и может быть использована как на уроке английского языка, так и для самостоятельной работы.

В издании использованы материалы книги авторов «Секреты английской грамматики».

CONTENTS

UNIT 1 TYPES OF QUESTION 18

1.1 The General Question 18
- *Are you…?* 18
- *Does he…?* 18
- *Have got — Have* 20

1.2 The Negative-Interrogative Sentence 26
1.3 The Alternative Question 28
1.4 The Disjunctive Question 32
1.5 The Special Question 38
- *Questions to the subject* 38
- *Questions to the object* 40
- *Questions with prepositions* 42
- *Questions to other members of the sentence* 46

1.6 The Indirect Question 52
1.7 Question with **Do you think** 58

UNIT 2 THE PLURAL OF NOUNS. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *THIS* (*THESE*), *THAT* (*THOSE*) 62

2.1 Nouns ending with **-s**, **ss**, **sh**, **ch**, **x**, **z** 62
2.2 Nouns ending with **-o** 62
2.3 Nouns ending with **-y** 64
2.4 Nouns ending with **-f**, **fe** 64
2.5 Compound nouns 66

UNIT 3 THE POSSESSIVE CASE 76

3.1 The Possessive Case with animate nouns 76
3.2 The Possessive Case with inanimate nouns 78
3.3 Double formation of the Possessive Case 78
3.4 The Possessive Case with compound nouns 78

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

УРОК 1 ВИДЫ ВОПРОСОВ 19

1.1 Общий вопрос 19
- *Are you…?* 19
- *Does he…?* 19
- *Have got — Have* 21

1.2 Отрицательно-вопросительное предложение 27
1.3 Альтернативный вопрос 29
1.4 Разделительный вопрос 33
1.5 Специальный вопрос 39
- *Вопросы к подлежащему* 39
- *Вопросы к дополнению* 41
- *Предложные вопросы* 43
- *Вопросы к другим членам предложения* 47

1.6 Косвенный вопрос 53
1.7 Вопросы с **Do you think** 59

УРОК 2 МНОЖЕСТВЕННОЕ ЧИСЛО СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНЫХ. УКАЗАТЕЛЬНЫЕ МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ *ЭТОТ* (*ЭТИ*), *ТОТ* (*ТЕ*) 63

2.1 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на -s, ss, sh, ch, x, z 63
2.2 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на -o 63
2.3 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на -y 65
2.4 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на -f, fe 65
2.5 Сложные существительные 67

УРОК 3 ПРИТЯЖАТЕЛЬНЫЙ ПАДЕЖ 77

3.1 Притяжательный падеж с одушевленными существительными 77
3.2 Притяжательный падеж с неодушевленными существительными 79
3.3 Двойное образование притяжательного падежа 79
3.4 Притяжательный падеж со сложными существительными 79

UNIT 4 PRONOUNS 84

4.1 Personal Pronouns 84
4.2 Possessive Pronouns 86
4.3 The Absolute form of Possessive Pronouns 88
4.4 Pronoun **it** 90
4.5 Reflective Pronouns 92

UNIT 5 MUCH/MANY; (A) LITTLE / (A) FEW 98

5.1 The use with countable and uncountable nouns 98
5.2 The use in different types of sentences 98
5.3 The difference between **little / a little**; **few / a few** 100

UNIT 6 THERE IS / THERE ARE 106

6.1 The use of the construction with nouns in the singular 106
6.2 The use of the construction with nouns in the plural 106

UNIT 7 INDEFINITE PRONOUNS *SOME, ANY, NO* AND THEIR COMPOUNDS 114

7.1 Indefinite pronouns **some**, **any**, **no** 114
7.2 **Some**, **any**, **no** compounds 118

UNIT 8 ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS 126

8.1 The formation of adverbs from adjectives and their use 126
8.2 The degrees of comparison of adjectives 134
8.3 Comparative constructions 136
8.4 Double comparatives 146
8.5 **The ... the ...** construction 150
◆ *Revision* 154
8.6 The degrees of comparison of adverbs 156

УРОК 4 МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ 85

4.1 Личные местоимения 85
4.2 Притяжательные местоимения 87
4.3 Абсолютная форма притяжательных местоимений 89
4.4 Местоимение **it** 91
4.5 Возвратные местоимения 93

УРОК 5 MUCH/MANY; (A) LITTLE / (A) FEW 99

5.1 Употребление с исчисляемыми и неисчисляемыми существительными 99
5.2 Употребление в разных видах предложений 99
5.3 Разница между **little / a little**; **few / a few** 101

УРОК 6 THERE IS / THERE ARE 107

6.1 Употребление конструкции с существительными в единственном числе 107
6.2 Употребление конструкции с существительными во множественном числе 107

УРОК 7 НЕОПРЕДЕЛЕННЫЕ МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ SOME, ANY, NO И ИХ ПРОИЗВОДНЫЕ 115

7.1 Неопределенные местоимения **some**, **any**, **no** 115
7.2 Производные от **some**, **any**, **no** 119

УРОК 8 ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНЫЕ И НАРЕЧИЯ 127

8.1 Образование наречий от прилагательных и их употребление .. 127
8.2 Степени сравнения прилагательных 135
8.3 Сравнительные конструкции 137
8.4 Двойные степени сравнения 147
8.5 Конструкция **the ... the ...** 151
◆ *Повторение* 155
8.6 Степени сравнения наречий 157

UNIT 9 THE PRONOUN *OTHER* 162

9.1 Pronouns **other**, **another** 162
9.2 Pronoun **another** 162
9.3 Pronoun **others** 164
9.4 Pronoun **the other** 164
9.5 Pronoun **each other** / **one another** 164

UNIT 10 ELSE, MORE, STILL, YET 170

10.1 Else 170
10.2 More 174
10.3 Still 174
10.4 Yet 174

UNIT 11 ALSO, TOO, EITHER. SO ... / NEITHER 180

11.1 Also, too, either 180
11.2 So ... / Neither 182

UNIT 12 CORRELATIVES 188

12.1 neither... nor 188
12.2 either ... or 188
12.3 both ... and 188

UNIT 13 EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES 194

13.1 The formation and the use of exclamatory sentences 194

UNIT 14 REVISION 204

УРОК 9 МЕСТОИМЕНИЕ OTHER 163

9.1 Местоимения **other**, **another** (другой, другие) 163
9.2 Местоимение **another** (еще один, другой) 163
9.3 Местоимение **others** (другие) 165
9.4 Местоимение **the other** (другой, другие) 165
9.5 Местоимение **each other** / **one another** (друг друга) 165

УРОК 10 ELSE, MORE, STILL, YET 171

10.1 Else 171
10.2 More 175
10.3 Still 175
10.4 Yet 175

УРОК 11 *ТОЖЕ*. КРАТКИЕ ПОДТВЕРДИТЕЛЬНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ 181

11.1 *Тоже* 181
11.2 Краткие подтвердительные предложения 183

УРОК 12 КОРРЕЛЯТИВНЫЕ СОЮЗЫ 189

12.1 ни ..., ни 189
12.2 или ..., или 189
12.3 и ..., и 189

УРОК 13 ВОСКЛИЦАТЕЛЬНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ 195

13.1 Образование и употребление восклицательных предложений 195

УРОК 14 ПОВТОРЕНИЕ 205

UNIT 15 TENSE FORMS OF THE VERB 218

15.1 The Present Indefinite Tense 218
15.2 The Present Continuous Tense 226
15.3 The Future Indefinite Tense 236
15.4 The Past Indefinite Tense 246
15.5 The Present Perfect Tense 256
- *The Present Perfect Continuous Tense* 268
- *The Present Perfect Tense — The Past Indefinite Tense* 278

15.6 The Past Continuous Tense 290
15.7 The Past Perfect Tense 300
- *Revision* 306
- *The Past Perfect Continuous Tense* 312
- *Revision* 316

15.8 The Future Continuous Tense 322
15.9 The Future Perfect Tense 326
- *The Future Perfect Continuous Tense* 326

UNIT 16 REVISION 334

UNIT 17 MODAL VERBS 356

17.1 Can, could 356
17.2 May, might 364
17.3 Must, to have to, to be to 366
17.4 Need 376
17.5 Should 380
17.6 Forms of the Infinitive 386
- *The Infinitive with Can* 386
- *The Infinitive with May* 392
- *The Infinitive with Must* 396
- *The Infinitive with Need* 402
- *The Infinitive with Should* 404

УРОК 15 ВИДО-ВРЕМЕННЫЕ ФОРМЫ ГЛАГОЛА 219

15.1 The Present Indefinite Tense 219
15.2 The Present Continuous Tense 227
15.3 The Future Indefinite Tense 237
15.4 The Past Indefinite Tense 247
15.5 The Present Perfect Tense 257
- *The Present Perfect Continuous Tense* 269
- *The Present Perfect Tense — The Past Indefinite Tense* 279

15.6 The Past Continuous Tense 291
15.7 The Past Perfect Tense 301
- *Повторение* 307
- *The Past Perfect Continuous Tense* 313
- *Повторение* 317

15.8 The Future Continuous Tense 323
15.9 The Future Perfect Tense 327
- *The Future Perfect Continuous Tense* 327

УРОК 16 ПОВТОРЕНИЕ 335

УРОК 17 МОДАЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ 357

17.1 Can, could 357
17.2 May, might 365
17.3 Must, to have to, to be to 367
17.4 Need 377
17.5 Should 381
17.6 Формы инфинитива 387
- *Инфинитив с глаголом* ***Can*** 387
- *Инфинитив с глаголом* ***May*** 393
- *Инфинитив с глаголом* ***Must*** 397
- *Инфинитив с глаголом* ***Need*** 403
- *Инфинитив с глаголом* ***Should*** 405

UNIT 18 INDIRECT SPEECH 416

18.1 The main verb is present 416
18.2 The main verb is past 426
18.3 Modal verbs in Indirect Speech 434
- *Revision* 436

UNIT 19 THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES 448

19.1 The actions in the principal and the subordinate clauses are simultaneous 448
19.2 The action in the subordinate clause precedes that of the principal clause 448
19.3 The action in the subordinate clause follows that of the principal clause 448

UNIT 20 THE PASSIVE VOICE 484

20.1 Formation and forms 484
20.2 Constructions 484
- *The Direct Passive* 484
- *The Indirect Passive* 486
- *The Prepositional Passive* 486

UNIT 21 THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD 512

21.1 Clauses of unreal condition 512
- *The construction* ***If I were you*** 514
- *The construction* ***But for*** 514

21.2 Object clauses after ***wish*** 532

УРОК 18 КОСВЕННАЯ РЕЧЬ 417

18.1 Слова автора в настоящем времени 417
18.2 Слова автора в прошедшем времени 427
18.3 Употребление модальных глаголов в косвенной речи 435
- *Повторение* 437

УРОК 19 СОГЛАСОВАНИЕ ВРЕМЕН 449

19.1 Действия в главном и придаточном предложениях одновременны 449
19.2 Действие в придаточном предложении предшествует действию в главном 449
19.3 Действие в придаточном предложении следует за действием в главном 449

УРОК 20 СТРАДАТЕЛЬНЫЙ ЗАЛОГ 485

20.1 Образование и формы 485
20.2 Конструкции 485
- *Прямая пассивная конструкция* 487
- *Косвенная пассивная конструкция* 487
- *Предложная пассивная конструкция* 487

УРОК 21 СОСЛАГАТЕЛЬНОЕ НАКЛОНЕНИЕ 513

21.1 Придаточные нереального условия 513
- *Конструкция* ***If I were you*** 515
- *Конструкция* ***But for*** 515

21.2 Придаточные дополнительные после глагола **wish** 533

UNIT 22 VERBALS 544

22.1 The Gerund 544
- *The Gerund as Subject* 544
- *The forms of the Gerund* 546
- *The Gerund in Use* 548

22.2 The Gerund and the Infinitive 566
- *The forms of the Infinitive* 576

22.3 The Participle 582

UNIT 23 COMPLEX OBJECT 594

23.1 Formation 594

23.2 The use of the construction 594

UNIT 24 THE ARTICLE 610

24.1 The Article with countable nouns 612
- *The Article with countable nouns preceded by numerals* 612
- *Some special cases of the use of the Definite Article with countable nouns* 618
- *More cases of the use of the Definite Article with countable nouns* 618

24.2 The use of Articles with **such** and **what** 620

24.3 The Definite and the Indefinite Article in the constructions with **of** 624

24.4 The generic use of the Definite Article 628

24.5 The use of Articles with names of seasons, times of the day, with the words **lunch**, **dinner**, etc. 632

24.6 The use of Articles with names of substances 634

24.7 The use of Articles with the words **school**, **college**, etc. 638

УРОК 22 НЕЛИЧНЫЕ ФОРМЫ ГЛАГОЛА 545

22.1 Герундий 545
- *Герундий в функции подлежащего* 545
- *Формы герундия* 547
- *Употребление герундия* 549

22.2 Герундий и инфинитив 567
- *Формы инфинитива* 577

23.3 Причастие 583

УРОК 23 СЛОЖНОЕ ДОПОЛНЕНИЕ 595

23.1 Образование 595

23.2 Употребление конструкции 595

УРОК 24 АРТИКЛЬ 611

24.1 Артикль с исчисляемыми существительными 613
- *Артикль с существительными, которым предшествует числительное* 613
- *Особые случаи употребления определенного артикля с исчисляемыми существительными* 619
- *Другие случаи употребления определенного артикля с исчисляемыми существительными* 619

24.2 Употребление артиклей со словами **such** и **what** 621

24.3 Определенный и неопределенный артикли в конструкциях с **of** 625

24.4 Определенный артикль с обобщающим значением 629

24.5 Употребление артиклей с названиями времен года, времени суток, со словами **lunch**, **dinner** и др. 633

24.6 Употребление артиклей с названиями веществ 635

24.7 Употребление артиклей со словами **school**, **college** и др. 639

24.8 The use of Articles with uncountable nouns 644
- *The use of Articles with nouns which are always uncountable* *644*
- *Cases of the use of the Indefinite Article with uncountable nouns* *646*
- *More examples of the use of Articles with uncountable nouns* *646*

24.9 The use of Articles with proper names 652
- *The use of Articles with personal names* *652*
- *The use of Articles with geographical names* *654*
- *The use of Articles with names of streets, airports, etc.* *656*
- *The use of Articles with names of languages* *658*
- *Some special cases of the use of Articles with proper names* *658*

UNIT 25 REVISION 670

24.8 Употребление артиклей с неисчисляемыми существительными ... 645
- *Употребление артиклей с существительными, которые всегда неисчисляемые* *645*
- *Случаи употребления неопределенного артикля с неисчисляемыми существительными* *647*
- *Другие примеры употребления артиклей с неисчисляемыми существительными* *647*

24.9 Употребление артиклей с именами собственными 653
- *Употребление артиклей с именами людей* 653
- *Употребление артиклей с географическими названиями* ..655
- *Употребление артиклей с названиями улиц, аэропортов и др.* 657
- *Употребление артиклей с названиями языков* 659
- *Особые случаи употребления артиклей с именами собственными* 659

УРОК 25 ПОВТОРЕНИЕ 671

UNIT 1 TYPES OF QUESTION

1.1 The General Question
- *Are you…?*
- *Does he…?*
- *Have got — Have*

1.2 The Negative-Interrogative Sentence

1.3 The Alternative Question

1.4 The Disjunctive Question

1.5 The Special Question
- *Questions to the subject*
- *Questions to the object*
- *Questions with prepositions*
- *Questions to other members of the sentence*

1.6 The Indirect Question

1.7 Question with **Do you think**

1.1 The General Question

◆ **Are you…?**

Auxiliary be + subject + (verb) + …

1. Is he at home today? • Yes, he is. (No, he isn't.)
2. Are you ready to leave? • Yes, I'm. (No, I'm not.)
3. Are we on time? • Yes, you are. (No, you aren't.)
4. Am I late? • Yes, you are. (No, you aren't.)
5. Are they busy? • Yes, they are. (No, they aren't.)

◆ **Does he…?**

Auxiliary do/does + subject + verb + …

1. Do you want to go there? • Yes, I do. (No, I don't.)
2. Does George like ice-cream? • Yes, he does. (No, he doesn't.)

УРОК 1 ВИДЫ ВОПРОСОВ

1.1 Общий вопрос
- *Are you…?*
- *Does he…?*
- *Have got — Have*

1.2 Отрицательно-вопросительные предложения

1.3 Альтернативный вопрос

1.4 Разделительный вопрос

1.5 Специальный вопрос
- *Вопросы к подлежащему*
- *Вопросы к дополнению*
- *Предложные вопросы*
- *Вопросы к другим членам предложения*

1.6 Косвенный вопрос

1.7 Вопросы с **Do you think**

1.1 Общий вопрос

◆ **Are you…?**

Вспомогательный глагол be + подлежащее + (сказуемое) + …

1. Он сегодня дома? • Да. (Нет.)
2. Ты готов ехать? • Да. (Нет.)
3. Мы вовремя? • Да. (Нет.)
4. Я опоздал? • Да. (Нет.)
5. Они заняты? • Да. (Нет.)

◆ **Does he…?**

Вспомогательный глагол do/does + подлежащее + сказуемое + …

1. Ты хочешь туда пойти? • Да. (Нет.)
2. Джордж любит мороженое? • Да. (Нет.)

Exercise 1

Ask questions the answers to which are given below.

1. Yes, Jim is a student.
2. No, Pete and Jane aren't married.
3. Yes, I usually get up early.
4. No, they don't know what to do.
5. Yes, he always stays with his friends in summer.
6. No, Ted isn't a little child.
7. No we aren't busy now.
8. No I'm not always late for classes.
9. Yes, Pete and Paul are great friends.
10. Yes, we understand you very well.
11. No, he is not at home.
12. No, they aren't in Moscow.
13. No, we don't live here.
14. Yes, the book is in the bookcase.
15. No, I don't hear you.
16. Yes, the children are in the garden.
17. No, you are not late.
18. Yes, you know them.

The General Question

◆ **Have got — have**

Have + subject + **got** +…

Do + subject + **have** +…

1. Have you got a computer? • Yes, I have. (No, I haven't.)
2. Do you have a computer? • Yes, I do. (No, I don't.)

Упражнение 1

Задайте вопросы к следующим репликам.

1. Is Jim a student?
2. Are Pete and Jane married?
3. Do you usually get up early?
4. Do they know what to do?
5. Does he always stay with his friends in summer?
6. Is Ted a little child?
7. Are you busy now?
8. Are you always late for classes?
9. Are Nick and Paul great friends?
10. Do you understand me well?
11. Is he at home?
12. Are they in Moscow?
13. Do you live here?
14. Is the book in the bookcase?
15. Do you hear me?
16. Are the children in the garden?
17. Am I late?
18. Do I know them?

Общий вопрос

◆ **Have got — have**

Have + подлежащее + **got** +…

Do + подлежащее + **have** +…

1. У тебя есть компьютер? • Да. (Нет.)
2. У тебя есть компьютер? • Да. (Нет.)

Exercise 2

Make questions to the following sentences.

1. Yes, they do. They have a nice house in the country.
2. Yes, he has. Tom has got a new car.
3. Yes, I do. I have two children.
4. No, he hasn't. Pete hasn't got a good suit.
5. Yes, they have. His parents have got a villa on a Greek Island.
6. No, we don't. We don't usually have dinner at home.
7. Yes, I have. I've got enough change.
8. Yes, we have. We've got work to do.
9. Yes, they do. They have three classes on Monday.
10. No, she hasn't. She hasn't got problems.

Exercise 3

Answer the following questions.

a) in the positive

MODEL: Is he your teacher?

1. Are Tom and Paul great friends?
2. Is Ted married to Kate?
3. Is he at the University?
4. Are you a student?
5. Does he know two foreign languages?
6. Is she late again?
7. Do you know the answer?
8. Have you got an interesting article?
9. Do they speak English as well as German?
10. Do you have enough experience?
11. Has he got an idea?
12. Are they present at the lecture?
13. Does it cost much?
14. Is the dress expensive?
15. Do we have a choice?

Упражнение 2

Поставьте вопросы к следующим предложениям.

1. Do they have a nice house in the country?
2. Has Tom got a new car?
3. Do you have two children?
4. Has Pete got a good suit?
5. Have his parents got a villa on a Greek Island?
6. Do you usually have dinner at home?
7. Have you got enough change?
8. Have you got work to do?
9. Do they have three classes on Monday?
10. Has she got problems?

Упражнение 3

Ответьте на следующие вопросы.

а) положительно

Yes, he is.

1. Yes, they are.
2. Yes, he is.
3. Yes, he is.
4. Yes, I am.
5. Yes, he does.
6. Yes, she is.
7. Yes, I (we) do.
8. Yes, I (we) have.
9. Yes, they do.
10. Yes, I (we) do.
11. Yes, he has.
12. Yes, they are.
13. Yes, it does.
14. Yes, it is.
15. Yes, you do.

b) in the negative

MODEL: Does he like fish?

1. Has he got a new dictionary?
2. Are they happy together?
3. Does Jim want to join us?
4. Is he still in bed?
5. Have you got a headache?
6. Do you have a cup of coffee every morning?
7. Has he got a new jacket?
8. Do they have good friends?
9. Is she in Spain now?
10. Am I a liar?
11. Does he understand us?
12. Are you from Belgium?
13. Do they go to the sea-side every summer?
14. Do you like their new flat?
15. Have you got a telephone in the bedroom?

Exercise 4

Translate into English.

1. Вы далеко живете от работы?
2. Вы заняты? • Да.
3. Ты помогаешь маме по дому? • Да, конечно.
4. Вы курите? • Нет.
5. Твой друг любит играть в теннис? • Да, конечно.
6. Он опять опоздал на урок? • Да.
7. Ты часто ходишь в кино? • Нет.
8. Ты в школе учишься? • Да, в седьмом классе.
9. У них есть дети? • Насколько я знаю, нет.
10. Вы рады его видеть? • Конечно.
11. Ваш друг знает иностранный язык? • Да. Он довольно хорошо знает испанский.
12. У твоего брата есть дача? • К сожалению, нет.
13. Вы работаете по субботам? • Нет.
14. Твоя сестра замужем? • Да.
15. Джону нравится его работа? •Да.

б) отрицательно

No, he doesn't.

1. No, he hasn't.
2. No, they aren't.
3. No, he doesn't.
4. No, he isn't.
5. No, I haven't.
6. No I don't.
7. No, he hasn't.
8. No, they don't.
9. No, she isn't.
10. No, you aren't.
11. No, he doesn't.
12. No, I'm not.
13. No, they don't.
14. No, I don't.
15. No, I haven't.

Упражнение 4

Переведите на английский.

1. Do you live far from work?
2. Are you busy? • Yes, I am.
3. Do you help your mother about the house? • Of course, I do.
4. Do you smoke? • No, I don't.
5. Does your friend like playing tennis? • Of course, he does.
6. Is he late for the lesson again? • Yes, he is.
7. Do you often go to the cinema? • No, I don't.
8. Do you go to school? • Yes, I do. I'm in the seventh form.
9. Do they have children? • As far as I know, they don't.
10. Are you glad to see him? • Of course, we are.
11. Does your friend know a foreign language? • Yes, he does. He knows Spanish rather well.
12. Has your brother got a country house? • Unfortunately, he hasn't.
13. Do you work on Saturday? • No, I don't.
14. Is your sister married? • Yes, she is.
15. Does John like his job? • Yes, he does.

1.2 The Negative-Interrogative Sentence

Don't you ? Aren't you? Haven't you?

auxiliary **be**/**do**/**have** + **not** + subject + verb + ….?

Aren't the children at school today?

- Yes, they are. (They are at school today.)
- No, they aren't. (They are not at school today)

Doesn't he visit you once a week?

- Yes, he does. (He visits me once a week.)
- No, he doesn't. (He doesn't visit me once a week.)

Exercise 5

Give a short answer to each of the questions below.

MODEL: Aren't you glad to see him? (and you like him)

1. Don't you want to go to the country? (and you hate going to the country)
2. Doesn't he live in this house? (and it's his house)
3. Is he satisfied with the results of the experiment? (and he believes the results are bad)
4. Aren't they responsible for the work? (and it's their duty)
5. Don't they know the answer to the question? (and they have no idea)
6. Isn't he worried about it? (and he doesn't care)
7. Doesn't she have a sense of humour? (and she likes jokes)
8. Isn't this bag yours? (and it's your friend's)
9. Hasn't he got a key? (and his key is somewhere else)
10. Aren't you serious ? (and you are serious)
11. Isn't the book on the shelf? (and you see it on this shelf)
12. Haven't they got enough time? (and they are in a hurry)
13. Aren't they happy together? (and they are going to divorce)
14. Haven't you got enough money to pay for it?(and you can afford the thing.)
15. Don't they always help you? (and they are always helpful)

1.2 Вопросительно-отрицательное предложение

Don't you ? Aren't you? Haven't you?

вспом. гл. **be**/**do**/**have** + **not** + подлежащее + сказуемое + …?

Разве/Неужели дети сегодня *не* в школе?

- Да, в школе. (Нет, в школе.)
- Нет, не в школе. (Да, не в школе.)

Разве/Неужели он *не навещает* вас раз в неделю?

- Да, навещает. (Нет, навещает.)
- Нет, не навещает. (Да, не навещает.)

Упражнение 5

Дайте краткий ответ на следующие вопросы.

Yes, I am.

1. No, I don't.
2. Yes, he does.
3. No, he isn't.
4. Yes, they are.
5. No, they don't.
6. No, he isn't.
7. Yes, she does.
8. No, it isn't.
9. No, he hasn't.
10. Yes, I'm.
11. Yes, it is.
12. No, they haven't.
13. No, they aren't.
14. Yes, I have.
15. Yes, they do.

Exercise 6

Translate into English.

1. Неужели он не обедает дома? • Нет, обедает.
2. Вы не знаете его брата? • Ну как же, знаю.
3. У тебя нет карты мира? • Есть. Вот, пожалуйста.
4. Разве ты не играешь на пианино? • Нет, не играю.
5. Разве ваш сын не учится в школе? • Нет, он еще слишком мал.
6. Неужели ты не помнишь этого правила? • Нет, помню.
7. Неужели ты их не видишь? • Нет.
8. У тебя нет лишней ручки? • Есть.
9. Разве он не немецкий язык изучает? • Да, немецкий.
10. Разве его еще нет дома? • Да, нет.
11. Это не ваш преподаватель? • Да, наш.
12. Разве у тебя не достаточно денег, чтобы купить этот костюм? • Достаточно.
13. Неужели вы не рады, что вернулись? • Рады.
14. Ты не знаешь его имени? • Нет. Я его впервые вижу.
15. Ты не устала? • Нет, я в порядке.

1.3 The Alternative Question

Does he live in France or in Denmark? • He lives in France.

Is he a good or a bad doctor? • He is a good doctor.

Have they got a new fridge or a new cupboard? • They've got a new fridge.

Are you or is Pete ill? • Pete is ill.

Does he usually come in time or is he often late? • He usually comes on time.

Упражнение 6

Переведите на английский.

1. Doesn't he have dinner at home? • Yes, he does.
2. Do you know his brother? • Yes, I do.
3. Have you got a map of the world? • Yes, I have. Here you are.
4. Don't you play the piano? • No, I don't.
5. Doesn't your son go to school? • No, he doesn't. He is too little.
6. Don't you remember this rule? • Yes, I do.
7. Don't you see them? • No, I don't.
8. Have you got a spare pen? • Yes, I have.
9. Doesn't he learn German? • Yes, he does.
10. Isn't he at home yet? • No, he isn't.
11. Is it your teacher? • Yes, it is.
12. Haven't you got enough money to buy this suit? • Yes, I have.
13. Aren't you glad to be back? • Yes, we are.
14. Do you know his name? • No, I don't. I see him for the first time.
15. Are you tired? • No, I am not. I'm all right.

1.3 Альтернативный вопрос

Он живет во Франции или в Дании? • Он живет во Франции.

Он хороший врач или плохой? • Он хороший врач.

У них новый холодильник или новый сервант? • У них новый холодильник.

Ты болеешь или Пит? • Пит.

Он обычно приходит вовремя или часто опаздывает? • Он обычно приходит вовремя.

Exercise 7

Make alternative questions using the given statements.
MODEL: They are at home, not their mother.

1. Tom knows about it, not Bill.
2. It's the right answer, not a wrong one.
3. She has got new shoes, not a new dress.
4. It's easy to do it, not difficult.
5. He often walks with his cousin, not his friend.
6. He has three classes on Monday, not four.
7. They are on holiday, not their friends.
8. They are happy, not sad.
9. The doctor says I'm better, not worse.
10. They've got my address, not my telephone number.
11. He is a very good driver, not a bad one.
12. She likes to go to the theatre, not to the cinema.
13. She enjoys skiing, not skating.
14. They refuse to give money, not to help.
15. She knows the truth, not her mother.
16. You look well today, not ill.
17. They are in Italy, not in Spain.
18. Steve speaks Italian, not we.
19. I've got to write an article, not to translate one.
20. I'm fond of sports, not my cousin.

Exercise 8

Translate into English.

1. Вы любите слушать классическую или современную музыку?
2. Ты утром пьешь чай или кофе? • Чай.
3. У тебя брат или сестра? • У меня две сестры.

4. Это ваша племянница или сестра?
5. Твоя мать врач или инженер?
6. Твой брат учится или работает?

Упражнение 7

Задайте альтернативные вопросы к предложениям.
Are they or is their mother at home?

1. Does Tom or Bill know about it?
2. Is it the right answer or a wrong one?
3. Has she got new shoes or a new dress?
4. Is it easy or difficult to do it?
5. Does he often walk with his cousin or his friend?
6. Does he have three or four classes on Monday?
7. Are they or their friends on holiday?
8. Are they happy or sad?
9. Does the doctor say you are better or worse?
10. Have they got your address or your telephone number?
11. Is he a good or a bad driver?
12. Does she like to go to the theatre or to the cinema?
13. Does she enjoy skiing or skating?
14. Do they refuse to give money or to help?
15. Does she or her mother know the truth?
16. Do I look well or ill today?
17. Are they in Italy or in Spain?
18. Do you or does Steve speak Italian?
19. Have you got to write an article or to translate one?
20. Are you or is your cousin fond of sports?

Упражнение 8

Переведите на английский.

1. Do you like listening to classical or modern music?
2. Do you have tea or coffee in the morning? • I have tea.
3. Have you got a brother or a sister? • I've got two sisters.
   (Do you have a brother or a sister? • I have two sisters.)
4. Is it your niece or your sister?
5. Is your mother a doctor or an engineer?
6. Does your brother study or work?

7. У вас двое или трое детей?
   • Двое — мальчик и девочка.
8. Это твоя комната или комната твоей сестры?
9. Вы любите писать или получать письма?
10. У них квартира или собственный дом?
11. Экзамен по русскому языку устный или письменный?
12. Твой брат учит испанский или французский?
13. Твоя мать преподает в школе или в институте?
14. Ты или твой брат интересуется историей?
15. У вас кошка или собака?
    • Мы вообще не держим дома животных.

1.4 The Disjunctive Question

1. *It's* cold, *isn't it*?
   • Yes, it is. (It is cold.)
   • No, it isn't. (It is not cold.)
2. *He knows* about it, *doesn't he*?
   • Yes, he does. (He knows about it.)
   • No, he doesn't. (He doesn't know about it.)
3. *You haven't got* a camera, *have you*?
   • Yes, I have. (I've got a camera.)
   • No, I haven't. (I haven't got a camera.)
4. *He doesn't* have a TV-set, *does he*?
   • Yes, he does. (He has a TV-set.)
   • No, he doesn't. (He doesn't have a TV-set.)

REMEMBER

1. **I'm interested in it, aren't I?**
2. **Everybody** knows what to do, **don't they**?
3. **Let's** buy tickets now, **shall we**?
4. **Stop** talking, **will you**?
5. **Don't come** too early, **will you**?

7. Do you have two or three children?
   • I have two children. A boy and a girl.
8. Is it your or your sister's room?
9. Do you like writing or getting letters?
10. Do they have a flat or a house of their own?
11. Is the Russian exam oral or written?
12. Does your brother learn Spanish or French?
13. Does your mother teach at school or at university?
14. Are you or is your brother interested in history?
15. Have you got a cat or a dog? (Do you have a cat or a dog?)
    • We don't keep pets at all.

1.4 Разделительный вопрос

1. Холодно, *не так ли*?
   • Да, холодно.
   • Нет, не холодно.
2. Он *ведь* знает об этом?
   • Да, знает.
   • Нет, не знает.
3. У тебя нет фотоаппарата, *не правда ли*?
   • Есть. (Нет, есть.)
   • Нет.
4. У него *же* нет телевизора?
   • Есть. (Нет, есть.)
   • Нет.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

1. Я ведь заинтересован в этом, не так ли?
2. Все же знают, что делать?
3. Давай купим билеты сейчас, а?
4. Перестаньте разговаривать, хорошо?
5. Не приходите так рано, ладно?

Exercise 9

Put a question tag at the end of the following sentences.

1. She doesn't want to talk with us unless we tell her the truth, …?
2. They are already here, … ?
3. The children have four classes on Monday, …?
4. You like staying with us, … ?
5. Come up to me, … ?
6. He has got the necessary papers, … ?
7. You don't mind these questions, … ?
8. Everybody is here, … ?
9. We don't know the details, … ?
10. I'm a good doctor, … ?
11. I'm not right, … ?
12. Let's discuss it right now, … ?
13. We haven't got a choice, … ?
14. He is sure of it, … ?
15. They never agree with us, … ?
16. We've got a car, … ?

Exercise 10

Correct mistakes if any.

MODEL: The weather is fine today, is it?

He knows English, doesn't he?

1. They know it's a good job, haven't they?
2. He doesn't get up before 8, do he?
3. Don't go there alone, do you?
4. Bill isn't frank with us, isn't he?
5. I'm older than you, am I not?
6. Andrew hasn't got an English dictionary, does he?
7. Jane and Jack are getting married, aren't they?

Упражнение 9

Дополните предложения так, чтобы получились разделительные вопросы.

1. She doesn't want to talk with us unless we tell her the truth, does she?
2. They are already here, aren't they?
3. The children have four classes on Monday, don't they?
4. You like staying with us, don't you?
5. Come up to me, will you?
6. He has got the necessary papers, hasn't he?
7. You don't mind these questions, do you?
8. Everybody is here, aren't they?
9. We don't know the details, do we?
10. I'm a good doctor, aren't I?
11. I'm not right, am I?
12. Let's discuss it right now, shall we?
13. We haven't got a choice, have we?
14. He is sure of it, isn't he?
15. They never agree with us, do they?
16. We've got a car, haven't we?

Упражнение 10

Исправьте возможные ошибки.

The weather is fine today, isn't it?

He knows English, doesn't he?

1. They know it's a good job, don't they?
2. He doesn't get up before eight, does he?
3. Don't go there alone, will you?
4. Bill isn't frank with us, is he?
5. I'm older than you, aren't I?
6. Andrew hasn't got an English dictionary, has he?
7. Jane and Jack are getting married, aren't they?

8. Everybody knows about it, do they?
9. Be ready by 11, do please.
10. You don't mind the joke, don't you?
11. He has a lot of work, hasn't he?
12. You have nothing to add, haven't you?
13. Everybody is present at the lecture, isn't he?
14. His advice is useless, is it?
15. The questions aren't difficult, aren't they?
16. You've got a number of questions, don't you?
17. He has a new shelf, don't he?

Exercise 11

a) Agree with the following statements.

1. She doesn't like cheese, does she?
2. It's a beautiful day, isn't it?
3. They are in love, aren't they?
4. This bridge isn't very safe, is it?
5. I'm not your boss, am I?
6. He visits his grandmother quite often, doesn't he?
7. She hasn't got this device, has she?
8. They seem happy, don't they?
9. You don't like ice-cream, do you?
10. We've got enough information, haven't we?

b) Disagree with the following statements.

1. She isn't well today, is she?
2. He has got news, hasn't he?
3. It's cold in Brazil now, isn't it?
4. It's not important, is it?
5. You are not sure of it, are you?
6. They haven't got a new car, have they?
7. You don't travel much, do you?
8. They believe it is important, don't they?
9. She doesn't have enough knowledge of the subject, does she?
10. You are glad to meet them again, aren't you?

8. Everybody knows about it, don't they?
9. Be ready by eleven, will you?
10. You don't mind the joke, do you?
11. He has a lot of work, doesn't he?
12. You have nothing to add, do you?
13. Everybody is present at the lecture, aren't they?
14. His advice is useless, isn't it?
15. The questions aren't difficult, are they?
16. You've got a number of questions, haven't you?
17. He has a new shelf, doesn't he?

Упражнение 11

а) Согласитесь со следующими высказываниями.

1. No, she doesn't.
2. Yes, it is.
3. Yes, they are.
4. No, it isn't.
5. No, you aren't.
6. Yes, he does.
7. No, she hasn't.
8. Yes, they do.
9. No, I don't.
10. Yes, we have.

б) Выразите несогласие со следующими высказываниями.

1. Yes, she is.
2. No, he hasn't.
3. No, it isn't.
4. Yes, it is.
5. Yes, I am.
6. Yes, they have.
7. Yes, I do.
8. No, they don't.
9. Yes, she does.
10. No, I'm not.

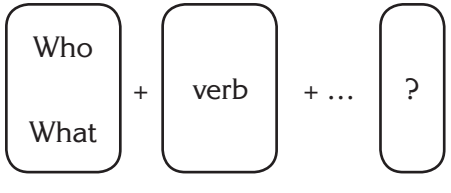
Exercise 12

Translate into English.

1. Он все еще болен, не так ли? • Нет, он чувствует себя хорошо.
2. У тебя ведь есть брат? • Нет.
3. Его сейчас нет дома, да? • Да.
4. Я хорошо танцую, не так ли? (to be a good dancer)
5. Он вас не знает, не так ли? • Ну как же, знает.
6. Давай попозже пообедаем, хорошо?
7. Сегодня прекрасная погода, не так ли?
8. Не опаздывай, ладно?
9. Давай пойдем в кино, а?
10. Я ведь красивая?
11. Ты любишь шоколад, да?
12. Подойди к телефону, а?
13. У тебя ведь есть фотоаппарат?
14. Я не слишком болтлива, правда?
15. Тим ведь совсем не ест мяса, правда? • Да, не ест.

1.5 The Special Question

Questions to the subject



Who knows the answer?
- Frank does.

Who usually helps you?
- My husband does.

Упражнение 12

Переведите на английский.

1. He is still ill, isn't he? • No, he isn't. He feels well.
2. You have a brother, don't you? • No, I don't.
3. He isn't at home now, is he? • No, he isn't.
4. I am a good dancer, aren't I?
5. He doesn't know you, does he? • Yes, he does. (But he does.)
6. Let's have dinner a bit later, shall we?
7. The weather is fine today, isn't it?
8. Don't be late, will you?
9. Let's go to the cinema, shall we?
10. I'm pretty, aren't I?
11. You like chocolate, don't you?
12. Answer the telephone, will you?
13. You have got a camera, haven't you? (You have a camera, don't you?)
14. I'm not too talkative, am I?
15. Tim doesn't eat meat at all, does he? • No, he doesn't.

1.5 Специальный вопрос

Вопросы к подлежащему

Кто знает ответ?
- Фрэнк.

Кто тебе обычно помогает?
- Мой муж.

Exercise 13

Make questions to the subject and answer them.

MODEL: He spends most of his time in the library.

1. Pete goes to bed late.
2. Nick and Pamela understand the rule correctly.
3. This dictionary contains the necessary information.
4. His behaviour makes me think so.
5. We know the details.
6. This house costs a fortune.
7. This man wants to use our telephone.
8. Your words prevent me from acting.
9. Ice-cream sells well in summer.
10. I believe he is wrong.

The Special Question

Questions to the object

Who/ Whom / What	+	auxiliary	+	subject	+	verb	+ … ?

Who does he know here?

- He knows the Smiths.

What do you want to do?

- I want to leave this place.

Упражнение 13

Поставьте вопросы к подлежащему и ответьте на них.

Who spends most of his time in the library? • He does.

1. Who goes to bed late? • Pete does.
2. Who understands the rule correctly? • Nick and Pamela do.
3. What contains the necessary information? • The dictionary does.
4. What makes you think so? • His behaviour does.
5. Who knows the details? • We do.
6. What costs a fortune? • This house does.
7. Who wants to use our telephone? • This man does.
8. What prevents you from acting? • Your words do.
9. What sells well in summer? • Ice-cream does.
10. Who believes he is wrong? • I do.

Специальный вопрос

Вопросы к дополнению

Who/ Whom / What	+	вспомога-тельный глагол	+	подлежа-щее	+	сказуе-мое	+ … ?

Кого он здесь знает?

- Смитов.

Что ты хочешь сделать?

- Я хочу уехать отсюда.

Exercise 14

Make questions to the words in bold type.

MODEL: She likes to sing **English songs**.
Such words often lead to quarrels.

1. I often meet **Jane** in the park.
2. **We** never argue with him.
3. He likes to read **detective stories**.
4. **Such things** never happen to me.
5. They visit all **exhibitions**.
6. **Their children** never tell lies.
7. **Sunny weather** gives me pleasure.
8. The child asks **his parents** a great number of questions.
9. **The Browns** like to go by plane.
10. I prefer **tea** in the morning.

The Special Question

Questions with prepositions

Who / What	+	auxiliary	+	subject	+	verb	+	preposition	?

Упражнение 14

Поставьте вопросы к выделенным словам.

What does she like to sing?
What often leads to quarrels?

1. Who/Whom do you often meet in the park?
2. Who never argues with him?
3. What does he like to read?
4. What never happens to you?
5. What do they visit?
6. Who never tells lies?
7. What gives you pleasure?
8. Who/Whom does the child ask a great number of questions?
9. Who likes to go by plane?
10. What do you prefer in the morning?

Специальный вопрос

Предложные вопросы

Who do you like to listen **to**?
Who do you want to talk **to**?
What does he always laugh **at**?
What are you fond **of**?
What do they always begin their work **with**?
Who do you feel sorry **for**?
Do you know what he is interested **in**?
What is your friend interested **in**?
Who does she always shout **at**?
Who does she want to apologise **to**?
How many parts does it consist **of**?
Who are they afraid **of**?
Who does it depend **on**?

Exercise 15

Ask questions to the prepositional object.

MODEL: I feel sorry for this dog.

1. She begins her day with a cup of coffee.
2. She always explains things to her children.
3. It depends on the weather.
4. He enjoys looking at this picture.
5. He always laughs at Pete's jokes.
6. They are afraid of the examiner.
7. They want to speak to Mr. Jones after the lecture.
8. I like listening to pop music.
9. He waits for his wife every morning.
10. I'm fond of films with a happy end.
11. I prefer to talk to the manager.
12. She often asks me to look for her glasses.
13. He is interested in modern science.
14. She always smiles at people in the street.
15. The teacher wants to explain the rule to Paul.
16. I'd prefer tea to coffee.
17. She is often cross with her children.
18. They want to apologise to Mark.
19. This nurse takes care of Mrs. Smith.
20. Alice often complains of headaches.
21. They depend on their uncle.
22. The computer consists of many different details.

Упражнение 15

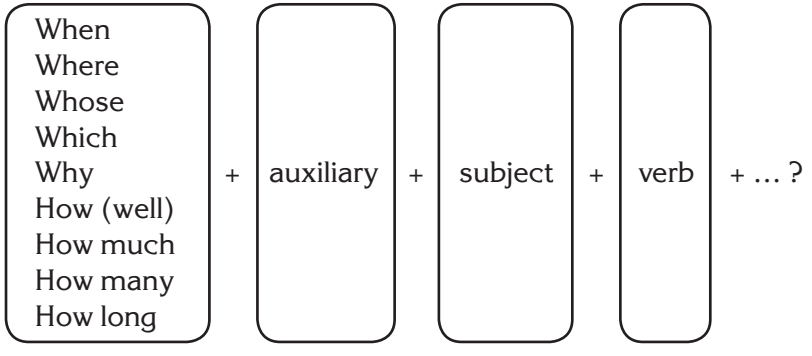
Задайте вопросы к предложному дополнению.

Who do you feel sorry for?

1. What does she begin her day with?
2. Who does she always explain things to?
3. What does it depend on?
4. What does he enjoy looking at?
5. What does he always laugh at?
6. Who are they afraid of?
7. Who do they want to speak to after the lecture?
8. What do you like listening to?
9. Who does he wait for every morning?
10. What are you fond of?
11. Who do you prefer to talk to?
12. What does she often ask you to look for?
13. What is he interested in?
14. Who does she always smile at?
15. Who does the teacher want to explain the rule to?
16. What would you prefer tea to?
17. Who is she often cross with?
18. Who do they want to apologise to?
19. Who does this nurse take care of?
20. What does Alice often complain of?
21. Who do they depend on?
22. What does the computer consist of?

The Special Question

Questions to other members of the sentence



Exercise 16

Make questions to the words in bold type.

MODEL: He wants to go to Japan next summer.

a)

1. My work begins **at nine**.
2. I want to ask **him** this question.
3. This is **my father's** bag.
4. I read a **hundred** pages a day.
5. **Our children** go to bed at nine.
6. He wants to say **something**.
7. She is at home today **because she is ill**.
8. She learns **two** foreign languages.
9. He likes **the red** tie.
10. He usually spends his summer vacation **in the country**.
11. He visits us on **Sunday**.
12. This box weighs ten **kilos**.
13. It takes him **a week** to do this sort of work.
14. He is often late **because his car often breaks down**.
15. **He** always asks me questions.
16. **Strange things** often happen to him.
17. She knows **Pete** very well.

Специальный вопрос

Вопросы к другим членам предложения

1. I get up at seven. • When do you get up?
2. The book is on the table. • Where is the book?
3. This is my brother's tape. • Whose tape is this?
4. He has got a new car, not I. • Which of you has got a new car?
5. He is absent because he is ill. • Why is he absent?
6. He knows English very well. • How well does he know English?
7. The bag costs 30 dollars. • How much does the bag cost?
8. He has got two bicycles. • How many bicycles has he got?
9. It usually takes him two days to write an article. • How long does it usually take him to write an article?

Упражнение 16

Поставьте вопросы к выделенным словам.

Where does he want to go next summer?

a)

1. When does your work begin?
2. Who/Whom do you want to ask this question?
3. Whose bag is this?
4. How many pages a day do you read?
5. Who goes to bed at nine?
6. What does he want to say?
7. Why is she at home today?
8. How many foreign languages does she learn?
9. Which tie does he like?
10. Where does he usually spend his summer vacation?
11. When does he visit you?
12. How much does this box weigh?
13. How long does it take him to do this sort of work?
14. Why is he often late?
15. Who always asks you questions?
16. What often happens to him?
17. Who/Whom does she know very well?

18. She often gets to work **by bus**.
19. I make **more than five** telephone calls every day.
20. This shop is **not far from my house**.

b)

1. She knows **two** foreign languages.
2. It takes her **half an hour** to get to the school building.
3. They are **in the country**.
4. I want to show this letter to **Mike**.
5. He has **fifty dollars**.
6. She isn't at work today because **it's her day off.**
7. I want to read **the book by Mark Twain**.
8. **Mr. Black** usually presides at our meetings.
9. **His letter** makes me think he is in trouble.
10. He speaks French **very well**.
11. The child usually eats **three** sweets a day.
12. This is **Pete's** hat.
13. I want to meet **Mr. Smith** at the party.
14. I like **the blue dress**.
15. He is **in Berlin**.
16. He speaks German well **because he often goes to Germany**.
17. The books are **in the bookcase**.
18. These are **my** shoes.
19. The train leaves **at eleven**.
20. He plays the piano **badly**.

Exercise 17

Translate into English.

1. Кого из них вы знаете?
2. Какая фирма получает эти письма?
3. Чьи это журналы?
4. Когда у вас урок математики?
5. Где вы обычно проводите каникулы?
6. Как вы празднуете свой день рождения?
7. Кто знает домашнее задание на завтра?

18. How does she often get to work?
19. How many telephone calls do you make every day?
20. Where is this shop?

б)

1. How many foreign languages does she know?
2. How long does it take her to get to the school building?
3. Where are they?
4. Who/Whom do you want to show this letter?
5. How much money does he have?
6. Why isn't she at work today?
7. Which book do you want to read?
8. Who usually presides at your meetings?
9. What makes you think he is in trouble?
10. How well does he speak French?
11. How many sweets a day does the child usually eat?
12. Whose hat is this?
13. Who/Whom do you want to meet at the party?
14. Which dress do you like?
15. Where is he?
16. Why does he speak German well?
17. Where are the books?
18. Whose shoes are these?
19. When does the train leave?
20. How well does he play the piano?

Упражнение 17

Переведите на английский.

1. Which of them do you know?
2. Which company gets these letters?
3. Whose magazines are these?
4. When do you have Mathematics?
5. Where do you usually spend your summer vacations?
6. How do you celebrate your birthday?
7. Who knows the task for tomorrow?

8. С кем вы ходите в театр? • С братом.
9. Сколько времени надо вашей маме, чтобы приготовить обед?
10. Почему вы опоздали?
11. В чем дело?
12. Кто знает об этом происшествии? • Моя сестра.
13. Который час?
14. Кто из вас любит переводить статьи с английского на русский?
15. Чей сын хорошо играет в футбол? • Мой.
16. Где находится комната 15?
17. Сколько длится ваш рабочий день?
18. Что вы делаете на работе? • Я отвечаю на письма и телеграммы.
19. Сколько времени вам требуется, чтобы добраться до работы? • Около часа.
20. О чем вы хотите нам рассказать?
21. Какая погода вам нравится? • Я люблю жаркую погоду и не люблю дождь.
22. С кем Чарльз обычно играет в шахматы?
23. На скольких языках разговаривает твой отец?
24. Кто вам так часто звонит?
25. Кто из вас любит устраивать вечеринки? • Мэри и Элис.
26. Когда обычно приходит домой ваш отец?
27. С кем вы часто разговариваете по телефону?
28. Откуда ваш новый студент? • Из Риги.
29. Сколько семей живет в этом доме?
30. Кто хочет еще сока? • Джейн.
31. Что вы знаете об Англии?
32. Сколько времени вам надо, чтобы закончить работу?
33. Почему ты такой ленивый?
34. О чем этот фильм?
35. Кто твой отец (по профессии)?
36. Кто из вас хорошо печатает? • Хелен.
37. Чем вы интересуетесь?
38. Кто помогает тебе делать уроки? • Моя сестра.
39. Где работает твоя мама?
40. Сколько раз в неделю у него урок музыки?
41. Чья это сумка? Почему она здесь?

8. Who do you go to the theatre with? • With my brother.
9. How long does it take your mother to make dinner?
10. Why are you late?
11. What's the matter?
12. Who knows about this accident? • My sister does.
13. What's the time? (What time is it now?)
14. Which of you likes translating articles from English into Russian?
15. Whose son plays football well? • Mine does.
16. Where is room fifteen?
17. How long does your working day last?
18. What do you do at work? • I answer letters and telegrammes.
19. How long does it take you to get to work? • About an hour.
20. What do you want to tell us about?
21. What kind of weather do you like? • I like hot weather and I don't like rain.
22. Who does Charles usually play chess with?
23. How many languages does your father speak?
24. Who phones you so often?
25. Which of you likes giving parties? • Mary and Alice do.
26. When does your father usually come home?
27. Who do you often speak on the telephone with?
28. Where is your new student from? • From Riga.
29. How many families live in this house?
30. Who wants more juice? • Jane does.
31. What do you know about England?
32. How much time do you need to finish the work?
33. Why are you so lazy?
34. What is this film about?
35. What is your father?
36. Which of you types well? • Helen does.
37. What are you interested in?
38. Who helps you (to) do your homework? • My sister does.
39. Where does your mother work?
40. How many times a week does he have music lessons?
41. Whose bag is this? Why is it here?

42. Кого ты ждешь?
43. Где ваши дети?
44. Как долго ты добираешься до школы?
45. Зачем тебе нужен их адрес?
46. С кем вы хотите поговорить?
47. Сколько стоит ваша машина?
48. Кто хочет есть? • Мы.
49. Что означает это слово?
50. Чего вы боитесь?

1.6 The Indirect Question

Where [is] **the post-office**?

Do you know
I don't know

I know — where **the post office** [is].
I can't remember — if **she** [lives] here.

Can you tell me
Tell me

[Does] **she** [live] here?

Exercise 18

Make sentences with **Do you know if/whether**.

MODEL: Is the post office here?

1. Is George at school?
2. Do Alice and Bob have many children?
3. Have they got a new car?
4. Does he want to marry Jane?
5. Are they friendly?
6. Does Judy like her job?
7. Is the museum far from here?

42. Who are you waiting for?
43. Where are your children?
44. How long does it take you to get to school?
45. What do you need their address for?
46. Who do you want to speak with?
47. How much does your car cost?
48. Who is hungry? • We are.
49. What does this word mean?
50. What are you afraid of?

1.6 Косвенный вопрос

Do you know	who	these people are?
I don't know	how	old Tom is.
	how much	this camera costs.
I know	why	why they are late.
I can't remember	what	she wants.
		Jack is at home.
Tell me	if	they have got a car.
Can you tell me	whether	he can help us.
		Ann smokes.

Упражнение 18

Образуйте косвенный вопрос, начиная с **Do you know if/whether**.

Do you know if the post-office is here?

1. Do you know if George is at school?
2. Do you know if Alice and George have many children?
3. Do you know if they have got a new car?
4. Do you know if he wants to marry Jane?
5. Do you know if they are friendly?
6. Do you know if Judy likes her job?
7. Do you know if the museum is far from here?

8. Do his children go in for sports?
9. Has Pete got a large library at home?
10. Does she have a brother?

Exercise 19

Make sentences with
Do you know, I don't remember , I don't know.

1. (Where does Vivie work?) I don't remember … .
2. (What does he like for breakfast?) Do you know … ?
3. (Why don't they want to come to the party?) I don't know … .
4. (How long does it take to get to London?) Do you know … ?
5. (When does the film start?) I don't remember … .
6. (What does this word mean?) I don't know … .
7. (Who do they want to invite?) Do you know … ?
8. (How old is his daughter?) Do you know … ?
9. (How much does it cost to park here?) I don't know … .
10. (Where is Ann?) Do you know … ?

Exercise 20

Answer the following questions with
I don't know where/when/why…

MODEL: Does he get up early? (when)

1. Do they live in London? (where)
2. Is Ann at home? (where)
3. Have they got many children? (how many)
4. Does she like modern music? (what)
5. Is he angry because I'm late? (why)
6. Do they teach History? (what)
7. Is the TV-set expensive? (how much)

8. Do you know if his children go in for sports?
9. Do you know if Pete has got a large library at home?
10. Do you know if she has a brother?

Упражнение 19

Образуйте косвенный вопрос, начиная с
Do you know, I don't remember, I don't know.

1. I don't remember where Vivie works.
2. Do you know what he likes for breakfast?
3. I don't know why they don't want to come to the party.
4. Do you know how long it takes to get to London?
5. I don't remember when this film starts.
6. I don't know what this word means.
7. Do you know who they want to invite?
8. Do you know how old his daughter is?
9. I don't know how much it costs to park here.
10. Do you know where Ann is?

Упражнение 20

Ответьте на следующие вопросы, начиная с
I don't know where/when/why…

I don't know when he gets up.

1. I don't know where they live.
2. I don't know where Ann is.
3. I don't know how many children they have got.
4. I don't know what she likes.
5. I don't know why he is angry.
6. I don't know what they teach.
7. I don't know how much the TV-set costs.

8. Does his father come home late? (when)
9. Is the car very old? (how old)
10. Are they from Africa? (where)

Exercise 21

Rewrite questions beginning with **Do you know…?**

1. What do they breed?
2. Where is Paul?
3. Why does he want to leave?
4. Does Pat work on Saturday?
5. What time do they start working?
6. How many nephews does she have?
7. Who does she want to visit?
8. Is the bank open tomorrow?
9. Which of them do they ask for help?
10. Are the children at school?

Exercise 22

Translate into English.

1. Вы не подскажете, сколько стоит этот жакет?
2. Вы не знаете, когда отправляется последний автобус?
3. Я не помню, где этот учебник английского языка.
4. Я не знаю, помнит ли он о собрании.
5. Я не могу понять, в чем дело.
6. Извините, вы не подскажете, где офис менеджера?
7. Ты не знаешь, почему он так расстроен?
8. Я не знаю, закончились ли у них занятия.
9. Интересно, хорошо ли он учится.
10. Скажите, пожалуйста, сколько времени надо, чтобы доехать до Эдинбурга?
11. Я не знаю, что он хочет в подарок.
12. Вы не подскажете, далеко ли до метро?

8. I don't know when his father comes home.
9. I don't know how old the car is.
10. I don't know where they are from.

Упражнение 21

Образуйте косвенный вопрос, начиная с **Do you know…?**

1. Do you know what they breed?
2. Do you know where Paul is?
3. Do you know why he wants to leave?
4. Do you know if Pat works on Saturday?
5. Do you know what time they start working?
6. Do you know how many nephews she has?
7. Do you know who she wants to visit?
8. Do you know if the bank is open tomorrow?
9. Do you know which of them they ask for help?
10. Do you know if the children are at school?

Упражнение 22

Переведите на английский.

1. Can you tell us how much the jacket costs?
2. Do you know when the last bus leaves?
3. I don't remember where this English textbook is.
4. I don't know if he remembers about the meeting.
5. I can't understand what the matter is.
6. Excuse me, can you tell me where the manager's office is?
7. Do you know why he is so upset?
8. I don't know if their classes are over.
9. I wonder if he is a good student.
10. Please tell me how long it takes to get to Edinburgh.
11. I don't know what he wants to get as a present.
12. Can you tell me how far it is to the metro station?

13. Ты не помнишь, когда он обычно приходит домой?
14. Интересно, откуда у него столько денег?
15. Интересно, сколько у них времени?

1.7 Questions with DO YOU THINK

1. **Do you think** + a simple sentence

2.

Why Where When How How many (much) How long Who What Whose Which	+	do you think	+	a simple sentence	?

Exercise 23

Combine two questions into one.

Как ты думаешь →

1. Do they know about it?
2. What is she?
3. Where does he live?
4. When does she come home?
5. Is he a generous person?
6. Why are they so worried?
7. How long does it take him to do his homework?
8. Which of them speaks English?
9. Are they great friends?
10. How many cars do they sell?

13. Do you remember when he usually comes home?
14. I wonder where he gets so much money from?
15. I wonder how much time they have?

1.7 Вопросы с «КАК ТЫ ДУМАЕШЬ?»

1. Do you think he knows about it?
   Do you think she is happy?
   Do you think they have got a car?
2. Why do you think he is late?
   Where do you think he lives?
   When do you think they get up?
   How well do you think he speaks English?
   How much time do you think we have got?
   How long do you think it takes him to get to work?
   Who do you think knows about it?
   What do you think he knows?
   Whose book do you think it is?
   Which of these bags do you think she likes?

Упражнение 23

Соедините два предложения в одно.

1. Do you think they know about it?
2. What do you think she is?
3. Where do you think he lives?
4. When do you think she comes home?
5. Do you think he is a generous person?
6. Why do you think they are so worried?
7. How long do you think it takes him to do his homework?
8. Which of them do you think speaks English?
9. Do you think they are great friends?
10. How many cars do you think they sell?

Exercise 24

Translate into English.

1. Как ты думаешь, он ее любит?
2. Как ты думаешь, откуда они?
3. Как ты думаешь, почему они хотят так скоро уехать?
4. Как ты думаешь, как работает этот прибор (machine)?
5. Как ты думаешь, сколько книг он читает каждую неделю?
6. Как ты думаешь, она на 3-м или на 4-м курсе?
7. Как ты думаешь, где можно купить красивую вазу?
8. Как ты думаешь, когда он встает?
9. Как ты думаешь, это дорогая поездка?
10. Как ты думаешь, кем он гордится?
11. Как ты думаешь, сколько он обычно спит?
12. Как ты думаешь, чем он увлекается?
13. Как ты думаешь, он хороший сын?
14. Как ты думаешь, почему он делает так много ошибок?
15. Как ты думаешь, сколько стоит эта сумка?

Упражнение 24

Переведите на английский.

1. Do you think he loves her?
2. Where do you think they are from?
3. Why do you think they want to leave so soon?
4. How do you think this machine works?
5. How many books a week do you think he reads?
6. Do you think she is a third- or a fourth-year student?
7. Where do you think one can buy a nice vase?
8. When do you think he gets up?
9. Do you think it is an expensive trip?
10. Who do you think he is proud of?
11. How long do you think he usually sleeps?
12. What do you think he is fond of?
13. Do you think he is a good son?
14. Why do you think he makes so many mistakes?
15. How much do you think this bag costs?

UNIT 2 THE PLURAL OF NOUNS. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *THIS* (*THESE*), *THAT* (*THOSE*)

2.1 Nouns ending with **-s, ss, sh, ch, x, z**
2.2 Nouns ending with **-o**
2.3 Nouns ending with **-y**
2.4 Nouns ending with **-f, fe**
2.5 Compound nouns

2.1 Nouns ending with -s, ss, sh, ch, x, z

noun + **s**

bag — bags

noun ending with (**-s**, **-ss**, **-sh**, **-ch**, **-x**, **-z**) + (**es**)

2.2 Nouns ending with -o

nouns ending with (**-o**) + (**es**)

tomato — tomatoes

potato — potatoes

УРОК 2 МНОЖЕСТВЕННОЕ ЧИСЛО СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНЫХ. УКАЗАТЕЛЬНЫЕ МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ *ЭТОТ* (*ЭТИ*), *ТОТ* (*ТЕ*)

2.1 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на **-s, ss, sh, ch, x, z**
2.2 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на **-o**
2.3 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на **-y**
2.4 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на **-f, fe**
2.5 Сложные существительные

2.1 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на s, ss, sh, ch, x, z

This *bag* is expensive. — These *bags* are expensive.

This is a *bus*. — These are *buses*.
This *class* begins at nine. — These *classes* begin at nine.
Is this *brush* new? — Are these *brushes* new?
This *match* is thin. — These *matches* are thin.
There is a *fox* in the zoo. — There are *foxes* in the zoo.

2.2 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на -o

существительные, оканчивающиеся на **-o** + **es**

These *tomatoes* are red.

Those *potatoes* are tasty.

REMEMBER

radio — radi*os*
cuckoo — cuckoo*s*
piano — pian*os*
photo — phot*os*

2.3 Nouns ending with -y

a consonant	+	y		a vowel	+	y

stor*y* — stor*ies*
pon*y* — pon*ies*

bo*y* — bo*ys*
tra*y* — tra*ys*

BUT: Kitty — *Kittys*

2.4 Nouns ending with -f, -fe

wi*fe* — wi*ves*
shel*f* — shel*ves*

BUT: **proof — proofs, handkerchief — handkerchiefs, cliff — cliffs**

REMEMBER

man — men
woman — women
tooth — teeth
foot — feet
goose — geese
mouse — mice
person — people
child — children
ox — oxen
sheep — sheep
deer — deer
craft — craft

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

These *radios* work well.

These *pianos* are old.

2.3 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на -y

согласный	+	y		гласный	+	y

These are sad *stories*.
Do those *ponies* run fast?

Are these *boys* friends?
Those *trays* are new.

2.4 Существительные, оканчивающиеся на -f, -fe

Are their *wives* present at the conference?
Do those *shelves* cost much?
These *handkerchiefs* are good.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

This *man* is a teacher. • These *men* are teachers.
That *woman* is nice. • Those *women* are nice.
He has one bad *tooth*. • He has two bad *teeth*.
His left *foot* hurts. • Put your *feet* closer to the fire.
That *goose* is white. • Those *geese* are white.
I see a *mouse*. • I don't like *mice*.
I know this *person*. • I know these *people*.
Does this *child* know English? • Do these *children* know English?
That *ox* is strong. • Those *oxen* are strong.
He keeps a *sheep*. • He keeps *sheep*.
This *deer* is beautiful. • These *deer* are beautiful.
I see one *aircraft*. • I see two *aircraft*.

2.5 Compound Nouns

this school*girl* — these school*girls*

this post*man* — these post*men*

father-in-law — *fathers*-in-law

forget-me-not — *forget-me-nots*

Exercise 1

Give the plural forms of the following nouns.

kettle, birth, bath, telephone, deed, built-in-wardrobe, tree, butterfly, match, shoe, bus, glove, pie, fox, ski, taxi, bush, toe, life, photo, piano, handkerchief, roof, chief, woman, potato, goose, knife, study, tomato, thief, leaf, foot, child, mouse, deer, fish, sheep, man, calf, hero, shelf, brush, baby, fireplace, hoof, radio, mother-in-law, storey, passer-by, box, handful, belief, watch, fee, pause, cloth, loaf, crash, beach, cow, motto, aircraft, businessman, move, glass, bush, copy, mango, valley, mummy, atlas, rally, hero, pity, omnibus, manifest, ray, ditch, agenda, fly, feature, lorry, buzz.

2.5 Сложные существительные

This schoolgirl knows the subject well.

These schoolgirls know the subject well.

This postman brings us newspapers.

These postmen bring us newspapers.

His father-in-law is a doctor.

Their fathers-in-law are doctors.

This is a nice forget-me-not.

These are nice forget-me-nots.

Упражнение 1

Образуйте существительные множественного числа.

kettles, births, baths, telephones, deeds, built-in-wardrobes, trees, butterflies, matches, shoes, buses, gloves, pies, foxes, skis, taxis, bushes, toes, lives, photos, pianos, handkerchiefs, roofs, chiefs, women, potatoes, geese, knives, studies, tomatoes, thieves, leaves, feet, children, mice, deer, fish/fishes, sheep, men, calves, heroes, shelves, brushes, babies, fireplaces, hoofs (hooves), radios, mothers-in-law, storeys, passers-by, boxes, handfuls, beliefs, watches, fees, pauses, cloths, loaves, crashes, beaches, cows, mottos (mottoes), aircraft, businessmen, moves, glasses, bushes, copies, mangos (mangoes), valleys, mummies, atlases, rallies, heroes, pities, omnibuses, manifestos (manifestoes), rays, ditches, agendas, flies, features, lorries, buzzes

Exercise 2

Use in the plural.

1. The sheep is in the field.
2. The potato is on the plate.
3. This postman delivers letters.
4. The roof of this house is bad.
5. This is a lovely city.
6. This family is at home.
7. My sister has got a new bag.
8. That house is old.
9. This woman is a teacher.
10. Who is that man?
11. This piano is of the latest model.
12. That is his photo.
13. This person is a good sportsman.
14. I have a bad tooth.
15. Here is your toy.
16. He is our chief.
17. The deer is a beautiful animal.
18. His son-in-law is here.
19. Do you know this passer-by?
20. The key is on this shelf.

REMEMBER

These nouns are always singular.

much/little

this/that

is/does

it

news	information
hair	permission
work	knowledge
advice	furniture
money	progress
weather	scenery

Упражнение 2

Употребите во множественном числе.

1. The sheep are in the field.
2. The potatoes are on the plate.
3. These postmen deliver letters.
4. The roofs of these houses are bad.
5. These are lovely cities.
6. These families are at home.
7. My sisters have got new bags.
8. Those houses are old.
9. These women are teachers.
10. Who are those men?
11. These pianos are of the latest model.
12. Those are his photos.
13. These people are good sportsmen.
14. I have bad teeth.
15. Here are your toys.
16. They are our chiefs.
17. Deer are beautiful animals.
18. His sons-in-law are here.
19. Do you know these passers-by?
20. The keys are on these shelves.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

Эти существительные употребляются только в единственном числе.

This news is very interesting. • *Новости* очень интересные.
It is useful *advice*. • *Эти советы* полезны.
Does her *hair* grow fast? • У нее быстро растут *волосы*?
Jane's *knowledge is* good. • У Джейн хорошие *знания*.
Do you have *much money* on you? • У тебя с собой *много денег*?
It's important *information*. • Это важные *сведения*.
Pete makes *little progress*. • *Успехи* Пита небольшие.
Do you have *much work*? • У вас *много работы*?
Is the *weather* fine today? • Сегодня хорошая *погода*?
That furniture is more expensive. • *Та мебель* дороже.

REMEMBER

These nouns are always plural.

many/few	Clothes
these/those	Police
are/do	Goods
they	Cattle
	Trousers/shorts/jeans/pyjamas/tights
	Scissors
	Glasses/spectacles
	People
	Contents
	Wages

Exercise 3

Choose the correct form.

MODEL: The news is/are important.

1. The police believes/believe the man is a thief.
2. My scissors doesn't/don't cut well.
3. The news isn't/aren't very good. — They are/It is very sad indeed.
4. The people you want to see is/are here.
5. This/these advice is/are ridiculous.
6. You have to ask for permission /a permission.
7. Is/are her hair long?
8. Has/have the police got enough evidence?
9. His knowledge leaves/leave much to be desired.
10. Does/do the child enjoy bathing ?
11. This is a useful/useful advice.
12. Is/are his trousers new?

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

Эти существительные употребляются только во множественном числе.

Does she have *many* new *clothes*? • У нее *много* новой *одежды*?
The *police are* here. • *Полиция* здесь.
These goods are of high quality. • Это *товар* высокого качества.
The *cattle are* in the field. • *Стадо* на лугу.
Do these trousers need shortening? • *Эти брюки* нужно укоротить?
Are those scissors sharp? • *Те ножницы* острые?
These are good *glasses*. • Это хорошие *очки*.
Very *few people are* present. • Очень *мало людей* присутствует.
The *contents* of the box *are* heavy. • *Содержимое* ящика тяжелое.
His *wages are* high. • У него большая *зарплата*.

Упражнение 3

Выберите правильный вариант.

The news is important.

1. The police believe the man is a thief.
2. My scissors don't cut well.
3. The news isn't very good. — It is very sad indeed.
4. The people you want to see are here.
5. This advice is ridiculous.
6. You have to ask for permission.
7. Is her hair long?
8. Have the police got enough evidence?
9. His knowledge leaves much to be desired.
10. Does the child enjoy bathing ?
11. This is useful advice.
12. Are his trousers new?

13. Does/do the furniture cost much?
14. His wages isn't/aren't very high.
15. The cattle is/are on the farm.
16. Does/do the information need checking?
17. Has/have the men got good jobs?
18. His foot hurts/hurt.
19. Where are/is his clothes? — It is/They are in the wardrobe.
20. He is doing very/a very difficult work.

Exercise 4

Translate into English.

1. Дай эти деньги мне. Я боюсь, что ты их потеряешь.
2. Эти сведения очень важны.
3. Это неожиданная новость.
4. Эти советы очень полезны.
5. Мне очень нравятся эти часы. Они очень красивые.
6. У нее красивые волосы. Они густые и длинные.
7. Многие из этих советов очень полезные.
8. Его одежда всегда чистая.
9. Возьмите эти ножницы. Они острые.
10. Сколько у тебя денег? Их достаточно, чтобы купить этот MP3-плеер?
11. Возьмите эти носовые платки.
12. Его советы обычно очень полезны. Следуй им.
13. Новые брюки ему чуть длинны.
14. Листья уже желтые.
15. Их жены и дети сейчас за городом.
16. Эти пианино очень старые.
17. Это не мои очки. Положи их на полку.
18. У твоей мамы большая зарплата? • Да.
19. Посмотри, эти олени такие красивые.
20. Мне нужно много новой мебели.
21. У кого из вас хорошие знания по биологии?

13. Does the furniture cost much?
14. His wages aren't very high.
15. The cattle are on the farm?
16. Does the information need checking?
17. Have the men got good jobs?
18. His foot hurts.
19. Where are his clothes? — They are in the wardrobe.
20. He is doing very difficult work.

Упражнение 4

Переведите на английский.

1. Give me this money. I'm afraid you will lose it.
2. This information is very important.
3. This is unexpected news.
4. This advice is very useful.
5. I like this watch very much. It is very beautiful.
6. She has beautiful hair. It is thick and long.
7. Much of this advice is useful.
8. His clothes are always clean.
9. Take these scissors. They are sharp.
10. How much money have you got? Is it enough to buy this MP3 player?
11. Take these handkerchiefs.
12. His advice is usually useful. Follow it.
13. The new trousers are a bit too long for him.
14. The leaves are already yellow.
15. Their wives and children are in the country now.
16. These pianos are very old.
17. These are not my spectacles. Put them on the shelf.
18. Are your mother's wages high? • Yes, they are.
    (Does your mother have high wages? • Yes, she does.)
19. Look, these deer are so beautiful.
20. I need a lot of new furniture.
21. Which of you has good knowledge of biology?

22. Эта одежда очень дорогая.
23. Мало кто (мало людей) всегда приходят вовремя.
24. Где твои брюки? Я хочу их укоротить.
25. Эти люди — молочники. (*a milkman*)
26. Он полицейский.
27. Каждый год он делает большие успехи.
28. Его знаний языка недостаточно.
29. Давай сделаем несколько снимков.
30. Обе ее дочери замужем. У нее два зятя.

22. These clothes are very expensive.
23. Very few people are always on time.
24. Where are your trousers? I want to shorten them.
25. These people are milkmen.
26. He is a policeman.
27. He makes great progress every year.
28. His knowledge of the language isn't enough.
29. Let's take a couple of photos.
30. Her both daughters are married. She has two sons-in-law.

UNIT 3 THE POSSESSIVE CASE

3.1 The Possessive Case with animate nouns

3.2 The Possessive Case with inanimate nouns

3.3 Double formation of the Possessive Case

3.4 The Possessive Case with compound nouns

3.1 With Animate Nouns

noun (singular) + 's	**noun (plural) + '**
boy — boy's	boys — boys'
dog — dog's	dogs — dogs'
BUT:	
man — man's	men — men's
child — child's	children — children's
John and Catherine	John and Catherine's
Ted's friends	Ted's friends'
John Smith	John Smith's
The Browns	The Browns'
Charles	Charles'(s)

УРОК 3 ПРИТЯЖАТЕЛЬНЫЙ ПАДЕЖ

3.1 Притяжательный падеж с одушевленными существительными

3.2 Притяжательный падеж с неодушевленными существительными

3.3 Двойное образование притяжательного падежа

3.4 Притяжательный падеж со сложными существительными

3.1 С одушевленными существительными

существительное в ед. числе + 's	**существительное во мн.числе + '**
This boy's mother.	*These boys'* mother.
This dog's master.	*These dogs'* master.
BUT:	
This man's bag is old.	*These men's* bags are old.
This child's questions are funny.	*These children's* questions are funny.

This is *John and Catherine's house*.

These are *Ted's friends' children*.

This is *John Smith's wife*.

Is this *the Browns' house*?

Does *Charles'(s) wife* know it?

3.2 With Inanimate Nouns

book — of the book

house — of the house

3.3 Double formation of the Possessive Case

government — government's / of the government

company — company's / of the company

team — team's / of the team

family — family's / of the family

town — town's / of the town

Russia — Russia's / of Russia

3.4 Compound Nouns

mother-in-law — mother-in-law's

schoolgirl — schoolgirl's

Exercise 1

Join the nouns in brackets. Use either **-'s** (**-s'**) or … **of** …

MODEL: One can see the village from (the top, the mountain)
(The plan, these engineers) is quite original.

1. I like (the bag, this woman). But it's very expensive.
2. There is something wrong with (the hands, the clock).

3.2 С неодушевленными существительными

The title of the book is funny.

The roof of the house is flat.

3.3 Двойное образование притяжательного падежа

The company's manager is away now.
(The manager of the company is away now.)

It's the family's property.
(It's the property of the family.)

The Foreign Minister of Russia is in Canada.
(Russia's Foreign Minister is in Canada.)

3.4 Со сложными существительными

These are his mother-in-law's gloves.

I see this schoolgirl's bag.

Упражнение 1

Соедините указанные существительные при помощи **-'s** (**-s'**) или … **of** …

— the top of the mountain.
— these engineers' plan

1. this woman's bag.
2. the hands of the clock.

3. This is (the business, my father). He doesn't want me to interfere.
4. (The mayor, the town) meets reporters once a month.
5. (The house, our friends) is in the suburbs.
6. (The idea, the article) seems interesting to me. Do you want to discuss it?
7. (The aim, these men) is to get promotion. And they do their best to achieve it.
8. These are (the problems, Steve and James). Let them decide their problems themselves.
9. (The country house, the Blacks) is not very large.
10. He says (the cause, the fire) is carelessness.
11. The Bank of England is in (the centre, London)
12. That is (the book, Bess). She needs it herself.
13. (The computer, Fred Clark) is of the latest model.
14. Why do you want to put the table in (the middle, the room).
15. (The bicycle, those children) is very old. However, they enjoy riding it.
16. I am tired of (the initiatives, these people). Why don't they just do their work?
17. (The teacher, those students) has deep knowledge of the subject.
18. I don't think (the answer, this student) is above average.
19. This is (the disk/the cousin, Tom). I've got to return it.
20. Whose toys are these? • These are (the toys, the daughters, Mrs. Black).

Exercise 2

Translate into English.

1. Когда у твоей сестры день рождения?
2. Дети Бесс и Вильяма — студенты.
3. Идеи Чарльза кажутся мне интересными.
4. Отец Фрэнка сейчас в Англии.
5. Это кольцо бабушки Элис.
6. Нас удивляют результаты эксперимента.

3. my father's business
4. the town's mayor; the mayor of the town
5. our friends' house
6. the idea of the article
7. these men's aim
8. Steve and James' (James's) problems
9. the Blacks' country house
10. the cause of the fire
11. the centre of London; London's centre
12. Bess' (Bess's) book
13. Fred Clark's computer
14. the middle of the room
15. those children's bicycle
16. these people's initiatives
17. those students' teacher
18. this student's answer
19. Tom's cousin's disk
20. Mrs. Black's daughters' toys

Упражнение 2

Переведите на английский.

1. When is your sister's birthday?
2. Bess and William's children are students.
3. Charles'(s) ideas seem interesting to me.
4. Frank's father is in England now.
5. This is Alice's grandmother's ring.
6. The results of the experiment surprise us.

7. Вы продаете детскую одежду?
8. Это машина наших родственников.
9. Фасад (*the front*) дома очень красивый.
10. Это коллекция его тестя.
11. Зарплата этих полицейских довольно высокая.
12. Это портфели тех школьниц.
13. Это мнение моих учителей.
14. Мне не нравится ее новый цвет волос.
15. Покрой (*the cut*) костюма очень модный.
16. Сад Дэвидсонов очень красивый.
17. Эта коробка в углу комнаты.
18. Мне нравится прическа этой женщины.
19. Давайте заберемся завтра на вершину этой горы.
20. Эта компания отца Теда Майлса.

7. Do you sell children’s clothes?
8. This is our relatives’ car.
9. The front of the house is very beautiful.
10. This is his father-in-law’s collection.
11. These policemen’s wages are rather high.
12. These are those schoolgirls’ bags.
13. This is my teachers’ opinion.
14. I don’t like the new colour of her hair.
15. The cut of the suit is fashionable.
16. The Davidsons’ garden is beautiful.
17. This box is in the corner of the room.
18. I like this woman’s haircut.
19. Let’s climb to the top of this mountain tomorrow.
20. This is Ted Miles’ father’s company.

UNIT 4 PRONOUNS

4.1 Personal Pronouns
4.2 Possessive Pronouns
4.3 The Absolute form of Possessive Pronouns
4.4 Pronoun **it**
4.5 Reflective Pronouns

4.1 Personal Pronouns

The singular		The plural	
The Nominative Case	The Objective Case	The Nominative Case	The Objective Case
I	Me	We	Us
you	you	you	you
he	him		
she	her	they	them
it	it		

УРОК 4 МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ

4.1 Личные местоимения
4.2 Притяжательные местоимения
4.3 Абсолютная форма притяжательных местоимений
4.4 Местоимение **it**
4.5 Возвратные местоимения

4.1 Личные местоимения

I know Mr. Morrison.
We know Mr. Morrison.
Are *you* ill?
She is absent.
They are absent.

Tell *me* about it.
He doesn't understand *us*.
I want to see *you*.

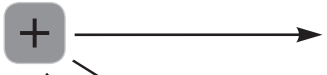
Give *her* the book.
Explain it to *him*.
I visit *them* quite often.

4.2 Possessive Pronouns

I — my
We — our
you — your
you — your
he — his
she — her
they — their
it — its

REMEMBER

1. Possessive Pronouns



❶ hands
head
nose
eyes
and other parts of human body

❷ hat
trousers
glasses
and other clothes

❸ mother
sister
and other relavites

2. My friends and I

4.2 Притяжательные местоимения

This is my brother.	Это мой брат.
They are our teachers.	Они — наши учителя.
Is it your car?	Это твоя машина?
Do you want to meet his friend?	Ты хочешь познакомиться с его другом?
What do you know about her life?	Что ты знаешь о ее жизни?
Look at the tree. Its leaves are yellow.	Посмотри на дерево. Его листья — желтые.
Have you got their address?	У тебя есть их адрес?

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

1 ❶ Wash your hands. — Вымой руки.

She washes her hair three times a week. — Она моет волосы три раза в неделю.

❷ He always takes off his hat when he sees a lady. — Он всегда снимает шляпу, когда видит женщину.

Wash your shirt. It's dirty. — Постирай рубашку. Она грязная.

❸ He doesn't want to tell his mother the truth. — Он не хочет рассказывать матери правду.

I like discussing things with my sister. — Я люблю все обсуждать с сестрой.

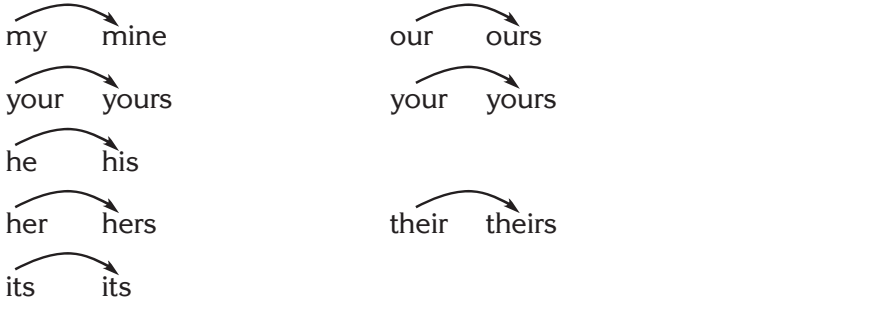
2 Мы (я) с друзьями

Exercise 1

Translate into English.

1. Многие дети не любят мыть руки.
2. Он всегда приглашает родственников на день рождения.
3. Мы всегда снимаем пальто и плащи, когда приходим в университет.
4. Ты хочешь попросить помощи у брата?
5. Племянница присылает ей деньги?
6. Если моя собака рада видеть моих друзей, она виляет хвостом.
7. Закрой на минуту глаза.
8. Она любит своих учеников?
9. Он всегда держит руки в карманах.
10. Оставьте свою обувь в коридоре.
11. Он всегда ездит отдыхать с семьей.
12. Если ты плохо видишь, надень очки.
13. Мы с друзьями любим ходить в походы.
14. Он с женой всегда гостит у нас летом.
15. Почему ты не носишь очки?
16. Я всегда теряю перчатки.
17. Она говорит, что у нее болит правая рука.
18. Я хочу спросить совета у родителей.
19. Дети, похлопайте в ладоши.
20. Сегодня у моего дяди день рождения.

4.3 The Absolute Form of Possessive Pronouns



Упражнение 1

Переведите на английский.

1. Many children don't like to wash their hands.
2. He always invites his relatives to his birthday party.
3. We always take off our coats and raincoats when we come to the university.
4. Do you want to ask your brother for help?
5. Does her niece send her money?
6. If my dog is glad to see my friends it waves its tail.
7. Close your eyes for a minute.
8. Does she like her students?
9. He always keeps his hands in his pockets.
10. Leave your shoes in the hall.
11. He always goes on holiday with his family.
12. If you can't see well put on your glasses.
13. My friends and I like to go hiking.
14. His wife and he always stay with us in summer.
15. Why don't you wear your glasses?
16. I always lose my gloves.
17. She says her right arm hurts.
18. I want to ask my parents' advice.
19. Children, clap your hands.
20. It's my uncle's birthday today.

4.3 Абсолютная форма притяжательных местоимений

This is my bag. It's mine.

This is my pen, it isn't yours.

You like her translation and I like his.

The cat always eats from its own plate and the dog from its.

Do you like their plan or ours?

We've got our problems and they have got theirs.

Exercise 2

Replace the words in bold type according to the model.

MODEL: It's my pen, it isn't your pen.

1. This is my book and that is **her book**.
2. Do you like Fred's flat or **Pete's flat**?
3. Ann's husband is away and **my husband** is at home.
4. This is my cousin's address and I want to find **my friend's address**.
5. Which of the two compositions do you think is better, **his composition or her composition**?
6. Mind your own private life and don't interfere with **our private life**.
7. Adults have a lot of difficulties but children have **their difficulties**, too.
8. Our car is old and **their car** is new.
9. I remember his name very well. Why can't he remember **my name**?
10. I have a good dictionary, don't bring **your dictionary**.
11. It's Pete's birthday that is in March, **their birthday** is in April.
12. It's not our station, **our station** is the next one.
13. I don't feel like talking about my vacation, tell me about **your vacation**.
14. My printer doesn't work. Do you mind my using **your printer**?
15. If you don't have a good textbook ask Ann to lend you **her textbook**.

4.4 Pronoun it

I like this dress. *It* is nice.

It is my wife.

It's hot.

It gets dark early in winter.

It is a pleasure to see you.

It's my aunt who always gives me advice.

Упражнение 2

Замените выделенные слова, как показано в модели.

It isn't yours.

1. This is my book and that is hers.
2. Do you like Fred's flat or Pete's?
3. Ann's husband is away and mine is at home.
4. This is my cousin's address and I want to find my friend's.
5. Which of the two compositions do you think is better, his or hers?
6. Mind your own private life and don't interfere with ours.
7. Adults have a lot of difficulties but children have theirs, too.
8. Our car is old and theirs is new.
9. I remember his name very well. Why can't he remember mine?
10. I have a good dictionary, don't bring yours.
11. It's Pete's birthday that is in March, theirs is in April.
12. It's not our station, ours is the next one.
13. I don't feel like talking about my vacation, tell me about yours.
14. My printer doesn't work. Do you mind my using yours?
15. If you don't have a good textbook, ask Ann to lend you hers.

4.4 Местоимение it

Мне нравится это платье. Оно красивое.

Это моя жена.

Жарко.

Зимой рано темнеет.

Приятно вас видеть.

Именно моя тетя всегда дает мне советы.

Exercise 3

Translate into English.

1. Холодно.
2. Именно он всегда знает ответы на все вопросы.
3. Непросто найти выход из этого положения.
4. Мне всегда интересно его слушать.
5. Именно он всегда говорит правду.
6. Сейчас пять часов.
7. Мне нравится представление. Оно интересное.
8. Всегда здорово отдохнуть.
9. Очень полезно посещать его лекции.
10. В комнате жарко.
11. Темно. Включи свет.
12. Именно его советы всегда нам помогают.
13. Осенью в Москве часто идут дожди.
14. В этих краях часто идет снег.
15. Солнечно. Давай позагораем.
16. Зимой темнеет рано.
17. В Москве обычно теплеет в апреле.

4.5 Reflective Pronouns

I — myself
you — yourself
he — himself
she — herself
it — itself
one — oneself
we — ourselves
you — yourselves
they — themselves

Упражнение 3

Переведите на английский.

1. It's cold.
2. It's he who always knows answers to all questions.
3. It isn't easy to find a way out of this situation.
4. It's always interesting for me to listen to him.
5. It's he who always tells the truth.
6. It's five o'clock now.
7. I like the performance. It's interesting.
8. It's always great to have a rest.
9. It's useful to attend his lectures.
10. It's hot in the room.
11. It's dark. Turn on the light.
12. It's his advice that always helps us.
13. It often rains in Moscow in autumn.
14. It often snows in these parts.
15. It's sunny. Let's sunbathe.
16. It gets dark early in winter.
17. It usually gets warm in Moscow in April.

4.5 Возвратные местоимения

I want to do it *myself*.
Go there *yourself*.
He knows it *himself*.
She translates all articles *herself*.
The house itself is old.
We always make decisions *ourselves*.
Please, children, clean the room *yourselves*.
They organise all parties *themselves*.
One can do it *oneself*.

Exercise 4

Translate into English.

1. Мы всегда стараемся делать нашу работу сами.
2. Как ты думаешь, почему он отказывается идти туда сам?
3. Думаешь, их дети выполняют все задания сами?
4. Я не знаю, зарабатывает ли она на жизнь сама или родственники дают ей деньги время от времени.
5. Человек не может всегда быть собой доволен.
6. Само по себе задание не сложное.
7. Ты же говоришь, что все чинишь сам, не так ли?
8. Я сам нарисовал эту картину.

Exercise 5

Choose the correct form of pronouns in the following sentences.

1. They want to get in touch with specialists (themselves/theirselves).
2. (I and my parents / my parents and I) go to the seaside every year.
3. If your telephone doesn't work use (my/mine).
4. He likes to sit with (arms / his arms) folded.
5. Take off (the coat / your coat) and join us.
6. He says our translation is wrong and (their/theirs) is correct.
7. Dinner is ready. Wash (the hands / your hands).
8. Where is he? I can't see (his/him).
9. In a situation like that one never knows how to protect (himself/oneself).
10. If he has time he always checks everything (hisself/himself).
11. They (themself/themselves) don't know what to do.
12. We want to plant these flowers (ourselves/ourself).
13. He wants to bring (a sister / his sister).
14. This pie doesn't taste good. (Her/hers) is delicious.
15. Hurry up. It's six o'clock. / Six o'clock.
16. (Cold. / It's cold). Close the door, please.

Упражнение 4

Переведите на английский.

1. We always try to do our work ourselves.
2. Why do you think he refuses to go there himself?
3. Do you think their children do all tasks (by) themselves?
4. I don't know if she earns her living herself or if her relatives give her money from time to time.
5. One can't always be pleased with oneself.
6. The task itself isn't difficult.
7. You say you repair everything (by) yourself, don't you?
8. I painted this picture (by) myself.

Упражнение 5

Выберите правильный вариант.

1. They want to get in touch with specialists themselves.
2. My parents and I go to the seaside every year.
3. If your telephone doesn't work use mine.
4. He likes to sit with his arms folded.
5. Take off your coat and join us.
6. He says our translation is wrong and theirs is correct.
7. Dinner is ready. Wash your hands.
8. Where is he? I can't see him.
9. In a situation like that one never knows how to protect oneself.
10. If he has time he always checks everything himself.
11. They themselves don't know what to do.
12. We want to plant these flowers ourselves.
13. He wants to bring his sister.
14. This pie doesn't taste good. Hers is delicious.
15. Hurry up. It's six o'clock.
16. It's cold. Close the door, please.

Exercise 6 (Revision)

Translate into English.

1. Почему ты хочешь объяснить ему это сам?
2. Ты думаешь, они организуют все вечера сами?
3. Я всегда сам поливаю цветы.
4. В комнате светло. Выключи свет.
5. Откройте рот.
6. Зимой здесь часто идет снег.
7. Это не моя сумка. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, мою. • Я не знаю, где ваша.
8. Это не его номер. Его начинается на «3».
9. Ты не знаешь, который час? • 11 часов.
10. Ребенок всегда сам снимает одежду и кладет ее на стул.
11. Это не наша собака. Наша вон там.
12. Мы с братом всегда рады вас видеть.
13. Разве вы сами не можете узнать его адреса?
14. Именно этот почтальон всегда приносит нам почту.
15. Именно в марте я всегда заболеваю.
16. Именно его идеи мне и нравятся.
17. В доме жарко. Пойдем в сад.
18. Я думаю, что уже поздно.
19. Он здесь? Невероятно!
20. Всегда приятно получать подарки.

Упражнение 6 (Повторение)

Переведите на английский.

1. Why do you want to explain it to him (by) yourself?
2. Do you believe they organise all parties themselves?
3. I always water flowers myself.
4. It’s light in the room. Turn off the light.
5. Open your mouth.
6. It often snows here in winter.
7. This is not my bag. Please, give me mine. • I don’t know where yours is.
8. This is not his telephone number. His begins with a “three”.
9. Do you know what the time is? • It’s 11 o’clock.
10. The child always takes off his clothes and puts them on the chair himself.
11. This is not our dog. Ours is over there.
12. My brother and I are always glad to see you.
13. Can’t you find out his address (by) yourself?
14. It’s this postman who always brings us our post.
15. It’s in March that I always fall ill.
16. It’s his ideas that I like.
17. It’s hot in the house. Let’s go out into the garden.
18. I think it is already late.
19. Is he here? It’s unbelievable!
20. It’s always pleasant to get presents.

UNIT 5 MUCH/MANY; (A) LITTLE / (A) FEW

5.1 The use with countable and uncountable nouns

5.2 The use in different types of sentences

5.3 The difference between **little / a little**; **few / a few**

5.1 The use with countable and uncountable nouns

countable nouns	uncountable nouns
many	much
few	little

5.2 The use in different types of sentences

? much/many

– much/many

\+ a lot of

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with **MUCH**, **MANY** or **A LOT OF**.

1. How … clothes do you want to take with you?
2. You make … mistakes as you don't work … .

УРОК 5 MUCH/MANY; (A) LITTLE / (A) FEW

5.1 Употребление с исчисляемыми и неисчисляемыми существительными

5.2 Употребление в разных видах предложений

5.3 Разница между **little / a little; few / a few**

5.1 Употребление с исчисляемыми и неисчисляемыми существительными

исчисляемые существительные	неисчисляемые существительные
many books	much tea
few tables	little time

5.2 Употребление в разных видах предложений

Have you got many friends?

I don't spend much money.

I have a lot of work to do.

BUT

It takes me *too* (*very*, *so*) *much* time to get there.

You have *too* (*very*, *so*) *many* mistakes in this exercise.

Many people like gardening.
Much of what he says is true.

Упражнение 1

Вставьте **MUCH**, **MANY** или **A LOT OF**.

1. How many clothes do you want to take with you?
2. You make a lot of mistakes as you don't work much.

3. I haven't got … time, but I'll try to help you.
4. Pat works hard. She learns … new English words every day.
5. She's got so … relatives!
6. How … time have we got?
7. … advice isn't always good.
8. She knows … girls who go out dancing every Saturday.
9. I don't know as … poems as you.
10. This car is very expensive. It costs too … money.
11. How … children have they got?
12. He says the lectures aren't very interesting. He doesn't get … information.
13. Do you like … sugar in your tea?
14. This is a subject that worries … people.
15. Do you know … people in London?
16. Please don't add … pepper to the meat.
17. … of his answers are absolutely right.
18. … of this information is wrong.
19. Aren't you afraid to put on weight? You always eat so … ice-cream!
20. She is a curious child. She always asks … questions.

5.3 The difference between little / a little; few / a few

little = almost no

a little = some

few = not many, not enough

a few = not many, but enough

3. I haven't got much time, but I'll try to help you.
4. Pat works hard. She learns a lot of new English words every day.
5. She's got so many relatives!
6. How much time have we got?
7. Much advice isn't always good.
8. She knows a lot of girls who go out dancing every Saturday.
9. I don't know as many poems as you.
10. This car is very expensive. It costs too much money.
11. How many children have they got?
12. He says the lectures aren't very interesting. He doesn't get much information.
13. Do you like much sugar in your tea?
14. This is a subject that worries a lot of people.
15. Do you know many people in London?
16. Please don't add much pepper to the meat.
17. Many of his answers are absolutely right.
18. Much of this information is wrong.
19. You always eat so much ice-cream!
20. She is a curious child. She always asks a lot of questions.

5.3 Разница между little / a little; few / a few

Hurry up! We've got little time.	Поторопись! У нас мало времени.
We have a little time left. Let's have tea before leaving.	У нас есть немного времени. Давай попьем чай.
She has few English books. Let's give her one as a present.	У нее мало английских книг. Давайте подарим ей!
She has a few interesting books. She can give you something to read.	У нее есть несколько интересных книг. Она может дать тебе что-нибудь почитать.

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with **LITTLE / A LITTLE, FEW / A FEW**.

1. … Englishmen speak Japanese.
2. Cactuses need … water.
3. Eve has … friends in Paris and she writes them letters every month.
4. Bill says he has too … money for too … hobbies.
5. Her plan is a bit complicated, and … people understand her.
6. Can you give me … help?
7. Tom's French isn't good. He knows only … words.
8. Pamela's English is very good. She makes … mistakes.
9. Unfortunately he has … friends.
10. I drink … coffee. I don't like it much.
11. Would you like some more tea? • Yes, please, but only … .
12. … people live to be a hundred.
13. If you think … you can give me the right answer.
14. know … hotels in this town. All of them are very good.
15. You must have as … sugar as possible. It's bad for you.

Exercise 3

Translate into English.

1. У нас нет денег, а вот у Джона есть немного. Мы можем пойти в кино.
2. Мне кажется, они тратят слишком много денег на одежду. У них и так ее слишком много.
3. Не многие согласны с этой точкой зрения.
4. У тебя сегодня очень много работы? Может, пойдем погуляем?
5. Многие люди не любят летать на самолете.
6. Он всегда дает много советов, но мне они не нравятся.
7. Мне нужно немного времени, чтобы обдумать это.

Упражнение 2

Вставьте **LITTLE / A LITTLE, FEW / A FEW**.

1. Few Englishmen speak Japanese.
2. Cactuses need little water.
3. Eve has a few friends in Paris and she writes them letters every month.
4. Bill says he has too little money for too many hobbies.
5. Her plan is a bit complicated, and few people understand her.
6. Can you give me a little help?
7. Tom's French isn't good. He knows only a few words.
8. Pamela's English is very good. She makes few mistakes.
9. Unfortunately he has few friends.
10. I drink little coffee. I don't like it much.
11. Would you like some more tea? • Yes, please, but only a little.
12. Few people live to be a hundred.
13. If you think a little, you can give me the right answer.
14. know a few hotels in this town. All of them are very good.
15. You must have as little sugar as possible. It's bad for you.

Упражнение 3

Переведите на английский.

1. We have no money, but John has a little. We can go to the cinema.
2. It seems to me they spend too much money on clothes. They already have too many.
3. Few people agree with this point of view.
4. Do you have very much work to do today? Can we go for a walk?
5. Many people don't like flying (travelling by plane).
6. He always gives a lot of advice, but I don't like it.
7. I need a little time to think it over.

8. На скольких иностранных языках вы говорите?
9. Мало кто знает об этом писателе.
10. Надо торопиться, у нас мало времени.
11. Зачем тебе так много хлеба?
12. У него много друзей, он очень общителен.
13. Мне нужно всего несколько минут, чтобы переодеться.
14. Он никогда не покупает много еды.
15. Можно задать вам несколько вопросов?
16. Он много знает по этой проблеме.
17. У неё так мало знаний, потому что она очень ленивая.
18. Ваш сын много читает? • Да, у него так много книг!
19. Скажите, пожалуйста, несколько слов по-французски.
20. В этом семестре у нас мало лекций, зато много семинаров.
21. Многие из наших преподавателей — женщины.
22. У вас много бумаги. Дайте нам немного, пожалуйста.
23. Я не могу говорить на эту тему. Я знаю слишком мало.
24. Они занимаются английским несколько часов в неделю.
25. Я не люблю писать много писем, хотя получаю я много писем.

8. How many foreign languages do you speak?
9. Few people know about this writer.
10. We must hurry, we have little time.
11. Why do you need so much bread?
12. He has a lot of friends, he is very sociable.
13. I need just a few minutes to change.
14. He never buys much food.
15. May I ask you a few questions?
16. He knows a lot about this problem.
17. She has so little knowledge because she is very lazy.
18. Does your son read much? • Yes, he does. He has so many books!
19. Say a few words in French, please.
20. This term we have few lectures but a lot of seminars.
21. Many of our teachers are women.
22. You have a lot of paper. Give us a little, please.
23. I can’t speak on this subject. I know too little.
24. They study English a few hours a week.
25. I don’t like to write many letters though I get a lot of letters.

UNIT 6 THERE IS / THERE ARE

6.1 The use of the construction with nouns in the singular

6.2 The use of the construction with nouns in the plural

6.1 The use of the construction with nouns in the singular

+	there is (there's)
–	there is not any (much…) there is no …
?	is there…

6.2 The use of the construction with nouns in the plural

+	there are
–	there are not any (many…) there are no …
?	are there …

COMPARE

There is a shop in this street.

The shop is in Park Street.

УРОК 6 THERE IS / THERE ARE

6.1 Употребление конструкции с существительными в единственном числе

6.2 Употребление конструкции с существительными во множественном числе

6.1 The use of the construction with nouns in the singular

There is a table and two chairs in the room.

There isn't much milk in the fridge.
There is no (not any) table in the room.

Is there a table in the room?

6.2 The use of the construction with nouns in the plural

There are two chairs and a table in the room.

There aren't many books in the shop.
There are no (not any) chairs in the room.

Are there two chairs in the room?

СРАВНИТЕ

На этой улице есть магазин.

Магазин — на Парковой улице.

Exercise 1

Make up questions with **IS THERE … ?** or **ARE THERE … ?**

What's in the bag?

MODEL: (a book)…?

1. (money)…?
2. (keys) …?
3. (papers)…?
4. (chocolate) …?
5. (spectacles) …?
6. (a handkerchief) …?
7. (a purse) …?
8. (scissors) …?
9. (a lipstick)…?
10. (an umbrella)…?

Exercise 2

Describe a room.

Use the given information and write sentences with **THERE IS / ISN'T, THERE ARE / AREN'T**.

MODEL: a table Yes

1. a big window Yes
2. a piano Yes
3. a desk No
4. two armchairs Yes
5. bookshelves No
6. a TV set Yes
7. a carpet on the floor Yes
8. wardrobes No
9. a mirror No
10. many pictures on the walls No

Упражнение 1

Составьте вопросы с **IS THERE …?** или **ARE THERE …?**

Is there a book in the bag?

1. Is there (any) money in the bag?
2. Are there (any) keys in the bag?
3. Are there (any) papers in the bag?
4. Is there (any) chocolate in the bag?
5. Are there (any) spectacles in the bag?
6. Is there a handkerchief in the bag?
7. Is there a purse in the bag?
8. Are there (any) scissors in the bag?
9. Is there a lipstick in the bag?
10. Is there an umbrella in the bag?

Упражнение 2

Опишите комнату.

Используя данную информацию, составьте предложения с **THERE IS / ISN'T, THERE ARE / AREN'T**.

There is a table in the room.

1. There is a big window in the room.
2. There is a piano in the room.
3. There is no (isn't any) desk in the room.
4. There are two armchairs in the room.
5. There are no (aren't any) bookshelves in the room.
6. There is a TV set in the room.
7. There is a carpet on the floor.
8. There are no (aren't any) wardrobes in the room.
9. There is no (isn't any) mirror in the room.
10. There aren't many pictures on the walls.

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with **THERE IS (ARE)** or **IT IS**.

1. … only seven stations on this metro line.
2. … a lot of snow in the street.
3. Come on, children! … time to get up.
4. … a few magazines and a telephone on the table.
5. His eyesight is bad. … difficult for him to recognize people.
6. … no place like home.
7. … some tasty things in my fridge.
8. … too noisy here. Let's go.
9. … too much noise here for us to work.
10. … a pity, … no tea left.

Exercise 4

Translate into English.

1. В нашей семье 4 человека: родители, брат и я.
2. В этой части города не много современных зданий.
3. Сколько комнат у вас в квартире?
4. Сегодня слишком холодно, чтобы идти гулять.
5. На этой улице нет автобусной остановки. Она за углом.
6. Ошибка на восьмой странице.
7. Что сегодня по телевизору?
   • В восемь новый фильм.
8. По праздникам в его доме всегда много гостей.
9. Город очень маленький. Там даже нет отеля.
10. Извините, но для вас нет новостей.
11. У вас рядом с дачей есть река?
    • Да.
    А она глубокая?
    • Не очень.

Упражнение 3

Вставьте **THERE IS (ARE)** или **IT IS**.

1. There are only seven stations on this metro line.
2. There is a lot of snow in the street.
3. Come on, children! It is time to get up.
4. There are a few magazines and a telephone on the table.
5. His eyesight is bad. It is difficult for him to recognize people.
6. There is no place like home.
7. There are some tasty things in my fridge.
8. It is too noisy here. Let's go.
9. There is too much noise here for us to work.
10. It's a pity, there is no tea left.

Упражнение 4

Переведите на английский.

1. There are four people in our family: my parents, my brother and I.
2. There aren't many modern buildings in this part of the town.
3. How many rooms are there in your flat?
4. It's too cold today to go for a walk.
5. There is no bus stop in this street. It's round the corner.
6. The mistake is on page eight.
7. What's on TV today?
   • There is a new film at eight.
8. There are always a lot of guests in his house on holidays.
9. The town is very small. There isn't even a hotel in it.
10. I'm sorry, but there is no (isn't any) news for you.
11. Is there a river near your country house?
    • Yes, there is.
    Is it deep?
    • No, not very.

12. Его комната всегда выглядит неопрятно. На стульях вечно полно одежды.
13. К сожалению, в их доме нет лифта. Это очень неудобно.
14. Рядом с метро есть рынок?
    • Да, рынок рядом с метро.
15. На сегодня не много работы. Я могу сделать ее одна.
16. Мне кажется, в этой комнате слишком мало мебели.
17. Сколько игроков в футбольной команде?
    • Насколько я знаю, 11.
18. У меня в холодильнике нет еды. Он сломался.
19. В расписании есть изменения?
    • Пока нет.
20. Английские книги — на той полке.

12. His room always looks untidy. There are always a lot of clothes on the chairs.
13. Unfortunately, there is no lift in their house. It's very inconvenient.
14. Is there a market near the underground (station)?
    • Yes, the market is near the underground station.
15. There isn't much work for today. I can do it alone.
16. It seems to me, there is too little furniture in this room.
17. How many players are there in a football team?
    • As far as I know, there are eleven.
18. There is no food in my fridge. It's broken.
19. Are there any changes in the timetable?
    • No, there aren't any yet.
20. English books are on that shelf.

UNIT 7 INDEFINITE PRONOUNS *SOME, ANY, NO* AND THEIR COMPOUNDS

7.1 Indefinite pronouns **some**, **any**, **no**

7.2 **Some**, **any**, **no** compounds

7.1 Indefinite pronouns SOME, ANY, NO

SOME

\+ There is **some water** in the glass.
There are **some children** in the yard.

? offers ◆ Would you like **some** tea?
requests ◆ May I have **some** water, please?
special questions ◆ Where can I buy **some** flowers?

– **Some** children don't like milk.
I can't answer **some** of these questions.

ANY

\+ **Any** child knows it.
You can take **any book you like**.
If you have any questions, ask the teacher.

? Is there **any** water in the glass?

– There isn't **any** water in the glass.
There aren't **any** children in the yard.

NO

– There is **no** water in the glass.
There are **no** children in the yard.

УРОК 7 НЕОПРЕДЕЛЕННЫЕ МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ SOME, ANY, NO И ИХ ПРОИЗВОДНЫЕ

7.1 Неопределенные местоимения **some**, **any**, **no**

7.2 Производные от **some**, **any**, **no**

7.1 Неопределенные местоимения SOME, ANY, NO

SOME

\+ В стакане **немного** воды.
Во дворе **несколько** детей.

? Не хотите ли чаю? ◆ вопрос-предложение
Можно мне воды? ◆ вопрос-просьба
Где можно купить цветы? ◆ специальный вопрос

– **Некоторые** дети не любят молоко.
Я не могу ответить на **некоторые** из этих вопросов.

ANY

\+ **Любой** ребенок это знает.
Вы можете взять **любую книгу (какую захотите)**.
Если у вас есть **какие-нибудь** вопросы, спросите учителя.

? В стакане есть вода? ◆ SOME меняется на ANY

– В стакане нет воды. Во дворе нет детей. ◆ SOME меняется на ANY

NO

– В стакане нет воды. Во дворе нет детей. ◆ SOME меняется на NO

Exercise 1

Change the sentences according to the model.

MODEL: Charles hasn't got any free time.

1. There isn't any university in this town.
2. Tim doesn't have any sisters.
3. There aren't any shops in this street.
4. There isn't any garden near their house.
5. She doesn't have any money.
6. It can't do you any harm.
7. You won't find any evidence.
8. He didn't give me any advice.
9. There isn't any chance of winning.
10. He doesn't pay any attention to her words.

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with **NO** or **ANY**.

1. Don't buy … butter. We don't need … .
2. He's got … friends.
3. The room is empty. There is … furniture in it.
4. I have … time to speak to you now. I am very busy.
5. There aren't … magazines here.
6. There is … swimming pool in this hotel.
7. She can't take … photographs. She has … camera.
8. There aren't … pictures on the walls in their flat.
9. What's the difference between these two words?
   • I can't see … .
10. He has … plans for the weekend yet.

Упражнение 1

Измените предложения, как показано в модели.

Charles has no free time.

1. There is no university in this town.
2. Tim has no sisters.
3. There are no shops in this street.
4. There is no garden near their house.
5. She has no money.
6. It can do you no harm.
7. You'll find no evidence.
8. He gave me no advice.
9. There is no chance of winning.
10. He pays no attention to her words.

Упражнение 2

Вставьте **NO** или **ANY**.

1. Don't buy any butter. We don't need any.
2. He's got no friends.
3. The room is empty. There is no furniture in it.
4. I have no time to speak to you now.
5. There aren't any magazines here.
6. There is no swimming pool in this hotel.
7. She can't take any photographs. She has no camera.
8. There aren't any pictures on the walls in their flat.
9. I can't see any.
10. He has no plans for the weekend yet.

Exercise 3

Fill the blanks with **SOME** or **ANY**.

1. Are there … letters for me? • Yes, there are two.
2. Could you lend me … money?
3. I have … interesting books to read.
4. Why are … people so absent-minded?
5. When would you like to come? • … day will suit me.
6. I'd like to buy … new clothes but I haven't got … money.
7. Who can I ask for … information about it?
8. There aren't … fresh apples at this time of the year.
9. It's so hot! Would you like …juice?
10. … people never come on time.
11. You can't expect just … student to solve this problem. It's too difficult.
12. Let me know if you have … questions.
13. Come … time you like.
14. She can't speak … foreign languages.
15. Is there … news?
    • Oh, yes. I'm afraid, I have … bad news for you.

7.2 SOME, ANY, NO Compounds

somebody (someone), something, somewhere

\+ There is **somebody** (**someone**) in the room.
I have **something** to tell you.
They live **somewhere** near London.

? Would you like **something** to drink?
Could you give me **something** interesting to read?
Where can I get **something** to eat?

Упражнение 3

Заполните пропуски при помощи **SOME** или **ANY**.

1. Are there any letters for me?
2. Could you lend me some money?
3. I have some interesting books to read.
4. Why are some people so absent-minded?
5. Any day will suit me.
6. I'd like to buy some new clothes but I haven't got any money.
7. Who can I ask for some information about it?
8. There aren't any fresh apples at this time of the year.
9. Would you like some juice?
10. Some people never come on time.
11. You can't expect just any student to solve this problem.
12. Let me know if you have any questions.
13. Come any time you like.
14. She can't speak any foreign languages.
15. Is there any news?
    • Oh, yes. I'm afraid, I have some bad news for you.

7.2 Производные от SOME, ANY NO

somebody (someone), something, somewhere

\+ В комнате *кто-то* есть. (*кое-кто*, *кто-нибудь*)
Я должен вам *кое-что* сказать. (*что-то*, *что-нибудь*)
Они живут *где-то* рядом с Лондоном. (*где-нибудь*, *куда-нибудь*)

? Вам дать *что-нибудь* попить? ◆ вопрос-предложение
Вы не могли бы дать мне почитать *что-нибудь* интересное? ◆ вопрос-просьба
Где можно *что-нибудь* поесть? ◆ специальный вопрос

anybody (anyone), anything, anywhere

? Is there **anybody** (**anyone**) in the room?

– I don't want to go **anywhere** tonight.

\+ You may take **anything you like**.
Anybody can do it easily.
If anything happens, call me.

nobody (no one), nothing, nowhere

– There is **nobody** (**no one**) in the room.
I have **nothing** to say.

REMEMBER

some	compounds	+	*is/does*
any			
no			
every			

some of us (them…)
any of us (them…)

none of us (them…)

anybody (anyone), anything, anywhere

? В комнате *кто-нибудь* есть?

– Я не хочу *никуда* сегодня идти.

- производные от **SOME** меняются на производные от **ANY**
- производные от **SOME** меняются на производные от **ANY**

\+ Вы можете взять *все, что угодно*.
Любой может легко это сделать.
Если *что-нибудь* случится, позвони мне.

nobody (no one), nothing, nowhere

В комнате *никого* нет.
Мне *нечего* сказать.

- производные от **SOME** или **ANY** меняются на производные от **NO**

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

Everything is all right.

Nobody knows it.

BUT

Everyone does **their** best.
If anyone wants to leave early, **they** can.
Nobody is late, are **they**?

Some of them are very good students. — **Некоторые из** … .
Are/Is any of them ready? — **Кто-нибудь из** … ?
Any of you can do it. — **Любой из** …
None of us know/knows about it. — **Никто из** … .

Exercise 4

Insert **SOME**, **ANY**, **NO**, **EVERY** or their compounds.

1. Is there … here who speaks Spanish?
2. … I know, probably, knows … of the details.
3. Do you have … idea of who it is?
4. Don't let … in. I'm too busy to see … .
5. … tells me we are right.
6. I can't see my glasses … .
7. What would you like to eat? • … I'm not hungry.
8. There is … wrong with my watch.
9. … of this money is mine.
10. Do … of these students live in the hostel?
11. How much does it cost to join the library? • … . It's free.
12. I can't see … . It's too dark here.
13. There is … strange about his behaviour.
    He often leaves without saying good-bye to … .
14. Can you get me … to eat, please?
15. There is … to help us.
16. Don't you have … to do?
17. … can speak so many languages.
18. … of these students know the rule. They must learn it.
19. Do … you can to help him.
20. … of us must speak to her about it.
21. If it rains, we won't go … .
22. You can phone … time you like.
23. How many children have you got? • Unfortunately, … .
24. There is … in the next room who wants to speak to you.
25. I can't make an omelette because I have … eggs.

Упражнение 4

Вставьте **SOME**, **ANY**, **NO**, **EVERY** или их производные.

1. Is there anyone here who speaks Spanish?
2. Someone I know, probably, knows some of the details.
3. Do you have any idea who it is?
4. Don't let anybody in. I'm too busy to see anyone.
5. Something tells me we are right.
6. I can't see my glasses anywhere.
7. Nothing. I'm not hungry.
8. There is something wrong with my watch.
9. None (Some) of this money is mine.
10. Do any of these students live in the hostel?
11. Nothing. It's free.
12. I can't see anything.
13. There is something strange about his behaviour.
    He often leaves without saying good-bye to anybody.
14. Can you get me something to eat, please?
15. There is nobody to help us.
16. Don't you have anything to do?
17. Nobody can speak so many languages.
18. None of these students know the rule.
19. Do everything/anything you can to help him.
20. Some of us must speak to her about it.
21. If it rains, we won't go anywhere.
22. You can phone any time you like.
23. Unfortunately, none.
24. There is someone in the next room who wants to speak to you.
25. I can't make an omelette because I have no eggs.

Exercise 5

Translate into English.

1. Принести вам что-нибудь почитать, пока вы ждёте?
2. Мне нечего надеть на вечеринку.
3. Кто из ваших трех братьев женат?
   • Никто (ни один).
4. Не спрашивай его ни о чем.
5. Ничего ведь не может случиться, правда?
6. Никто не может ответить на этот вопрос.
   Никто ничего не знает об этом.
7. Вы можете доехать туда на любом автобусе.
8. Теперь все всё понимают. Спасибо за объяснение.
9. Никто из моих друзей не курит.
10. Что-то не так? Позвать врача?
    • Нет, спасибо, я просто немного нервничаю.
11. Попроси кого-нибудь помочь тебе.
    • Нет, я не хочу никого просить. Я уверен, что могу справиться с этим без какой-либо помощи.
12. Её ведь здесь никто не знает, да?
13. Если вас кто-нибудь об этом спросит, ничего ему не говорите.
14. Кто-нибудь из твоих друзей учится в Московском Университете?
    • Нет.
15. Любой, кто этому верит, — глупец.
16. Все хотят посмотреть этот фильм, так как знают, что он имеет успех.
17. Я очень удивлена, что никого из них ещё нет.
18. Мне бы хотелось осмотреть достопримечательности вашего города.
    Ты можешь рассказать мне что-нибудь интересное?
19. Некоторые из моих друзей хотят, чтобы я тебя им представила.
20. Разве у тебя здесь нет знакомых?

Упражнение 5

Переведите на английский.

1. Shall I get you something to read while you are waiting?
2. I haven't got anything to wear to the party.
3. Which of your three brothers is married?
   • None of them are.
4. Don't ask him about anything.
5. Nothing can happen, can it?
6. Nobody can answer this question.
   Nobody knows anything about it.
7. You can get there by any bus.
8. Now everybody understands everything. Thank you for the explanation.
9. None of my friends smoke/smokes.
10. Is anything wrong? Shall I call a doctor?
    • No, thanks, I'm just a little nervous.
11. Ask someone to help you.
    • No, I don't want to ask anybody. I'm sure I can cope with it without any help.
12. Nobody knows her here, do they?
13. If anybody asks you about it, don't tell them anything.
14. Do (Does) any of your friends go to Moscow University?
    • No, none do/does.
15. Anybody who believes it is a fool.
16. Everybody wants to see this film as they know that it is a success.
17. I'm very surprised that none of them is/are here yet.
18. I'd like to see the sights of your town.
    Can you tell me anything interesting?
19. Some of my friends want me to introduce you to them.
20. Don't you have any acquaintances here?

UNIT 8 ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

8.1 The formation of adverbs from adjectives and their use

8.2 The degrees of comparison of adjectives

8.3 Comparative constructions

8.4 Double comparatives

8.5 **The … the …** construction

Revision

8.6 The degrees of comparison of adverbs

8.1 The formation of adverbs from adjectives and their use

adjective + ly = adverb

adjective = **what kind of**? (adjective + noun)

adverb = **how**? (verb + adverb *or*
adverb + adjective / adverb / past participle)

REMEMBER

1 good (*adj*) — well (*adv*) BUT well — adjective (= not ill, in good health)

2 be, feel, look, smell, taste, sound, seem, get + ADJECTIVE

УРОК 8 ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНЫЕ И НАРЕЧИЯ

8.1 Образование наречий от прилагательных и их употребление

8.2 Степени сравнения прилагательных

8.3 Сравнительные конструкции

8.4 Двойные степени сравнения

8.5 Конструкция the … the …

Повторение

8.6 Степени сравнения наречий

8.1 Образование наречий от прилагательных и их употребление

bad — badly heavy — heavily beautiful — beautifully easy — easily

It's a **nice day** today.

Please, **listen carefully**. I'm **awfully sorry**. He learns poems **incredibly quickly**. The party is **badly organized**.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

1 She is a good student. She studies well.
How are you? — I'm quite well.

2 It's quite cold today. Mary is very quiet.
He says he feels angry with us.
What's the matter? You look sad. (значение — «выглядеть»)
What's for dinner? It smells so good.
This cake tastes wonderful.
It sounds interesting. Tell me more about it.
Your friend seems shy.
It's getting cold.

3	fast hard late early daily (monthly, weekly, etc.)	ADJECTIVE = ADVERB
4	hardly = scarcely, with difficulty	
5	adjectives ending with **LY**	NO ADVERB

Exercise 1

Decide whether the words in bold type are right or wrong.
Correct those which are wrong.

MODEL: The exam is **surprising** easy.
Be **careful**! Don't break the vase.

1. She speaks **perfectly** English.
2. She plays tennis **well**.
3. The soup smells very **strangely**.
4. Tell me everything **honestly**.
5. He always speaks **loudly and clearly**.
6. Do you think that's a **really** diamond in her necklace?
7. Give me a blanket. I feel **terrible** cold.
8. I'm surprised how **easy** he makes friends.
9. I find the test rather **hard**.
10. My friends live **nearly** the school.
11. Why are you looking (at me) so **angry**?
12. You look so **well** today!
13. I think this sportsman can win the competition. He runs **fast**.
14. We have **month** meetings.
15. Don't be so **silly**.
16. It's a **beautiful** decorated house.
17. He studies **bad**, he isn't a **hardly**-working student.

3	John is a fast swimmer.	John can swim very fast.
	This is hard work.	She works hard.
	You are late again.	I often come home very late.
	She is an early riser.	She gets up early.
	This is a daily paper.	The paper arrives daily.
4	I can hardly understand a word in this text.	
5	Sue is **a friendly person**. She **behaves in a friendly manner**.	

Упражнение 1

Решите, правильно ли употреблены выделенные слова.
Исправьте неверный вариант.

WRONG — surprisingly
RIGHT

1. WRONG — perfect
2. RIGHT
3. WRONG — strange
4. RIGHT
5. RIGHT
6. WRONG — real
7. WRONG — terribly
8. WRONG — easily
9. RIGHT
10. WRONG — near
11. WRONG — angrily
12. RIGHT
13. RIGHT
14. WRONG — monthly
15. RIGHT
16. WRONG — beautifully
17. WRONG — badly, hard

18. I can't eat this fish. It tastes **awful**.
19. I always feel **nervously** before exams.
20. The children are **unusual lively** today.

Exercise 2

Choose the correct variant.

1. The firm is very **efficient**/**efficiently** organized.
2. I have an **awful**/**awfully** headache. Please, be **quiet**/**quietly**.
3. We must meet them. Their train arrives **late**/**lately**.
4. That's a **real**/**really** wonderful dress. It must be very expensive
5. Her hair is **soft**/**softly** and curly.
6. Is the girl **good**/**well** brought up?
7. Everybody says that she sings **bad**/**badly**.
8. Hurry up, George! Why are you always so **slow**/**slowly**?
9. I don't remember the rule very **good**/**well**.
10. He is very difficult to deal with.
    He can't explain anything **clear**/**clearly**.
11. I can't imagine how he passes his exams.
    He **hard**/**hardly** studies at all.
12. She is very **patient**/**patiently** with her pupils.
    She treats them **fair**/**fairly**.
13. The house is very old. The roof doesn't look **safe**/**safely**.
14. I'm a little tired but I feel **good**/**well**.
15. The food in our hotel is **wonderful**/**wonderfully**. It always smells and tastes **pleasant**/**pleasantly**.

Exercise 3

Complete the sentences according to the model.

MODEL: Alice can cook very well.

1. The child is very quiet. She usually speaks … .
2. Nick is a good dancer. He dances … .

18. RIGHT
19. WRONG — nervous
20. WRONG — unusually lively

Упражнение 2

Выберите правильный вариант.

1. The firm is very **efficiently** organized.
2. I have an **awful** headache. Please, be **quiet**.
3. Their train arrives **late**.
4. That's a **really** wonderful dress.
5. Her hair is **soft** and curly.
6. Is the girl **well** brought up?
7. Everybody says that she sings **badly**.
8. Why are you always so **slow**?
9. I don't remember the rule very **well**.
10. He can't explain anything **clearly**.
11. He **hardly** studies at all.
12. She is very **patient** with her pupils.
    She treats them **fairly**.
13. The roof doesn't look **safe**.
14. I'm a little tired but I feel **well**.
15. The food in our hotel is **wonderful**.
    It always smells and tastes **pleasant**.

Упражнение 3

Закончите предложения, как показано в модели.

Alice is a good cook.

1. She usually speaks very quietly.
2. He dances well.

3.	The wages in the company are bad.	They pay their workers….
4.	Do everything carefully.	Be … .
5.	It's easy.	You can do it … .
6.	These flowers have a sweet smell.	These flowers smell … .
7.	Her Spanish is very good.	She speaks Spanish very … .
8.	I think this is an interesting idea.	The idea sounds … .
9.	Susan is usually a hard-working student.	She usually works … .
10.	His arrival is always unexpected.	He always arrives … .
11.	She does everything quickly.	She is a … person.
12.	My mother isn't very well today.	My mother doesn't feel … .
13.	The current is very rapid.	The water flows very … .
14.	They are rich.	They look … .
15.	The children behave well today.	The children's behaviour … .

Exercise 4

Translate into English.

1. У Джейн хорошо оплачиваемая работа.
2. Ты все можешь сделать как следует, если очень постараешься.
3. Осенью парк всегда выглядит очень красиво.
4. Она мне нравится. Она разговаривает вежливо и дружелюбно.
5. Это необыкновенно способная студентка.
6. У него болит горло. Он с трудом может говорить.
7. Он действительно хороший врач.
8. Я плохо себя чувствую в жаркую погоду.
9. Приятно посмотреть на хорошо одетого человека.
10. Иногда зимой становится по-настоящему холодно.
11. Его трудно учить: он внимательно слушает, но думает медленно.
12. Почему ты такой неаккуратный?
    Твоя комната все время в беспорядке (неопрятна).
13. Она хорошо готовит, и все её блюда так вкусно пахнут.

3. They pay their workers badly.
4. Be careful.
5. You can do it easily.
6. These flowers smell sweet.
7. She speaks Spanish very well.
8. The idea sounds interesting.
9. She usually works hard.
10. He always arrives unexpectedly.
11. She is a quick person.
12. My mother doesn't feel well today.
13. The water flows very rapidly.
14. They look rich.
15. The children's behaviour is good today.

Упражнение 4

Переведите на английский.

1. Jane has a well-paid job.
2. You can do everything properly if you try hard.
3. In autumn the park always looks very beautiful.
4. I like her. She speaks politely and in a friendly way.
5. This is an unusually gifted student.
6. He has a sore throat. He can hardly speak.
7. He is a really good doctor.
8. I feel bad (I don't feel well) in hot weather.
9. A well-dressed person is nice to look at.
10. Sometimes it gets really cold in winter.
11. He is difficult to teach (It's difficult to teach him): he listens attentively, but he thinks slowly. (He is an attentive listener but a slow thinker.)
12. Why are you so careless?
    Your room is always untidy.
13. She cooks well (She is a good cook) and all her dishes smell so delicious.

14. Его родители хотят, чтобы он стал хорошим пианистом, но он плохо играет.
15. Они много работают. Им приходится рано вставать и поздно ложиться.
16. Веди машину осторожно. Не надо ехать быстро.
17. Мэри ужасно расстроена из-за болезни ребенка. У неё бледный и усталый вид.
18. Я люблю смотреть телевизор, но почти не (едва) слушаю радио.
19. Она говорит, что чувствует себя нормально, но я знаю, что она плохо спит.
20. Давай проведем отпуск у моря! — Звучит здорово!

8.2 The degrees of comparison of adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1-syllable adjectives 2-syllable adjectives ending in **-y**	**+ er**	**+ est**
Other 2- and more syllable adjectives	**more**	**most**

REMEMBER

1 clever, common, stupid, narrow, shallow, gentle, friendly, simple, quiet — **-er/est** or **more/most**.

2 good — better — the best
bad — worse — the worst
little — less — the least
much/many — more — the most

14. His parents want him to be a good pianist but he plays the piano badly.
15. They work a lot. They have to get up early and to go to bed late.
16. Drive (the car) carefully. Don't drive fast.
17. Mary is terribly upset about her child's illness. She looks pale and tired.
18. I like watching TV but I hardly listen to the radio.
19. She says she feels fine but I know that she sleeps badly.
20. Let's spend the holiday (the vacation) at the seaside! — It sounds great.

8.2 Степени сравнения прилагательных

ПОЛОЖИТЕЛЬНАЯ	СРАВНИТЕЛЬНАЯ	ПРЕВОСХОДНАЯ
nice lucky	nicer luckier	the nicest the luckiest
careful	more careful	the most careful

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

1 quiet — quieter, more quiet — the quietest, the most quiet
clever — cleverer, more clever — the cleverest, the most clever

2 Mary is my best friend.
Your mark is worse today.
I need less time for this work.
May I have some more milk, please?
Most people like this kind of music.

Exercise 5

Form the comparative and the superlative degrees of the following adjectives.

1. dirty
2. thin
3. pleasant
4. pale
5. comfortable
6. powerful
7. few
8. little
9. long
10. lazy
11. cheerful
12. fat
13. good
14. tired
15. beautiful
16. quiet
17. bad
18. narrow
19. bitter
20. famous

8.3 Comparative constructions

Comparative + **than**

much (**far**) + comparative + **than**

as + positive + **as**

not as (**so**) + positive + **as**

Упражнение 5

Образуйте сравнительную и превосходную степени следующих прилагательных.

1. dirtier — the dirtiest
2. thinner — the thinnest
3. more pleasant — the most pleasant
4. paler — the palest
5. more comfortable — the most comfortable
6. more powerful — the most powerful
7. fewer — the fewest
8. less — the least
9. longer — the longest
10. lazier — the laziest
11. more cheerful — the most cheerful
12. fatter — the fattest
13. better — the best
14. more tired — the most tired
15. more beautiful — the most beautiful
16. quieter/more quiet — the quietest/the most quiet
17. worse — the worst
18. narrower/more narrow — the narrowest/the most narrow
19. bitterer/more bitter — the bitterest/the most bitter
20. more famous — the most famous

8.3 Сравнительные конструкции

This book is **more interesting than** that one. — …, чем …

Her composition is **much (far) better than** his. — гораздо, намного …, чем …

This book is **as interesting as** that one. — такая же …, как …

This book **is not as (so) interesting as** that one. — не такая, как …

Exercise 6

Compare Mary and Sheila.

1. Mary … 21. Sheila … 23.
2. Mary … 63 kg. Sheila … 81.
3. Mary … 1 meter 66 tall. Sheila … 1 meter 58 tall.
4. Mary … a good dancer. Sheila … not a very good dancer.
5. Mary … very intelligent. Sheila … not very intelligent.
6. Mary … has little money. Sheila … has a lot of money.
7. Mary … very practical. Sheila … not very practical.
8. Mary … knows two languages. Sheila … knows one language.
9. Mary … very pretty. Sheila … not very pretty.
10. Mary … responsible. Sheila … not very responsible .

Exercise 7

Make up sentences from the words given using the construction "**much** (**far**)+ comparative + **than**".

MODEL: the Amazon, far, long, the Thames

1. the computer, much, fast, the typewriter
2. a sofa, much, comfortable, a bench
3. a plane, far, expensive, a train
4. Japanese, much, difficult, Spanish
5. in Russia, much, cold, in Great Britain
6. rock and roll, far, popular, jazz?
7. Great Britain, much, small, the USA
8. to rest, much, good, to work
9. the underground, far, convenient, a trolley-bus
10. books by O. Henry, much, funny, books by Jerome K. Jerome?

Упражнение 6

Сравните Мэри и Шейлу.

1. Mary is younger than Sheila. (Sheila is older than Mary.)
2. Mary is lighter than Sheila. (Sheila is heavier than Mary.)
3. Mary is taller than Sheila. (Sheila is shorter than Mary.)
4. Mary is a better dancer than Sheila.
   (Sheila is a worse dancer than Mary.)
5. Mary is more intelligent than Sheila.
   (Sheila is less intelligent than Mary.)
6. Mary has less money than Sheila.
   (Sheila has more money than Mary.)
7. Mary is more practical than Sheila.
   (Sheila is less practical than Mary.)
8. Mary knows more languages than Sheila.
   (Sheila knows fewer languages than Mary.)
9. Mary is prettier than Sheila.
10. Mary is more responsible than Sheila.
    (Sheila is less responsible than Mary.)

Упражнение 7

Составьте предложения из данных слов, используя конструкцию "**much** (**far**) + comparative + **than**".

The Amazon is far longer than the Thames.

1. The computer is much faster than the typewriter.
2. A sofa is much more comfortable than a bench.
3. A plane is far more expensive than a train.
4. Japanese is much more difficult than Spanish.
5. It's much colder in Russia than in Great Britain.
6. Is rock and roll far more popular than jazz?
7. Great Britain is much smaller than the USA.
8. To rest is much better than to work.
9. The underground is far more convenient than a trolley-bus.
10. Are books by O. Henry much funnier than books by Jerome K. Jerome?

Exercise 8

Change the sentences according to the model.

MODEL: Which bag do you like better? (nice)

1. Which picture do you like better? (beautiful)
2. Which room do you like better? (light)
3. Which book do you like better? (interesting)
4. Which film do you like better? (bad)
5. Which exercise do you like better? (easy)

Exercise 9

Change the following sentences according to the model.

MODEL: Room 5 is smaller than Room 8.

1. Mary is older than she looks.
2. It's colder today than yesterday.
3. Steve's car is more expensive than William's.
4. Nick gets less money than Jack.
5. My flat is smaller than John's.
6. This dictionary is worse than that.
7. Your letter is shorter than mine.
8. The weather today is more unpleasant than yesterday.
9. Women read fewer thrillers than men do.
10. The examination is more difficult than we expected.

Exercise 10

Make up sentences using the superlative degree of the adjective.

MODEL 1: This is a very nice picture. (at the exhibition)

1. This is a very beautiful girl. (at the party)
2. This is a very expensive dress. (in the shop)
3. This is a very lazy student. (in the group)
4. Ted is a very good tennis player. (in the club)
5. She is a very popular actress. (in this country)

Упражнение 8

Измените предложения, как показано в модели.

I believe this bag is as nice as that.

1. I believe this picture is as beautiful as that.
2. I believe this room is as light as that.
3. I believe this book is as interesting as that.
4. I believe this film is as bad as that.
5. I believe this exercise is as easy as that.

Упражнение 9

Измените следующие предложения, как показано в модели.

Room 5 isn't as large as room 8.

1. Mary isn't as young as she looks.
2. It isn't as warm today as (it was) yesterday.
3. Steve's car isn't as cheap as William's.
4. Nick doesn't get as much money as Jack.
5. My flat isn't as large as John's.
6. This dictionary isn't as good as that.
7. Your letter isn't as long as mine.
8. The weather today isn't as pleasant as yesterday.
9. Women don't read as many thrillers as men do.
10. The examination isn't as easy as we expected.

Упражнение 10

Составьте предложения, используя превосходную степень прилагательного.

This is the nicest picture at the exhibition.

1. This is the most beautiful girl at the party.
2. This is the most expensive dress in the shop.
3. This is the laziest student in the group.
4. Ted is the best tennis player in the club.
5. She is the most popular actress in this country.

MODEL 2: This is a very happy day. (in my life)

1. He is a very famous scientist. (in the world)
2. This is a very funny story. (in the book)
3. This is a very bad mistake. (in your test)
4. She is a very good teacher. (in this school)
5. This is a very ancient church. (on this island)

Exercise 11

Answer the questions according to the model.

MODEL: Which is higher: Everest, Mont Blanc, or the Matterhorn?

1. Which is bigger: London, Geneva, or Tokyo?
2. Which is more comfortable: an armchair, a chair, or a bench?
3. Which is hotter: Greenland, Spain, or India?
4. Which is drier: England, Sicily, or the Sahara?
5. Which is more expensive: gold, silver, or copper?

Exercise 12

Fill in the blanks.

1. John and Maria are the same age. John is … old … Maria.
2. Mt. Everest is … than the Mont Blanc.
3. There are … letters in the word “cat”… in the word “mouse”.
4. Samuel has $1000. Jim has $500. Samuel has … money … Jim.
   Jim has … money … Samuel.
5. Both Jane and Alice have two children. Jane has … … children … Alice.
6. Bill has two litres of milk. Charles has one litre of milk.
   Charles has … milk … Bill.
7. I have three cars. You have two cars. I have … cars … you.
   You have … cars … me.
8. Hans is 30 years old. Sam is 25. Hans is … … Sam. Sam is … … Hans.

This is one of the happiest days in my life.

1. He is one of the most famous scientists in the world.
2. This is one of the funniest stories in the book.
3. This is one of the worst mistakes in your test.
4. She is one of the best teachers in this school.
5. This is one of the most ancient churches on this island.

Упражнение 11

Ответьте на вопросы, как показано в модели.

Mont Blanc is higher than the Matterhorn but Everest is the highest.

1. Tokyo is bigger than Geneva but London is the biggest.
2. A chair is more comfortable than a bench but an armchair is the most comfortable.
3. Spain is hotter than Greenland but India is the hottest.
4. Sicily is drier than England but the Sahara is the driest.
5. Silver is more expensive than copper but gold is the most expensive.

Упражнение 12

Заполните пропуски.

1. John is as old as Maria.
2. Mt. Everest is higher than the Mont Blanc.
3. There are fewer letters in the word “cat” than in the word “mouse”.
4. Samuel has more money than Jim.
   Jim has less money than Samuel.
5. Jane has as many children as Alice.
6. Charles has less milk than Bill.
7. I have more cars than you. You have fewer cars than me.
8. Hans is older than Sam. Sam is younger than Hans.

9. Document A is very important. Document B is not that important.
   Document A is … important … Document B.
   Document B is … … important … Document A.
10. Switzerland has … inhabitants … China.
11. Summer is very warm. Summer is … … of the four seasons.
12. Your work is very bad. Your work is much … … I thought.
13. Lucy is very pretty. Her sister is not very pretty.
    Lucy is … … … … her sister. Lucy's sister is not … … … Lucy.
14. A box of chocolates is a nice present.
    What a … present is there … a box of chocolates?
15. These shops are very good. These are … … shops in the city.

Exercise 13

Translate into English.

1. Венеция — один из самых живописных городов в мире.
2. Триллеры более популярны среди мужчин, чем среди женщин.
3. Наша квартира гораздо меньше вашей, в ней только одна комната.
4. Какая комната в вашей квартире самая большая?
5. Это упражнение такое же трудное, как и то?
6. У ваших соседей столько же детей, сколько и у вас?
7. Ваш друг делает меньше ошибок, чем Вы. Будьте внимательнее!
8. В выходные я не встаю так рано, как по будням.
9. Каждый день я разговариваю со своей лучшей подругой по телефону.
10. Давай поедем на поезде. Это гораздо дешевле, хотя и медленнее.
11. Бесс зарабатывает меньше своего мужа.
12. Она больше занята, чем её младшая сестра.
13. Майк один из самых умных студентов в нашей группе.
14. В этих краях сентябрь такой же жаркий, как и август?
    • Нет, в сентябре здесь гораздо холоднее, чем летом.
15. Наш дом такой же удобный, как дом наших соседей,
    но он немного больше.
16. В этой комнате гораздо меньше мебели, чем в той. Здесь светлее.
17. Где лучше ловить рыбу: в озере или в реке?
18. Летом гораздо легче вставать рано, чем зимой.
19. Моя дочь не такая высокая, как эта девочка.

9. Document A is more important than Document B.
   Document B is not so important as Document A.
10. Switzerland has fewer inhabitants than China.
11. Summer is the warmest of the four seasons.
12. Your work is much worse than I thought.
13. Lucy is prettier than her sister.
    Lucy's sister is not as pretty as Lucy.
14. What a nicer present is there than a box of chocolates?
15. These are the best shops in the city.

Упражнение 13

Переведите на английский.

1. Venice is one of the most picturesque cities in the world.
2. Thrillers are more popular with men than with women.
3. Our flat is much smaller than yours, there is only one room in it.
4. Which is the largest room in your flat?
5. Is this exercise as difficult as that one?
6. Do your neighbours have as many children as you?
7. Your friend makes fewer mistakes than you. Be more careful!
8. At week-ends I don't get up as early as on week-days.
9. I speak to my best friend on the phone every day.
10. Let's go by train. It's much cheaper, though slower.
11. Bess earns less than her husband.
12. She is busier than her younger sister.
13. Mike is one of the cleverest students in our group.
14. Is September as hot as August in these parts?
    • No, it's much colder here in September than in summer.
15. Our house is as comfortable as our neighbours' one,
    but it's a little larger.
16. There is much less furniture in this room than in that one. It's lighter here.
17. Where is it better to fish: in a lake or in a river?
18. It's much easier to get up early in summer than in winter.
19. My daughter isn't as tall as this girl.

20. Этот фильм не хуже того, который я видела на прошлой неделе.
21. Это кратчайший путь до станции?
22. Это задание не так просто, как кажется.
23. Я думаю, это самый красивый парк в Москве.
24. Обычно погода в июле гораздо лучше, чем в августе.
25. Мой брат такой же красивый и сильный, как и твой.
26. Почему сегодня в магазине меньше людей, чем обычно?
27. Она одна из самых известных оперных певиц в мире, не так ли?
28. В этом упражнении у вас столько же ошибок, как и в первом.
29. Этот вопрос гораздо важнее предыдущего, поэтому обсуждение дольше.
30. Сегодня у меня меньше свободного времени, чем вчера.
31. Это самая интересная книга, которая у меня есть. Я советую тебе прочесть её.
32. Его знания по английскому не такие хорошие, как по немецкому.
33. Наша улица уже, чем эта, но на ней больше деревьев.
34. Мой брат такого же возраста, как и этот молодой человек, но он гораздо умнее его.
35. Её доклад хуже всех. Он самый неинтересный.

8.4 Double comparatives

far — farther — the farthest	(for distance)
further — the furthest	(for time and distance)

near — nearer — the nearest	(for distance)
the next	(for order)

late — later — the latest	(for time)
latter — the last	(for order)

20. This film is no worse than the one I saw last week.
21. Is this the shortest way to the station?
22. This task is not as simple as it seems.
23. I think this is the most beautiful park in Moscow.
24. The weather in July is usually much better than in August.
25. My brother is as handsome and strong as yours.
26. Why are there fewer people in the shop today than usual?
27. She is one of the most famous opera singers in the world, isn't she?
28. In this exercise you have as many mistakes as in the first one.
29. This question is much more important than the previous one, that's why the discussion is longer.
30. Today I have less free time than yesterday.
31. This is the most interesting book I have. I advise you to read it.
32. His knowledge of English isn't as good as his knowledge of German.
33. Our street is narrower than this one but there are more trees in it.
34. My brother is as old as this young man, but he is much cleverer than he is.
35. Her report is the worst. It's the least interesting.

8.4 Двойные степени сравнения

Go **farther (further)** along the road. • Идите **дальше** по дороге. For **further** information speak to the secretary. • За **дальнейшей** информацией обратитесь к секретарю.

I like to sit **nearer** to the window. • Я люблю сидеть **поближе** к окну. Where is the nearest metro station? • Где **ближайшая** станция метро? Who is **the next** one? • Кто **следующий**?

Would you like to read his **latest** book? • Вы не хотели бы прочитать его **последнюю** (которая недавно опубликована) книгу? May I come a little **later**? • Можно мне прийти **попозже**? When does **the last** train start? • Когда отходит **последний** поезд. George and Sam are great friends. **The former** is a bank manager and **the latter** is a scientist. • … **первый** … **второй (из упомянутых)**

old — older — the oldest	(for age in general)
elder — the eldest	(for seniority, used only as an attribute with the nouns son, daughter, sister, brother)

Exercise 14

Choose the correct form of the comparative or the superlative degree.

1. I can't walk any (far) without having a rest.
2. (near) house is a few miles away.
3. My uncle was (old) son in the family.
4. This is (old) theatre in London.
5. For (far) information consult the reference book.
6. My sister's husband is five years (old) than mine.
7. Do you know (late) news ?
8. We can discuss our mistakes at (near) lesson.
9. You can speak to Mr. Brown or to Mr. Smith.
   • Oh, I don't like (late) at all, so I'd rather speak to the former.
10. John's (old) brother is my classmate.
11. Can you move a little (near) to the camera.
12. Alice was (late) to come.
13. This house is one of (old) in the district.
14. Your house is (far) from the station than I thought.
15. My (old) sister has a family of her own. She doesn't live with us.
16. N's (late) novel is a great success.
17. Let's start the discussion of (near) item on the agenda.
18. My (old) brother is five years (old) than me and my (old) brother is only two years (old). We are all great friends.
19. Can you phone him (late) in the evening? He's very busy now.
20. Do you see that red house, (far) from here? This is the one you need.

My father is a year **older** than my mother. • Мой папа на год **старше** мамы. Who is **the oldest** in your class? • Кто **самый старший** в вашем классе?

My **elder** brother is eight years **older** than me. • Мой **старший** брат на восемь лет меня **старше**. Helen is **the eldest** of the three sisters. • Лена — **самая старшая** из трех сестер.

Упражнение 14

Выберите правильную форму сравнительной или превосходной степеней.

1. I can't walk any farther without having a rest.
2. The nearest house is a few miles away.
3. My uncle was the eldest son in the family.
4. This is the oldest theatre in London.
5. For further information consult the reference book.
6. My sister's husband is five years older than mine.
7. Do you know the latest news?
8. We can discuss our mistakes at the next lesson.
9. Oh, I don't like the latter at all, so I'd rather speak to the former.
10. John's elder brother is my classmate.
11. Can you move a little nearer to the camera?
12. Alice was the last to come.
13. This house is one of the oldest in the district.
14. Your house is farther from the station than I thought.
15. My elder sister has a family of her own.
16. N's latest novel is a great success.
17. Let's start the discussion of the next item on the agenda.
18. My eldest brother is five years older than me and my elder brother is only two years older.
19. Can you phone him later in the evening?
20. Do you see the red house, the farthest from here?

Exercise 15

Translate into English.

1. Вам лучше сойти на следующей остановке, она ближе к зданию, которое вам нужно.
2. Давай встретимся попозже: театр прямо рядом с метро.
3. Последний автобус отходит ровно в 11.
4. Подойдите поближе к старику и говорите громче: он плохо слышит.
5. В семье трое детей, Ник — самый старший.
6. Эти книги там, на дальней полке.
7. Мне надо полчаса, чтобы доехать до ближайшей станции метро. Это очень неудобно.
8. В соседней комнате кто-нибудь есть?
9. Чем занимается твой старший брат? • Он юрист.
10. Последняя выставка этого художника имела огромный успех.
11. Присылайте ваши дальнейшие предложения в письменном виде.
12. У неё две дочери: старшая — студентка, младшая — ещё школьница.
13. Эти два молодых человека — Пит и Джек. На последнем серый костюм.
14. На сколько твой старший брат тебя старше?
15. Она самая старая учительница в этой школе.
16. Увидимся на следующей неделе.
17. Моя лучшая подруга на два года старше своего мужа.
18. Это ближайший путь на вокзал?
19. Говорю тебе об этом в последний раз.
20. Ей всего 20 лет, но выглядит она старше.

8.5 "The ... the ..." construction

the + comparative …, + **the** + comparative …

Упражнение 15

Переведите на английский.

1. You'd better get off at the next stop. It's nearer to the building you need.
2. Let's meet later: the theatre is right near the metro station.
3. The last bus leaves at eleven sharp.
4. Come nearer to the old man and speak louder: he doesn't hear well.
5. There are three children in the family, Nick is the eldest.
6. These books are there, on the farthest shelf.
7. It takes me half an hour to get to the nearest metro station. It's very inconvenient.
8. Is there anyone in the next room?
9. What is your elder brother? • He is a lawyer.
10. This painter's latest exhibition was a great success.
11. Send your further suggestions in written form.
12. She has two daughters: the elder is a student, the younger is still a schoolgirl.
13. These two young men are Pete and Jack. The latter is wearing a grey suit.
14. How much is your elder brother older than you?
15. She is the oldest teacher in this school.
16. See you next week!
17. My best friend is two years older than her husband.
18. Is this the nearest way to the railway station?
19. This is the last time I have told you about it.
20. She is only 20 but she looks older.

8.5 Конструкция "The ... the ..."

The earlier we leave, ***t*he sooner** we'll arrive.
• **Чем раньше**…, **тем скорее** …

Exercise 16

Complete the sentences using the construction **the … the**.

1. (hot) the weather, (bad) I feel.
2. (much) you have, (much) you want.
3. (little) you talk, (good).
4. (early) you come, (early) you'll be able to leave.
5. (much) you study, (much) you know; but (much) you know, (much) you forget.
6. Do you agree that (early) you get married, (good) it is?
7. (hard) you work, (good) results you get.
8. (generous) the person is, (popular) he is.
9. (little) you earn, (little) you spend.
10. (many) friends you have, (happy) you are.

Exercise 17

Translate into English.

1. Чем раньше вы выйдете, тем скорее приедете.
2. По-моему, чем дороже отель, тем лучше обслуживание.
3. Чем человек честнее, тем меньше у него проблем.
4. Не люблю, когда кто-нибудь опаздывает.
   Чем дольше я жду, тем нетерпеливее становлюсь.
5. Чем больше ребенок будет читать, тем лучше.
6. Чем больше работы мы выполним сегодня, тем легче нам будет завтра.
7. Чем труднее задание, тем больше времени нужно, чтобы его выполнить.
8. Чем больше вы поправляетесь, тем хуже вы себя чувствуете.
9. По-моему, чем меньше мебели в комнате, тем она светлее.
10. Чем дешевле вещь, тем ниже качество.

Упражнение 16

Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию **the … the**.

1. The hotter the weather, the worse I feel.
2. The more you have, the more you want.
3. The less you talk, the better.
4. The earlier you come, the earlier you'll be able to leave.
5. The more you study, the more you know; but the more you know, the more you forget.
6. Do you agree that the earlier you get married, the better it is?
7. The harder you work, the better results you get.
8. The more generous the person is, the more popular he is.
9. The less you earn, the less you spend.
10. The more friends you have, the happier you are.

Упражнение 17

Переведите на английский.

1. The earlier you leave, the sooner you'll arrive.
2. In my opinion, the more expensive the hotel, the better the service.
3. The more honest the person is, the fewer problems he has.
4. I don't like anybody to be late.
   The longer I wait, the more impatient I get.
5. The more the child reads, the better.
6. The more work we do today, the easier it will be for us tomorrow.
7. The more difficult the task, the more time you need to do it.
8. The more weight you put on, the worse you feel.
9. In my opinion, the less furniture there is in the room, the lighter it is.
10. The cheaper the thing, the lower the quality.

Exercise 18

REVISION Find possible mistakes and correct them.

MODEL: I am cleverer than my sister.
New York is moderner than London.

1. Mary is pleasanter than Janet.
2. Jane is more polite than Alice.
3. They are busier than we are.
4. Please be quieter!
5. My sentence is correcter than yours.
6. You must be more gentle!
7. This exercise is more easy than that one.
8. A lemon is more bitter than an orange.
9. You must be carefuler!
10. Why can't you be more honest?
11. Can you be exacter?
12. This machine is simpler than the others.
13. This road is narrower than the others.
14. This issue is more urgent than that.
15. He is getting more stupid every day.
16. Can you come more early next time?
17. I'm handsomer than my brother.
18. The weather is much more worse today.
19. I feel much better today then yesterday.
20. This is your worse mistake.
21. Nick looks elder than his older brother.
22. Flying is much fast than travelling by car.
23. We are going to travel by car. It's much cheaper.
24. Einstein is one of intelligent scientists who ever lived.
25. You should be far more serious when you talk to your partner.
26. Watermelons are much sweeter as lemons.

Упражнение 18

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ Найдите возможные ошибки и исправьте их.

RIGHT
WRONG — more modern

1. WRONG — more pleasant
2. RIGHT
3. RIGHT
4. RIGHT
5. WRONG — more correct
6. RIGHT
7. WRONG — easier
8. RIGHT
9. WRONG — more careful
10. RIGHT
11. WRONG — more exact
12. RIGHT
13. RIGHT
14. RIGHT
15. RIGHT
16. WRONG — earlier
17. WRONG — more handsome
18. WRONG — much worse
19. WRONG — than
20. WRONG — worst
21. WRONG — looks older than his elder brother
22. WRONG — much faster
23. RIGHT
24. WRONG — one of the most intelligent scientists
25. RIGHT
26. WRONG — much sweeter than

27. A train is the uncomfortablest place to sleep in.
28. This meal is much more better as the one I ate yesterday.
29. What we need is a more good job!
30. It's best picture I've ever seen.
31. London is more old than New York.
32. It's the most sharp pencil I have.
33. Do you know the next way to the station?
34. She is the prettiest girl I know.
35. The more you study, the smarter you become.
36. I'm three years elder than my brother.
37. The boy is as taller as his father.
38. Be activer at your lessons, please.
39. She is not as easy to speak to than her sister.
40. Health is more important money.

8.6 The degrees of comparison of adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1-syllable adverbs **early**	+ **er**	+ **est**
all other adverbs	more	most

REMEMBER

well — better — best

badly — worse — worst

much — more — most

little — less — least

27. WRONG — the most uncomfortable
28. WRONG — much better than
29. WRONG — a better job
30. WRONG — the best picture
31. WRONG — older
32. WRONG — the sharpest pencil
33. WRONG — the nearest way
34. RIGHT
35. RIGHT
36. WRONG — older
37. WRONG — as tall as
38. WRONG — more active
39. WRONG — not as easy to speak to as her sister
40. WRONG — more important than money

8.6 Степени сравнения наречий

НАЧАЛЬНАЯ	СРАВНИТЕЛЬНАЯ	ПРЕВОСХОДНАЯ
hard early	harder earlier	hardest earliest
beautifully	more beautifully	most beautifully

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

She writes English better than her friend.

He plays the piano worst of all.

He earns much more now.

Mike knows little, Nick knows less than Mike,
but George knows least of all.

Exercise 19

Read the following dialogues and say how the people spoke. Make up positive or negative sentences using comparative constructions with adverbs.

Angela: Er… Excuse me… er… er…
Beryl: Hurry up! What do you want?

Charles: Idiot! Look what you've done to my car!
David: Mine is damaged too, Sir.

MODEL: Angela … (calm) … David.

1. Beryl … (angry) … Charles.
2. Beryl and Charles … (rude) … Angela and David.
3. David … (calm) … Charles.
4. Charles … (polite) … David.
5. Charles … (loud) … anybody.
6. David … (nervous) … Angela.
7. Beryl… (impatient) … Angela.
8. Nobody … (impolite) … Charles.
9. Angela … (slow) … of all.
10. Angela and David … (polite) … Beryl and Charles.

Exercise 20

Make up sentences using the correct degree of an adjective or an adverb.

1. Which are the two (wide/widely) spoken languages in the world?
2. Alex is the most intelligent, but Sandra works (hard/hardly) of all.
3. Which group of languages has the (complicated/complicatedly) verb forms?
4. Of all the children in her class Alice reads (fluent/fluently).
5. We're moving too fast. Can you drive (slow/slowly)?
6. He is a (safe/safely) driver than I am.
7. French is the language he speaks (easy/easily).

Упражнение 19

Прочтите диалоги и скажите, в какой манере разговаривали люди. Составьте утвердительные или отрицательные предложения, используя сравнительные конструкции с наречиями.

Angela didn't speak as calmly as David.

1. Beryl didn't speak as angrily as Charles.
2. Beryl and Charles spoke more rudely than Angela and David.
3. David spoke more calmly than Charles.
4. Charles didn't speak as politely as David.
5. Charles spoke more loudly than anybody.
6. David didn't speak as nervously as Angela.
7. Beryl spoke more impatiently than Angela.
8. Nobody spoke as impolitely as Charles.
9. Angela spoke most slowly of all.
10. Angela and David spoke more politely than Beryl and Charles.

Упражнение 20

Составьте предложения, используя подходящую степень сравнения прилагательного или наречия.

1. Which are the two most widely-spoken languages in the world?
2. Alex is the most intelligent, but Sandra works hardest of all.
3. Which group of languages has the most complicated verb forms?
4. Of all the children in her class Alice reads most fluently.
5. Can you drive more slowly?
6. He is a safer driver than I am.
7. French is the language he speaks most easily.

8. Most people from Japan don't speak as (loud/loudly) as people in Arab countries.
9. Which is the (common/commonly) letter in the English alphabet?
10. Which language has (clear/clearly) sounds: English or Italian?
11. She plays the piano as (good/well) as her elder sister.
12. Is it true that the (great/greatly) living linguist is George Schmidt from France?
13. Do girls usually learn foreign languages (quick/quickly) than boys?
14. People in Oxford speak English (correct/correctly) than elsewhere.
15. Ernie plays football as (bad/badly) as his brother.

Exercise 21

Translate into English.

1. Энди работает над произношением так же много, как и его старший брат? • Нет, он работает меньше. Ему гораздо легче даются иностранные языки.
2. Многие студенты говорят по-английски лучше, чем пишут.
3. Эта девочка плавает быстрее всех в группе.
4. Теперь я читаю меньше, чем несколько лет тому назад.
5. Она разговаривает так же громко, как и её мама.
6. Мой брат играет в шахматы хуже моего отца.
7. Макс всегда приходит на занятия раньше всех.
8. Французский — её второй иностранный язык.
   Она читает по-французски медленнее, чем по-английски.
9. Том всегда спорит больше всех.
10. Взрослые не так быстро засыпают, как дети.
11. Давайте попросим Кейт украсить дом к вечеринке. Она умеет это делать красивее, чем кто бы то ни было другой.
12. Знаешь, он плохо говорит по-английски, хуже, чем я ожидал.
13. Теперь он возвращается с работы не так поздно, как раньше.
14. Мой брат обычно проводит отпуск так же хорошо, как и я.
15. Аня переводит с русского на английский хуже всех.

8. Most people from Japan don't speak as loudly as people from Arab countries.
9. Which is the most common letter in the English alphabet?
10. Which language has clearer sounds: English or Italian?
11. She plays the piano as well as her elder sister.
12. Is it true that the greatest living linguist is George Schmidt from France?
13. Do girls usually learn foreign languages more quickly than boys?
14. People in Oxford speak English more correctly than elsewhere.
15. Ernie plays football as badly as his brother.

Упражнение 21

Переведите на английский.

1. Does Andy work at his pronunciation as hard as his elder brother?
   • No, he works less. He learns foreign languages much more easily.
2. Many students speak English better than they write it.
3. This girl swims most quickly of all.
4. Now I read less than a few years ago.
5. She speaks as loudly as her mother.
6. My brother plays chess worse than my father.
7. Max comes to classes earliest of all in the group.
8. French is her second foreign language.
   She reads French more slowly than English.
9. Tom always argues most of all.
10. Adults don't fall asleep as quickly as children.
11. Let's ask Kate to decorate the house for the party.
    She can do it more beautifully than anybody else.
12. You know, he speaks English badly, worse than I expected.
13. Now he doesn't return from work as late as before.
14. My brother usually spends his vacation as well as I do.
15. Ann translates from Russian into English worst of all.

UNIT 9 THE PRONOUN *OTHER*

9.1 Pronouns **other**, **another**

9.2 Pronoun **another**

9.3 Pronoun **others**

9.4 Pronoun **the other**

9.5 Pronoun **each other/one another**

9.1 Pronouns OTHER, ANOTHER

… **some** (**any**, **no**) + **other** + a noun
… **my** (**his**) + **other** + a noun
(singular or plural)…

… **other** + a noun (plural)…

… **another** + a noun (singular)
… **another** + one …

9.2 Pronoun ANOTHER

… **another** + a noun (singular)

… **another** + five (ten, few,…) + a noun (plural)

УРОК 9 МЕСТОИМЕНИЕ OTHER

9.1 Местоимения **other**, **another** (другой, другие)

9.2 Местоимение **another** (еще один, другой)

9.3 Местоимение **others** (другие)

9.4 Местоимение **the other** (другой, другие)

9.5 Местоимение **each other/one another** (друг друга)

9.1 Местоимения OTHER, ANOTHER (другие, другой)

Give me **some other book**.
He doesn't have **any other problems**.
His other relatives don't live in Moscow.

Some people like fish, **other people** don't.

Give me **another book**.
I have this book. Give me **another one**.

9.2 Местоимение ANOTHER (ещё один, другой)

Give me **another glass** of juice.
The child wants **another sweet**.

Let me think **another five days**.

9.3 Pronoun OTHERS

… **others** = **other** + a noun (*plural*)…

9.4 Pronoun THE OTHER

the other + a noun (*singular*)
one …

the other + a noun (*plural*)…
ones = the others

9.5 Pronoun EACH OTHER / ONE ANOTHER

each other (about two people)

one another (about more than two people)

9.3 Местоимение OTHERS (другие)

Some people like fish, *others* don't.

= Some people like fish, *other people* don't.

Some children are obedient, *others are* not.

= Some children are obedient, *other children* are not.

9.4 Местоимение THE OTHER (другой)

I have *two maps* of this town. Here is *one* of them, but I can't find *the other map*.

I have *two maps* of the town. Here is *one* of them but I can't find *the other one*.

He has six cats. Two of them are in the house. Where are *the other cats*?

He has six cats. Two of them are in the house. Where are *the others*?

He has six cats. Two of them are in the house. Where are *the other ones*?

9.5 Местоимение EACH OTHER / ONE ANOTHER (друг друга)

Pete and Ann like *each other*.

Tom and his schoolfriends don't meet *one another* very often now.

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with **other / another / others / the other / the others.**

1. Give me … pen. This one doesn't write.
2. This is my dictionary and …. one is my friend's.
3. We want to visit France, Belgium and … countries in Europe.
4. This leg is all right. It's … leg that hurts.
5. Some people say the film is interesting, … people say it is dull.
6. My … English books are on that shelf.
7. They don't want to see one … .
8. There are twenty-five people in the conference hall. Ten of them are from Russia and … are from … countries.
9. Some children like cycling, … don't.
10. They looked at each … .
11. Would you like … cup of tea?
12. Which of the five dresses do you like?
    • Two of them are rather expensive and the … are not to my liking.
13. Most drivers observe safety regulations but unfortunately … don't.
14. Many young people believe it's important to know one or two foreign languages, … young people believe they can do without it.
15. I know only three people here. Please, introduce me to … guests.
16. There are only five trees in the garden. Two of them are apple-trees and … are cherry-trees.
17. Help yourself to the sandwiches. These are cheese sandwiches and … are meat sandwiches.
18. I know that the English for this stone is "ruby" but I don't know what they call … stones I see here.
19. I need … ten days to finish the work.
20. Some flowers need a lot of care, … flowers don't.

Упражнение 1

Вставьте местоимения **other / another / others / the other / the others.**

1. Give me another pen. This one doesn't write.
2. This is my dictionary and the other one is my friend's.
3. We want to visit France, Belgium and other countries in Europe.
4. This leg is all right. It's the other leg that hurts.
5. Some people say the film is interesting, other people say it's dull.
6. My other English books are on that shelf.
7. They don't want to see one another.
8. There are twenty-five people in the conference hall. Ten of them are from Russia and the others are from other countries.
9. Some children like cycling, others don't.
10. They looked at each other.
11. Would you like another cup of tea?
12. Which of the five dresses do you like?
    • Two of them are rather expensive and the others are not to my liking.
13. Most drivers observe safety regulations but unfortunately others don't.
14. Many young people believe it's important to know one or two foreign languages, other young people believe they can do without it.
15. I know only three people here. Please, introduce me to the other guests.
16. There are only five trees in the garden. Two of them are apple-trees and the others are cherry-trees.
17. Help yourself to the sandwiches. These are cheese sandwiches and the others are meat sandwiches.
18. I know that the English for this stone is "ruby" but I don't know what they call the other stones I see here.
19. I need another ten days to finish the work.
20. Some flowers need a lot of care, other flowers don't.

Exercise 2

Translate into English.

1. Хочешь еще яблоко?
2. Этот стул неустойчивый (*shaky*). Возьми какой-нибудь другой.
3. У нее два сына. Одному 11 лет, другому 14 лет.
4. Где остальные? • Боюсь, они опаздывают.
5. Если тебе нужна эта книга, пользуйся ей. Но верни другие в библиотеку.
6. Некоторые могут позволить себе путешествовать каждый год, другие не могут.
7. Только 3 студента хорошо написали контрольную, остальные сделали много ошибок.
8. Мне нравится это место. Я хочу провести здесь еще неделю.
9. Некоторые посудомоечные машины надежны, другие ненадежны.
10. Скажи остальным ребятам прийти попозже.
11. Мои родители часто спорят друг с другом.
12. Дети любят подшучивать друг над другом.
13. Где другой ботинок?
14. Я хочу попросить у него еще пятьдесят долларов.
15. Давай обсудим это в другой раз.
16. У тебя нет ничего в правой руке. Покажи другую.
17. Дайте мне еще один пакет.
18. У меня два чудесных подарка. Один — от родителей, другой — от подруги.
19. Здесь не все счета. Где остальные?
20. Я бы хотела купить еще два словаря.
21. Некоторые водители ездят аккуратно, другие — нет.
22. Я не знаю, где другая перчатка.
23. Они любят друг друга.
24. Он говорит, что хочет поработать с ним еще месяц.
25. Некоторые люди всегда приходят вовремя, другие часто опаздывают.

Упражнение 2

Переведите на английский.

1. Do you want another apple?
2. This chair is shaky. Take another one.
3. She has two sons. One is 11 years old and the other is 14.
4. Where are the others? • I'm afraid they are late.
5. If you need this book use it. But return the others to the library.
6. Some people can afford to travel every year, others can't.
7. Only three students wrote the test well, the others made a lot of mistakes.
8. I like this place. I want to spend another week here.
9. Some dishwashers are reliable, others are not.
10. Tell the other children to come later.
11. My parents often argue with each other.
12. Children like to play jokes on one another.
13. Where is the other shoe?
14. I want to ask him for another fifty dollars.
15. Let's discuss it another time.
16. There is nothing in your right hand. Show me the other one.
17. Give me another plastic bag.
18. I have two wonderful presents. One is from my parents, the other one is from a friend of mine.
19. Not all the bills are here. Where are the other ones?
20. I'd like to buy another two dictionaries.
21. Some people drive carefully, others don't.
22. I don't know where the other glove is.
23. They are in love with each other.
24. He says he wants to work with him another month.
25. Some people always come on time, others are often late.

UNIT 10 ELSE, MORE, STILL, YET

10.1 Else
10.2 More
10.3 Still
10.4 Yet

10.1 ELSE

Who else	кто еще
What else	что еще
How else	как еще
Where else	где еще
When else	когда еще
something / somebody else	что-нибудь / кто-нибудь еще
anything / anybody else	что-нибудь / кто-нибудь еще
nothing / nobody else	ничто / никто больше

REMEMBER

What other + a noun — какой (какая, какие) еще

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with **else** or **other**.

1. What … mistakes do you often make?
2. What … is he interested in?
3. What … is there in the room?
4. What … hobbies does he have?

УРОК 10 ELSE, MORE, STILL, YET

10.1 Else
10.2 More
10.3 Still
10.4 Yet

10.1 ELSE

Who else knows about it?
What else do you want to do?
How else can I do it?
Where else do they stay in summer?
When else do you go to the library?

Tell me *something else* about him.
I don't know *anything else* about it.
Nobody else understands it.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

What other ideas do you have?

Упражнение 1

Вставьте **else** или **other**.

1. What other mistakes do you often make?
2. What else is he interested in?
3. What else is there in the room?
4. What other hobbies does he have?

5. What … problems can I help you to solve?
6. Does he have any … ideas?
7. Do you want to add anything … ?
8. Nothing … worries him.
9. I want to ask you some … questions.
10. What … colours do you like?
11. What … do you want to change?
12. What … changes do you want to make?
13. I believe it is important to mention something … .
14. No … details are usually given in a case like that.
15. What … helps you to overcome difficulties?

Exercise 2

Translate into English.

1. Кто еще помогает вам присматривать за детьми?
2. Какой еще фильм тебе нравится?
3. Чем еще вы взволнованы?
4. Это слово значит «что-нибудь еще»?
5. Где еще продают эту книгу?
6. Скажите мне, когда еще вы хотите встретиться.
7. Как еще ты любишь проводить свободное время?
8. Какие еще рассказы этого писателя тебе нравятся?
9. Куда еще вы хотите съездить летом?
10. Что еще вы о нем знаете?
11. В этой коробке есть что-нибудь еще?
12. В его переводе есть еще какие-нибудь ошибки?
13. Мне кажется, вы хотите сказать что-то еще.
14. Кого еще ты хочешь пригласить на обед?
15. Когда у меня болит голова, больше ничего мне не помогает.
16. Я не вижу другого выхода из положения.
17. Какие еще новости есть у вас?
18. На столе больше ничего нет.
19. Где еще вы покупаете одежду?
20. Как еще можно туда добраться?

5. What other problems can I help you to solve?
6. Does she have any other ideas?
7. Do you want to add anything else?
8. Nothing else worries him.
9. I want to ask you some other questions.
10. What other colours do you like?
11. What else do you want to change?
12. What other changes do you want to make?
13. I believe it is important to mention something else.
14. No other details are usually given in a case like that.
15. What else helps you to overcome difficulties?

Упражнение 2

Переведите на английский.

1. Who else helps you to look after your children?
2. What other film do you like?
3. What else are you worried about?
4. Does this word mean “anything else”?
5. Where else do they sell this book?
6. Tell me when else you want to meet.
7. How else do you like to spend free time?
8. What other stories by this writer do you like?
9. Where else do you want to go in summer?
10. What else do you know about him?
11. Is there anything else in this box?
12. Are there any other mistakes in his translation?
13. It seems to me you want to say something else.
14. Who else do you want to ask to dinner?
15. When I have a headache nothing else helps me.
16. I don’t see any other way out.
17. What other news do you have?
18. There is nothing else on the table.
19. Where else do you buy clothes?
20. How else can I get there?

10.2 MORE

… one more + a noun (singular) … = another

… two (a lot, some, a few …) more + a noun (plural)… = another

more + a noun (plural or uncountable)

… any more + a noun (plural or uncountable)
… any more…

How much more…
How many more…

10.3 STILL

\+ still — все еще

– still — все еще

? still — еще (все еще)

10.4 YET

– yet — пока еще не

? yet — уже

10.2 MORE (еще)

Give me *one more glass* of juice, please.
= Give me *another glass* of juice.

Let me think *five more days*.
= Let me think *another five days*.

I need *more books*.
I need *more time*.

I don't need *any more books*.
I don't want to listen to it *any more*.

How much more time do you need?
How many more books do you need?

10.3 STILL (еще)

We *still* have a lot to do.
There is *still* a chance.
He *still* works in Brazil.

I *still* don't understand it.

Is he *still* here?

10.4 YET (пока еще, уже)

He isn't here *yet*.
I don't know how to do it *yet*.

Is he here *yet*?
Do you know about it *yet*?

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with **ELSE**, **MORE**, **STILL**, **YET**.

1. I need … paint to whitewash the fence.
2. Who … wants to join us?
3. I don't know how to do it … .
4. Is Pete … in hospital?
5. Is your son … afraid of dogs?
6. I want to learn one … foreign language.
7. If you are … interested in this problem I can give you an interesting article.
8. Is dinner ready … ?
9. The child doesn't go to school….
10. Does anybody … understand what he wants?
11. I don't want any … coffee.
12. Is there anyone … who can do it as well as he can?
13. If anybody … phones, tell them I'm not at home … .
14. Though it's November some trees are … covered with leaves.
15. Do you know the truth … ? • No, not … .
16. He … doesn't want to talk to us though he understands he is wrong.
17. Don't draw conclusions. We … have little information. We need … details.
18. Don't switch on the light. It isn't dark … .
19. Is she ready to leave … ? • No, she isn't. She is … dressing.
20. If you learn anything … tell us at once.

Exercise 4

Translate into English.

1. Они все еще любят друг друга?
2. Я пока еще не вожу машину.
3. Нам нужно еще денег, чтобы купить этот дом.
4. Кто-нибудь еще знает, как перевести это предложение?
5. Фильм еще не закончился (to be over).

Упражнение 3

Вставьте **ELSE**, **MORE**, **STILL**, **YET**.

1. I need more paint to whitewash the fence.
2. Who else wants to join us?
3. I don't know how to do it yet.
4. Is Pete still in hospital?
5. Is your son still afraid of dogs?
6. I want to learn one more foreign language.
7. If you are still interested in this problem I can give you an interesting article.
8. Is dinner ready yet?
9. The child doesn't go to school yet.
10. Does anybody else understand what he wants?
11. I don't want any more coffee.
12. Is there anyone else who can do it as well as he can?
13. If anybody else phones, tell them I'm not at home yet.
14. Though it's November some trees are still covered with leaves.
15. Do you know the truth yet? • No, not yet.
16. He still doesn't want to talk to us though he understands he is wrong.
17. Don't draw conclusions. We still have little information. We need more details.
18. Don't switch on the light. It isn't dark yet.
19. Is she ready to leave yet ? • No, she isn't. She is still dressing.
20. If you learn anything else tell us at once.

Упражнение 4

Переведите на английский.

1. Are they still in love with each other?
2. I don't drive a car yet.
3. We need more money to buy this house.
4. Does anyone else know how to translate this sentence?
5. The film isn't over yet.

6. Она все еще хорошо танцует (*to be a good dancer*)?
   • Да. Хотя она пожилая женщина, она все еще хорошо танцует.
7. Я пока еще не знаю, какие вопросы ему задать.
8. Нам нужен еще сахар, если мы хотим сделать вкусный торт.
9. Ты уже лучше себя чувствуешь?
   • Да. Но у меня все еще болит голова.
10. Мы все еще не знаем, когда их ждать.
11. Она еще не замужем?
    • Нет. Она думает, что еще слишком молода.
12. Ты хочешь пригласить еще людей?
13. Кто еще выгуливает собаку так рано?
14. Сколько еще дней ты хочешь здесь провести?
    • Я пока не знаю. Конец сентября, а еще очень тепло.
15. Сколько же еще терпения мне надо? Он все еще не хочет понять, что дело серьезное.
16. Сколько у него еще пациентов?
17. Кто еще хочет к нам присоединиться?
18. Они разведены, но все еще живут вместе.
19. Мне нужно еще время, чтобы закончить это.
20. Я еще не студент.
21. Я должен придумать еще шесть предложений.
22. Когда еще ты бы хотел к нам приехать?
23. Какие еще истории они обычно рассказывают?
24. Он еще здесь? Скажи ему, что ему пора идти.
25. Мы еще не знаем, как его зовут.

6. Is she still a good dancer?
   • Yes, she is. Though she is an old woman she is still a good dancer.
7. I don't know yet what questions to ask him.
8. We need more sugar if we want to make a tasty cake.
9. Are you better yet?
   • Yes, I am. But I still have a headache.
10. We still don't know when to expect them.
11. Is she married yet?
    • No, she isn't. She thinks she is still too young.
12. Do you want to ask more people?
13. Who else walks the dog so early?
14. How many more days do you want to spend here?
    • I don't know yet. It's the end of September and it is still very warm.
15. How much more patience do I need? He still doesn't want to understand that the matter is serious.
16. How many other patients does he have?
17. Who else wants to join us?
18. They are divorced but they still live together.
19. I need more time to finish it.
20. I'm not a student yet.
21. I must make up six more sentences.
22. When else would you like to visit us?
23. What other stories do they usually tell?
24. Is he still here? Tell him it's time for him to go.
25. We don't know his name yet.

UNIT 11 ALSO, TOO, EITHER, SO ... / NEITHER ...

11.1 **Also, too, either**

11.2 **So ... / Neither...**

11.1 ALSO, TOO, EITHER

1. Positive sentences

subject	+	also	+	verb…
or				
subject	+	auxiliary be	+	also…
or				
a statement	+	too		

2. Interrogative sentences

auxiliary	+	subject	+	also	+	verb…?
or						
a question	+	too?				

3. Negative sentences

a negative statement	+	either

УРОК 11 *ТОЖЕ*. КРАТКИЕ ПОДТВЕРДИТЕЛЬНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ

11.1 Тоже

11.2 Краткие подтвердительные предложения

11.1 ТОЖЕ

1. Повествовательные предложения

I also want to see this film

He is also busy.

I want to see this film, *too*.
He is busy, *too*.

2. Вопросительные предложения

Do you *also* want to see this film?
Is he *also* busy?

Do you want to see this film, *too*?

3. Отрицательные предложения

I don't want to see this film, *either*.
He *isn't* busy, *either*.

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with **ALSO**, **TOO**, **EITHER**.

1. I don't know the author of this book … .
2. We are … happy to meet you.
3. She … knows how to spell this word correctly.
4. He isn't to blame for it … .
5. They want to join the expedition … .
6. You are responsible for it … .
7. There aren't any good flowers in this shop … .
8. Is there a swimming-pool in that hotel, … ?
9. These are … Pete's toys.
10. That isn't my bag, … .
11. I've got a good job … .
12. His wages aren't very high, … .
13. Have they … got a big house?
14. We don't know anything about this theory, … .
15. Do you believe he … wants to take part in the competition?

11.2 So... / Neither...

I want to see the film. • *So do I.*

He is happy. • *So am I.*

I don't want to see the film. • *Neither do I.*

He isn't happy. • *Neither am I.*

I've got a lot of friends. • *So has he.*

I haven't got much money. • *Neither have we.*

She wouldn't like to go out today. • *Neither would I.*

I'd rather *stay* at home tonight. • *So would my friends.*

Упражнение 1

Вставьте **ALSO**, **TOO**, **EITHER**.

1. 1. I don't know the author of this book, either.
2. 2. We are also happy to meet you.
3. 3. She also knows how to spell this word correctly.
4. 4. He isn't to blame for it, either.
5. 5. They want to join the expedition, too.
6. 6. You are responsible for it, too.
7. 7. There aren't any good flowers in this shop, either.
8. 8. Is there a swimming-pool in that hotel, too?
9. 9. These are also Pete's toys.
10. 10. That isn't my bag, either.
11. 11. I've got a good job, too.
12. 12. His wages aren't very high, either.
13. 13. Have they also got a big house?
14. 14. We don't know anything about this theory, either.
15. 15. Do you believe he also wants to take part in the competition?

11.2 Краткие подтвердительные предложения

Я хочу посмотреть этот фильм. • И я тоже.

Он счастлив. • И я тоже.

Я не хочу смотреть этот фильм. • И я тоже.

Он несчастен. • И я тоже.

У меня много друзей. • И у него тоже.

У меня мало денег. • И у нас тоже.

Ей не хочется сегодня никуда идти. • И мне тоже.

Я бы остался сегодня дома. • И мои друзья тоже.

Exercise 2

React to the statements using **SO** … / **NEITHER** …

MODEL:

- She isn't married yet. (My sister)
- I'm glad you are back. (Jane and Fred)

1. We live in a small town not far from London. (the Smiths).
2. He never gets up before 9. (my brother)
3. We are surprised at their decision. (I)
4. They are not at home now. (Mr. West)
5. I'm not at all pleased with the results. (We)
6. She always goes to work by bus. (Kate and Ellen)
7. George and Mike don't want to have anything to do with him. (I)
8. Jim's parents are pleased with his behaviour. (his grandparents)
9. He is one of the best students in his group. (his elder sister)
10. He never misses classes. (his friends)
11. He isn't fond of sports. (his cousins)
12. I don't insist on it. (we)
13. I enjoy travelling. (they)
14. Nobody wants to discuss his failure. (I)
15. This child is interested in biology. (Mr. Fowl's son)
16. I'd like to know the answer. (she)
17. He says he would like to call her now. (Pete)
18. She says she hasn't got any new clothes. (her sister)
19. I've got an article to write. (my boss)
20. They don't trust him. (we)
21. I'm still in two minds about it. (my husband)
22. The police haven't got enough evidence. (this detective)
23. I'd rather buy this house. (my wife)
24. I have no room of my own. (she)
25. He would like to dance. (she)

Упражнение 2

Отреагируйте на высказывания, используя **SO** … / **NEITHER** …

- **Neither is my sister.**
- **So are Jane and Fred.**

1. So do the Smiths.
2. Neither does my brother.
3. So am I.
4. Neither is Mr. West.
5. Neither are we.
6. So do Kate and Ellen.
7. Neither do I.
8. So are his grandparents.
9. So is his elder sister.
10. Neither do his friends.
11. Neither are his cousins.
12. Neither do we.
13. So do they.
14. Neither do I.
15. So is Mr. Fowl's son.
16. So would she.
17. So would Pete.
18. Neither has her sister.
19. So has my boss.
20. Neither do we.
21. So is my husband.
22. Neither has this detective.
23. So would my wife.
24. Neither does she.
25. So would she.

Exercise 3

Translate into English.

1. Я обычно выхожу из дома в 8. • И я тоже.
2. Они тоже не знают, что сказать.
3. Джонсоны тоже ездят к морю каждое лето.
4. Жена Сэма молодая. • Жена Ника тоже.
5. Наш ребенок не боится собак. • Наш тоже.
6. Полли не хочет принимать участие в конференции. • И я тоже.
7. Я никогда не остаюсь в городе на выходные. • Мы тоже.
8. Он тоже не часто ходит по магазинам.
9. Я тоже думаю, что метро — самый удобный вид транспорта.
10. М-р Бофин тоже никогда не оставляет машину на улице ночью.
11. У этих студентов по пятницам лекции по истории. • И у тех тоже.
12. Мои дети еще не готовы ехать. • Наши тоже.
13. Моя мама не очень хорошо себя чувствует сегодня. • Мои родители тоже.
14. Я тоже приглашаю родственников к обеду по воскресеньям.
15. Я тоже не люблю работать в саду. (*to be fond of gardening*)
16. Стив хорошо плавает. (*to be a good swimmer*) • И Фред тоже.
17. Мы пока не знаем, что ему подарить. • И мы тоже.
18. Этот спортсмен всегда дает умные ответы на все вопросы. • И Мерчинсон тоже.
19. Моя сестра не хочет учиться водить машину. • Моя тоже.
20. Смиты тоже не ездят в Европу каждый год.
21. Я бы пообедал сейчас. • И я тоже.
22. У нас нет другого выхода. • И у него тоже.
23. У него нет никаких планов на завтра. • И у них тоже.
24. Я бы не хотела обсуждать это. • И они тоже.
25. Она знает этого человека. • И мы тоже.

Упражнение 3

Переведите на английский.

1. I usually leave home at 8. • So do I.
2. They don't know what to say, either.
3. The Jonsons (also) go to the sea-side every summer (too).
4. Sam's wife is young. • So is Nick's wife.
5. Our child isn't afraid of dogs. • Neither is ours.
6. Polly doesn't want to take part in the conference. • Neither do I.
7. I never stay in town at weekends. • Neither do we.
8. He doesn't go shopping very often, either.
9. I (also) think that the underground is the most convenient means of transport (too).
10. Mr. Boffin never leaves his car in the street at night, either.
11. These students have lectures in History every Friday. • So do those students.
12. My children are not ready to leave yet. • Neither are ours.
13. My mother doesn't feel well today. • Neither do my parents.
14. I (also) ask my relatives to dinner on Sunday (too).
15. I'm not fond of gardening, either.
16. Steve is a good swimmer. • So is Fred.
17. We don't know what to give him yet. • Neither do we.
18. This sportsman always gives clever answers to all questions. • So does Murchinson.
19. My sister doesn't want to learn driving. • Neither does mine.
20. The Smiths don't go to Europe every year, either.
21. I would have dinner now. • So would I.
22. We haven't got any other way out. • Neither has he.
23. He hasn't got any plans for tomorrow. • Neither have they.
24. I wouldn't like to discuss it. • And neither would they.
25. She knows this man. • So do we.

UNIT 12 CORRELATIVES

12.1 **neither … nor …**

12.2 **either … or …**

12.3 **both … and …**

12.1 NEITHER … NOR …

Neither Steve *nor* his brother **is** fond of sports.

The film is *neither* interesting *nor* very dull.

I want *neither* tea *nor* coffee.

12.2 EITHER … OR …

Either John *or* Bill knows the answer.

I want to see *either* this film *or* that one.

Let's ask him to come *either* on Saturday *or* on Sunday.

12.3 BOTH … AND …

Both Frank *and* Mary **are** students.

I'm *both* tired *and* angry.

Let's ask *both* Nick *and* Kate to dinner.

УРОК 12 КОРРЕЛЯТИВНЫЕ СОЮЗЫ

12.1 **ни … ни …**

12.2 **или … или …**

12.3 **и … и …**

12.1 НИ …, НИ …

Ни Стив, *ни* его брат не интересуются спортом.

Фильм *ни* интересный, *ни* скучный.

Я не хочу *ни* чая, *ни* кофе.

12.2 ИЛИ …, ИЛИ …

Ответ знает *или* Джон, *или* Билл.

Я хочу посмотреть *или* этот фильм, *или* тот.

Давай попросим его прийти *либо* в субботу, *либо* в воскресенье.

12.3 И …, И …

И Фрэнк, *и* Мария — студенты.

Я *и* устал, *и* рассержен.

Давай пригласим к обеду *и* Ника, *и* Кейт.

Exercise 1

Make sentences with **NEITHER … NOR,**
EITHER … OR,
BOTH … AND …

MODEL: I don't want tea and I don't want coffee.

1. Bill is often ill. And Ted is often ill.
2. I don't speak English and I don't speak German.
3. Sometimes we stay in the country in summer and sometimes we go to the sea side.
4. He doesn't write to us and he doesn't phone us.
5. I enjoy classical music and I enjoy modern music.
6. He usually drinks tea in the morning, but sometimes he drinks coffee.
7. Bill says they are in Belgium and Jack says they are in Holland
8. Ellen wants to see you and Eddie wants to see you.
9. I don't know the Johnsons and my husband doesn't know them either.
10. He doesn't go to the club on Wednesday. He doesn't go to the club on Friday, either.
11. He always passes exams well. So does his brother.
12. Mr. Stevenson believes Mary's birthday is on the 5th of April, but Mr. Davidson believes her birthday is on the 6th of April.
13. I think Bob is right. I also think James is right.
14. They've got a new TV-set and they've got a new video-set.
15. Catherine isn't angry with you. Neither is Polly.
16. Tim is in love with Molly. And so is Frank.
17. I think it's Ben's umbrella and she says it's Alice's umbrella.
18. We never argue with him but we never agree with him, either.
19. She says she knows that Ellen always has dinner at this time. And he says Ellen walks her dog at this time.
20. On Sunday morning they always play tennis. And in the afternoon they ride their bicycles. What do they do on Sunday?

Упражнение 1

Постройте предложения, используя союзы **НИ …, НИ …;**
ИЛИ …, ИЛИ …;
И …, И …

I want neither tea nor coffee.

1. Both Bill and Ted are often ill.
2. I speak neither English nor German.
3. We either stay in the country or go to the sea-side in summer.
4. He neither writes to us nor phones us.
5. I enjoy both classical and modern music.
6. He drinks either tea or coffee in the morning.
7. They are either in Belgium or in Holland.
8. Both Ellen and Eddie want to see you.
9. Neither my husband nor I know the Johnsons.
10. He goes to the club neither on Wednesday nor on Friday.
11. Both his brother and he always pass exams well.
12. Mary's birthday is either on the 5th or on the 6th of April.
13. I think both Bob and James are right.
14. They've got both a new TV-set and a new video-set.
15. Neither Katherine nor Polly is angry with you.
16. Both Tim and Frank are in love with Molly.
17. It's either Ben's or Alice's umbrella.
18. We usually neither argue nor agree with him.
19. Ellen either has dinner or walks her dog at this time.
20. They both play tennis and ride their bicycles on Sunday.

Exercise 2

Translate into English.

1. Ни я, ни мой брат не знаем, где живет Стив.
2. И Смиты, и Греи хотят поздравить ее с этим событием.
3. Утром я всегда пью или апельсиновый, или грейпфрутовый сок.
4. Они всегда отдыхают либо в Испании, либо в Греции.
5. Я хочу купить и коричневую сумку, и черную.
6. И Ник, и Фред сегодня отсутствуют.
7. Ни я, ни они не знаем, как туда добраться.
8. Вы ошибаетесь. Он не играет ни на пианино, ни на скрипке.
9. По утрам он либо бегает в парке, либо ездит на велосипеде.
10. Малыш и кушает, и спит хорошо.
11. Это не твоя идея и не ее.
12. Давай встретимся в среду вечером или в четверг утром.
13. Этот фильм и слишком длинный, и слишком скучный.
14. Отдай эту книгу либо Брауну, либо его жене, ладно?
15. Его советы не кажутся мне ни полезными, ни умными.
16. Ни я, ни он здесь не живем. Здесь живут наши друзья.
17. Ни мой муж, ни я не катаемся на коньках.
18. То ли у Майка, то ли у Билла в марте день рождения.
19. Ни ее родители, ни ее учитель не знают об этом.
20. Или няня, или она сама отводит детей в детский сад.

Упражнение 2

Переведите на английский.

1. Neither my brother nor I know where Steve lives.
2. Both the Smiths and the Grays want to congratulate her on this occasion.
3. I always drink either orange or grapefruit juice in the morning.
4. They always rest either in Spain or in Greece.
5. I want to buy both the brown bag and the black one.
6. Both Nick and Fred are absent today.
7. Neither I nor they know how to get there.
8. You are wrong. He plays neither the piano nor the violin.
9. He either jogs in the park or rides his bicycle in the morning.
10. The child both eats and sleeps well.
11. This is neither your idea nor hers.
12. Let’s meet either on Wednesday evening or on Thursday morning.
13. This film is both very long and very dull.
14. Give this book either to Mr. Brown or to his wife, will you?
15. His advice seems neither useful nor clever to me.
16. Neither I nor he lives here. Our friends live here.
17. Neither my husband nor I skate.
18. Either Mike or Bill has his birthday in March.
19. Neither her parents nor her teacher knows about it.
20. Either the baby-sitter or she takes the children to the kindergarten.

UNIT 13 EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES

13.1 The formation and the use of exclamation sentences.

13.1 The formation and the use of exclamation sentences

SO + an adjective or an adverb

SUCH + (an adjective) + a noun

HOW + an adjective or an adverb

WHAT + (an adjective) + a noun

REMEMBER

such/what + a + countable nouns

such/what + uncountable nouns

such/what + a noun in the plural

УРОК 13 ВОСКЛИЦАТЕЛЬНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ

13.1 Образование и употребление восклицательных предложений

13.1 Образование и употребление восклицательных предложений

I'm *so busy* today!	Я сегодня так занят!
She paints *so well*!	Она так хорошо рисует!
It is *such an old song*!	Это такая старая песня!
How tasty it is!	Как вкусно!
How wonderfully she sings!	Как замечательно она поет!
How nice it is to meet you!	Как приятно встретить вас!
What an interesting story it is!	Какой интересный рассказ!

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

What a nice dress it is!
It's *such a long trip*!

It's *such good news*!
What good advice it is!

What nice flowers they are!
They are *such interesting people*!

Exercise 1

Make sentences with **so/how**, **such/what**.

MODEL: It's easy.

1. 1. It's dark.
2. It' impolite of him.
3. It's nice to meet you.
4. He is friendly.
5. She is beautiful.

MODEL: He is a good swimmer.

1. She is a quick learner.
2. He is a careful driver.
3. They are hard workers.
4. She is a good singer.
5. He is a fast runner.

MODEL: It's a nice day.

1. She is a good doctor.
2. They are honest people.
3. It's a sunny day.
4. The weather is nice.
5. It's difficult work.

MODEL: It's a rainy day.

She is a good cook.

Упражнение 1

Составьте предложения с **so/how**, **such/what**.

a) It is so easy!
b) How easy it is!

1. a) It is so dark! b) How dark it is!
2. a) It is so impolite of him! b) How impolite of him it is!
3. a) It's so nice to meet you! b) How nice it is to meet you!
4. a) He is so friendly! b) How friendly he is!
5. a) She is so beautiful! b) How beautiful she is!

a) He swims so well!
b) How well he swims!

1. a) She learns things so quickly! b) How quickly she learns things!
2. a) He drives so carefully! b) How carefully he drives!
3. a) They work so hard! b) How hard they work!
4. a) She sings so well! b) How well she sings!
5. a) He runs so fast! b) How fast he runs!

a) It is such a nice day!
b) What a nice day it is!

1. a) She is such a good doctor! b) What a good doctor she is!
2. a) They are such honest people! b) What honest people they are!
3. a) It is such a sunny day! b) What a sunny day it is!
4. a) It is such nice weather! b) What nice weather it is!
5. a) It is such difficult work! b) What difficult work it is!

a) It is such a rainy day!
b) What a rainy day it is!
c) It is so rainy!
d) How rainy it is!

a) She is such a good cook!
b) What a good cook she is!
c) She cooks so well!
d) How well she cooks!

1. It's a funny toy.
2. He is a good dancer.
3. It's a long story.
4. They are impolite people.
5. He is a good pianist.
6. She is a good teacher.
7. It's a bad idea.

Exercise 2

Choose between **SO** and **SUCH**.

1. The weather is … nice!
2. He is … a talented student!
3. They seem to be … happy together!
4. This car is … old!
5. It's … a nice day for an outing!
6. Please, explain why it is … important to you!
7. It's … an interesting article!
8. It's always … pleasant to meet old friends!
9. It's … a difficult task!
10. The assignment is … difficult!

Exercise 3

Choose between **HOW** and **WHAT**.

1. … an interesting excursion it is!
2. … nice it is to have a rest!
3. … a brilliant idea!

1. a) It is such a funny toy!
   b) The toy is so funny!
   c) What a funny toy it is!
   d) How funny the toy is!
2. a) He is such a good dancer!
   b) He dances so well!
   c) What a good dancer he is!
   d) How well he dances!
3. a) It is such a long story!
   b) The story is so long!
   c) What a long story it is!
   d) How long the story is!
4. a) They are such impolite people!
   b) They are so impolite!
   c) What impolite people they are!
   d) How impolite they are!
5. a) He is such a good pianist!
   b) He plays the piano so well!
   c) What a good pianist he is!
   d) How well he plays the piano!
6. a) She is such a good teacher!
   b) She teaches so well!
   c) What a good teacher she is!
   d) How well she teaches!
7. a) It is such a bad idea!
   b) The idea is so bad!
   c) What a bad idea it is!
   d) How bad the idea is!

Упражнение 2

Выберите правильное слово (**SO**/**SUCH**).

1. The weather is so nice!
2. He is such a talented student!
3. They seem to be so happy together!
4. This car is so old!
5. It's such a nice day for an outing!
6. Please, explain why it is so important to you!
7. It's such an interesting article!
8. It's always so pleasant to meet old friends!
9. It's such a difficult task!
10. The assignment is so difficult!

Упражнение 3

Выберите правильное слово (**HOW**/**WHAT**).

1. What an interesting excursion it is!
2. How nice it is to have a rest!
3. What a brilliant idea!

4. … an awful day!
5. … well he speaks English!
6. … terrible it is of him to deceive you!
7. … a surprise!
8. … well he looks today!
9. … a clever child!
10. … inconvenient it is to get there by bus!

Exercise 4

Insert **A/AN** if necessary.

1. What … nice weather we are having today!
2. Do you always buy such … expensive clothes?
3. It is such … expensive suit!
4. What … pleasant news!
5. This is such … comfortable chair!
6. What … difficult work it is!
7. What … terrible headache!
8. It's such … good advice! Take it!
9. It's such … beautiful vase!
10. What … useless information it is!
11. What … beautiful flowers they are!
12. These are such … inconvenient seats!
13. I can't believe he is such … fool!
14. I don't want to go out in such … rainy weather!
15. What … useful remark it is!
16. What … long trousers they are! They need shortening!
17. It's such … wonderful scenery!
18. What … funny toy it is!
19. They are such … rude people!
20. Mary has such … long hair!
21. What … magnificent building it is!
22. What … polite men they are!
23. He has such … deep knowledge of the subject!
24. It is such … tasty apple!

4. What an awful day!
5. How well he speaks English!
6. How terrible it is of him to deceive you!
7. What a surprise!
8. How well he looks today!
9. What a clever child!
10. How inconvenient it is to get there by bus!

Упражнение 4

Вставьте артикли, где это необходимо.

1. What nice weather we are having today!
2. Do you always buy such expensive clothes?
3. It is such an expensive suit!
4. What pleasant news!
5. This is such a comfortable chair!
6. What difficult work it is!
7. What a terrible headache!
8. It's such good advice! Take it.
9. It's such a beautiful vase!
10. What useless information it is!
11. What beautiful flowers they are!
12. These are such inconvenient seats!
13. I can't believe he is such a fool!
14. I don't want to go out in such rainy weather!
15. What a useful remark it is!
16. What long trousers they are! They need shortening!
17. It's such wonderful scenery!
18. What a funny toy it is!
19. They are such rude people!
20. Mary has such long hair!
21. What a magnificent building it is!
22. What polite men they are!
23. He has such deep knowledge of the subject!
24. It is such a tasty apple!

25. What … nice furniture it is!
26. It's so difficult for him to put up with such … terrible news!
27. She is such … famous singer!
28. Moscow is such … big city!
29. What … sharp scissors they are!
30. What … agreeable people they are!

Exercise 5

Translate into English.

1. Я так устал!
2. Он такой скучный человек!
3. Какой необычный камень!
4. Как приятно увидеть вас здесь!
5. Летать самолетами так ужасно!
6. Это такой убедительный аргумент!
7. Какой независимый человек!
8. Он такой ненадежный!
9. Почему ты этого не понимаешь? Это так просто!
10. Как это важно для нас!
11. У вас такие красивые волосы.
12. Слушать его так интересно!
13. Какой глупый совет!
14. Странно, что эти брюки такие дешевые.
15. Как интересно за ним наблюдать!
16. Как хорошо он играет на пианино!
17. Это такая ужасная работа!
18. Какие красивые туфли!
19. Какой умный ответ!
20. Как тепло в доме, а на улице так холодно!

21. What nice furniture it is!
22. It's so difficult for him to put up with such terrible news!
23. She is such a famous singer!
24. Moscow is such a big city!
25. What sharp scissors they are!
26. What agreeable people they are!

Упражнение 5

Переведите на английский.

1. I am so tired!
2. He is such a boring man!
3. What an unusual stone it is!
4. How nice it is to see you here!
5. It is so terrible to go by plane!
6. It is such a convincing argument!
7. What an independent person he is!
8. He is so unreliable!
9. Why don't you understand it? It is so simple!
10. How important it is for us!
11. You have such beautiful hair!
12. It is so interesting to listen to him!
13. What foolish advice it is!
14. It's strange that these trousers are so cheap.
15. How interesting it is to watch him!
16. How well he plays the piano!
17. It is such terrible work!
18. What beautiful shoes they are!
19. What a clever answer it is!
20. How warm it is in the house! And it is so cold in the street!

UNIT 14 REVISION

TEST

1. His answers are always … .
❶ best ❷ the best ❸ better
2. It's … difficult work.
❶ so ❷ such a ❸ such
3. He doesn't have … money.
❶ much ❷ many
4. There aren't … chairs in the room. Bring … .
❶ any, any ❷ no, some ❸ any, some
5. … this machine work well?
❶ do ❷ does
6. Why is she so nervous? • She has … problems.
❶ a few ❷ little ❸ few
7. That armchair is comfortable. But this one is … .
❶ still comfortable ❷ much comfortable ❸ still more comfortable.
8. I don't know … people.
❶ this ❷ any of this ❸ those
9. I don't eat … in the morning.
❶ nothing ❷ something ❸ anything
10. This month I have been drinking … coffee than usual.
❶ less ❷ fewer
11. He always does everything … of all.
❶ the worst ❷ the best ❸ worst
12. The bag costs too … .
❶ much ❷ many ❸ a lot
13. Give me … hand.
❶ the ❷ your ❸ yours
14. His watch is three times … mine.
❶ as expensive than **2** more expensive than ❸ as expensive as
15. If you are still thirsty I'll give you … glass of juice.
❶ other ❷ another

УРОК 14 ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

ТЕСТ

1. ❷ His answers are always the best.
2. ❸ It's such difficult work.
3. ❶ He doesn't have much money.
4. ❸ There aren't any chairs in the room. Bring some.
5. ❷ Does this machine work well?
6. ❶ She has a few problems.
7. ❸ But this one is still more comfortable.
8. ❸ I don't know those people.
9. ❸ I don't eat anything in the morning.
10. ❶ This month I have been drinking less coffee than usual.
11. ❸ He always does everything worst of all.
12. ❶ The bag costs too much.
13. ❷ Give me your hand.
14. ❸ His watch is three times as expensive as mine.
15. ❷ If you are still thirsty I'll give you another glass of juice.

16. … I get up … I feel.
❶ the late, better ❷ the later, the better ❸ the later, the best
17. I always have either porridge … eggs for breakfast.
❶ and ❷ or ❸ nor
18. These are … expensive trousers!
❶ what ❷ such an ❸ such
19. Today the frost isn't … yesterday.
❶ as hard as ❷ harder as ❸ as hard than
20. Jane does everything … John.
❶ quicklier than ❷ more quickly that ❸ more quickly than
21. His advice is as foolish … .
❶ as yours ❷ than your ❸ as your
22. We … don't yet know what to do.
❶ ourself ❷ ourselves
23. This text is far more difficult … that one.
❶ as ❷ than ❸ that
24. I must get there as … I can.
❶ fastly as ❷ faster than ❸ fast as
25. I'm … than he is.
❶ more busier ❷ more busy ❸ much busier
26. … his mother know about his decision?
❶ do ❷ does
27. There are five students from Europe in my group. …
are from Asia and Africa.
❶ others ❷ the others
28. You are … me.
❶ tall as ❷ taller as ❸ taller than
29. Where … you from?
❶ are ❷ is ❸ do
30. I don't like this dress. Please show me … one.
❶ another ❷ the other
31. He is … his father.
❶ so strong as ❷ as strong than ❸ as strong as
32. The food in this restaurant always tastes …
❶ badly ❷ good ❸ well
33. Neither Ted nor his friend … ready to leave.
❶ are ❷ is
34. She is … person I know.
❶ the most nice ❷ nicest ❸ the nicest

16. ❷ The later I get up the better I feel.
17. ❷ I always have either porridge or eggs for breakfast.
18. ❸ These are such expensive trousers!
19. ❶ Today the frost isn't as hard as yesterday.
20. ❸ Jane does everything more quickly than John.
21. ❶ His advice is as foolish as yours.
22. ❷ We ourselves don't yet know what to do.
23. ❷ This text is far more difficult than that one.
24. ❸ I must get there as fast as I can.
25. ❸ I'm much busier than he is.
26. ❷ Does his mother know about his decision?
27. ❷ The others are from Asia and Africa.
28. ❸ You are taller than me.
29. ❶ Where are you from?
30. ❶ Please show me another one.
31. ❸ He is as strong as his father.
32. ❷ The food in this restaurant always tastes good.
33. ❷ Neither Ted nor his friend is ready to leave.
34. ❸ She is the nicest person I know.

35. How long … you to get to this place?
❶ takes it you ❷ does it take you ❸ does it takes you
36. He doesn't speak German but he can say … sentences.
❶ few ❷ a little ❸ a few
37. It is … who is always ready to help.
❶ her ❷ she
38. Why … Sue at work today?
❶ isn't ❷ doesn't
39. Why don't you want to take off … jacket? Are you cold?
❶ your ❷ the
40. … such accidents happen very often?
❶ do ❷ does
41. These are not … gloves. They are … .
❶ hers, my ❷ her, mine ❸ her, my
42. … things never happen to me.
❶ such a ❷ so ❸ such
43. I have no idea … .
❶ in town he or not ❷ if he is in town or not ❸ is he in town or not
44. There are … people at the bus-stop.
❶ much ❷ many ❸ a little
45. How can I get to … underground station?
❶ the next ❷ nearest ❸ the nearest
46. This job is easy. I think that … can do it.
❶ nobody ❷ anybody ❸ somebody
47. This is … place in the river.
❶ the shallowest ❷ the most shallowest ❸ shallowest
48. Does it cost … to spend a week at this hotel?
❶ much ❷ many ❸ a lot
49. This is … story in the book.
❶ the most short ❷ shortest ❸ the shortest
50. There. … in the house.
❶ is mice ❷ are mouse ❸ are mice
51. He is so unlucky! He always hurts … .
❶ hisself ❷ him ❸ himself
52. These shoes are … expensive.
❶ the least ❷ the less
53. I don't know how many pets … in their house.
❶ there are ❷ there is ❸ are there

35. ❷ How long does it take you to get to this place?
36. ❸ He doesn't speak German but he can say a few sentences.
37. ❷ It's she who is always ready to help.
38. ❶ Why isn't Sue at work today?
39. ❶ Why don't you want to take off your jacket?
40. ❶ Do such accidents happen very often?
41. ❷ These are not her gloves. They are mine.
42. ❸ Such things never happen to me.
43. ❷ I have no idea if he is in town or not.
44. ❷ There are many people at the bus-stop.
45. ❸ How can I get to the nearest underground station?
46. ❷ I think that anybody can do it.
47. ❶ This is the shallowest place in the river.
48. ❶ Does it cost much to spend a week at this hotel?
49. ❸ This is the shortest story in the book.
50. ❸ There are mice in the house.
51. ❸ He always hurts himself.
52. ❶ These shoes are the least expensive.
53. ❶ I don't know how many pets there are in their house.

54. Unfortunately very … people believe in his success.
❶ a few ❷ little ❸ few
55. He is never pleased with anything, … ?
❶ isn't he ❷ is he ❸ isn't it
56. They don't know the answer. And … .
❶ so do I ❷ neither don't I ❸ neither do I
57. He never gives other people … .
❶ much advice ❷ many advices ❸ many advice
58. These are my … .
❶ childs ❷ children ❸ childrens
59. Do … of you know this man?
❶ some ❷ anybody ❸ any
60. He knows the language … . He … understands his teacher.
❶ bad, hardly ❷ badly, hardly ❸ badly, hard
61. Let the child play in the yard. It isn't dark … .
❶ still ❷ yet
62. There is a school in State Street, … ?
❶ isn't there ❷ isn't it ❸ is it
63. I see only one shoe. Where is … ?
❶ other ❷ another ❸ the other
64. These are my favourite … .
❶ photoes ❷ photos
65. There are … lovely pictures on the walls.
❶ some ❷ any ❸ a little
66. Do you recognise anybody … in the picture?
❶ else ❷ more ❸ other
67. There aren't any eggs left, … ?
❶ are they ❷ are there ❸ aren't there
68. This is … street in the town.
❶ most narrow ❷ narrowest ❸ the narrowest
69. It's not … money. Don't touch … .
❶ your, them ❷ yours, it ❸ your, it
70. Swift isn't here. He is in the … room.
❶ next ❷ nearest
71. I don't know where … .
❶ he lives ❷ does he live ❸ lives he
72. … two large windows in the living-room.
❶ there is ❷ these are ❸ there are

54. ❸ Unfortunately very few people believe in his success.
55. ❷ He is never pleased with anything, is he?
56. ❸ And neither do I.
57. ❶ He never gives other people much advice.
58. ❷ These are my children.
59. ❸ Do any of you know this man?
60. ❷ He knows the language badly. He hardly understands his teacher.
61. ❷ It isn't dark yet.
62. ❶ There is a school in State Street, isn't there?
63. ❸ Where is the other?
64. ❷ These are my favourite photos.
65. ❶ There are some lovely pictures on the walls.
66. ❶ Do you recognise anybody else in the picture?
67. ❷ There aren't any eggs left, are there?
68. ❸ This is the narrowest street in the town.
69. ❸ It's not your money. Don't touch it.
70. ❶ He is in the next room.
71. ❶ I don't know where he lives.
72. ❸ There are two large windows in the living room.

73. They don't understand what the man wants to say, … .
❶ too ❷ either ❸ neither
74. The police … here yet.
❶ isn't ❷ aren't ❸ are
75. He drives the car … .
❶ most careful ❷ most carefully ❸ the most carefully
76. Tell … to come later.
❶ the others ❷ other ❸ others
77. … any news yet.
❶ there aren't ❷ there isn't ❸ they aren't
78. There are … flowers in the kitchen, but there aren't … in the living room.
❶ some, no ❷ no, any ❸ some, any
79. These books are French. … books are English.
❶ the others ❷ the other ❸ other
80. Little Ben is … curious than his … brother.
❶ many more, elder ❷ much more, older ❸ much more, elder
81. This is … clever idea.
❶ so ❷ so a ❸ such a
82. Jane's house is … Jill's.
❶ less than ❷ smaller that ❸ smaller than
83. Do you know … ?
❶ how tall is Tom ❷ how tall Tom is ❸ how is Tom tall
84. … the man is a robber.
❶ these policemans think ❷ this policeman think ❸ these policemen think
85. It's raining, … ?
❶ isn't it ❷ is it ❸ doesn't it
86. All Jane's clothes … fashionable.
❶ are ❷ is ❸ they are
87. He rose … and left.
❶ quickly ❷ quick ❸ fastly
88. There … a lamp and an armchair in the corner of the room.
❶ is ❷ are ❸ aren't
89. The school building is … of the three buildings.
❶ further away ❷ the farthest away ❸ the father away
90. I don't think that … can learn to drive a car.
❶ any ❷ somebody ❸ anybody

73. ❷ They don't understand what the man wants to say, either.
74. ❷ The police aren't here yet.
75. ❷ He drives the car most carefully.
76. ❶ Tell the others to come later.
77. ❷ There isn't any news yet.
78. ❸ There are some flowers in the kitchen, but there aren't any in the living room.
79. ❷ The other books are English.
80. ❸ Little Ben is much more curious than his elder brother.
81. ❸ This is such a clever idea.
82. ❸ Jane's house is smaller than Jill's.
83. ❷ Do you know how tall Tom is?
84. ❸ These policemen think the man is a robber.
85. ❶ It's raining, isn't it?
86. ❶ All Jane's clothes are fashionable.
87. ❶ He rose quickly and left.
88. ❶ There is a lamp and an armchair in the corner of the room.
89. ❷ The school building is the farthest away of the three buildings.
90. ❸ I don't think that anybody can learn to drive a car.

91. I have an early appointment. … .
❶ so does he ❷ so he does ❸ he does also
92. There are two mistakes in his test, … ?
❶ aren't there ❷ aren't they ❸ are there
93. The higher I climb … I feel.
❶ the more weak ❷ more weaker ❸ the weaker
94. Nobody … to believe in his story.
❶ wants ❷ want ❸ doesn't want
95. You are a nice person. And … you husband.
❶ so does ❷ neither is ❸ so is
96. … men … what to do.
❶ these, knows ❷ this, know ❸ these, know
97. There isn't … in the room.
❶ any desk ❷ some desk ❸ no desk
98. I want to ask … people to come.
❶ much more ❷ a few more
99. He is one of … scientists in the world.
❶ the greatest ❷ most great ❸ greatest
100. My cat is black and … tail is white.
❶ it's ❷ its ❸ the
101. I don't know … about him.
❶ anything ❷ nothing ❸ any
102. … nice dress it is!
❶ how ❷ such ❸ what a
103. They … like to swim in the pool.
❶ too ❷ also ❸ so
104. What music … ?
❶ like you to listen ❷ do you like to listen ❸ do you like to listen to
105. I don't have … money.
❶ any ❷ some ❸ no
106. I'm in danger. I think that … would be afraid in my place.
❶ anybody ❷ somebody ❸ any
107. It's … today … it was yesterday.
❶ more hotter, than ❷ hotter, that ❸ hotter, than
108. She is upset about … . That's why she looks … .
❶ something, sadly ❷ anything, sad ❸ something, sad
109. How unbelievable … !
❶ it is ❷ is it ❸ is this

91. ❶ So does he.
92. ❶ There are two mistakes in his test, aren't there?
93. ❸ The higher I climb, the weaker I feel.
94. ❶ Nobody wants to believe in his story.
95. ❸ And so is your husband.
96. ❸ These men know what to do.
97. ❶ There isn't any desk in the room.
98. ❷ I want to ask a few more people to come.
99. ❶ He is one of the greatest scientists in the world.
100. ❷ My cat is black and its tail is white.
101. ❶ I don't know anything about him.
102. ❸ What a nice dress it is!
103. ❷ They also like to swim in the pool.
104. ❸ What music do you like to listen to?
105. ❶ I don't have any money.
106. ❶ I think that anybody would be afraid in my place.
107. ❸ It's hotter today than it was yesterday.
108. ❸ She is upset about something. That's why she looks sad.
109. ❶ How unbelievable it is!

110. This bicycle is … than that one.
❶ much more cheap ❷ more cheaper ❸ much cheaper

111. ❶ How do you think, when he leaves home? ❷ When do you think he leaves home? ❸ When does he leave home, you think?

112. She never agrees with us, … .
❶ either ❷ too ❸ also

113. Of all the books this one is … .
❶ the more interesting ❷ the most interesting ❸ most interesting

114. This car runs as … that one.
❶ fast as ❷ fastly than ❸ fastly as

115. Do you know … ?
❶ when does this train arrive ❷ when this train arrives
❸ when arrives this train

116. I want to invite … people to my birthday party.
❶ else ❷ more ❸ yet

117. She is one of … in the world.
❶ the most famous musician ❷ most famous musicians
❸ the most famous musicians

118. What is he … ?
❶ interesting in ❷ interested ❸ interested in

119. These seats are … those ones.
❶ three time as expensive as ❷ three times as expensive as
❸ three times more expensive than

120. … parties?
❶ who of you likes ❷ which of you like ❸ which of you likes

110. ❸ This bicycle is much cheaper than that one.

111. ❷ When do you think he leaves home?

112. ❶ She never agrees with us, either.

113. ❷ Of all the books this one is the most interesting.

114. ❶ This car runs as fast as that one.

115. ❷ Do you know when this train arrives?

116. ❷ I want to invite more people to my birthday party.

117. ❸ She is one of the most famous musicians in the world.

118. ❸ What is he interested in?

119. ❷ These seats are three times as expensive as those ones.

120. ❸ Which of you likes parties?

UNIT 15 TENSE FORMS OF THE VERB

15.1 The Present Indefinite Tense

15.2 The Present Continuous Tense

15.3 The Future Indefinite Tense

15.4 The Past Indefinite Tense

15.5 The Present Perfect Tense
- *The Present Perfect Continuous TenseThe*
- *The Present Perfect Tense — The Past Indefinite Tense*

15.6 The Past Continuous Tense

15.7 The Past Perfect Tense
- *Revision*
- *The Past Perfect Continuous Tense*
- *Revision*

15.8 The Future Continuous Tense

15.9 The Future Perfect Tense
- *The Future Perfect Continuous Tense*

15.1 The Present Indefinite Tense

FORMATION

infinitive without **to**
ending **-s** in the third person singular

MEANINGS

1. A usual, regular or characteristic action or state.
2. A succession of usual actions.
3. A universe truth, often used in proverbs.
4. A future action a) in condition and time-clauses;
   b) according to a timetable or a schedule.

УРОК 15 ВИДО-ВРЕМЕННЫЕ ФОРМЫ ГЛАГОЛА

15.1 The Present Indefinite Tense

15.2 The Present Continuous Tense

15.3 The Future Indefinite Tense

15.4 The Past Indefinite Tense

15.5 The Present Perfect Tense
- *The Present Perfect Continuous Tense*
- *The Present Perfect Tense — The Past Indefinite Tense*

15.6 The Past Continuous Tense

15.7 The Past Perfect Tense
- *Повторение*
- *The Past Perfect Continuous Tense*
- *Повторение*

15.8 The Future Continuous Tense

15.9 The Future Perfect Tense
- *The Future Perfect Continuous Tense*

15.1 The Present Indefinite Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

We **spend** weekends together. My Dad **likes** skiing. **Do** you **work** all day? My mother **doesn't know** French.

ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

1. My sister **goes** to school. I usually **get up** early. He **likes** reading.
2. Every day she **gets** up early in the morning, **has** breakfast and **goes** to work.
3. Leaves **become** green in spring. Haste **makes** waste.
4. a) She'll be angry *if* you **come** late. I'll be ready *when* you **call.**
   b) When **does** the concert **begin**? Our train **arrives** at 8:30.

Exercise 1

Put the verb into the third person singular.

1. You watch too much TV. (He)
2. The boys hurry home after school.
3. Buses pass my house every half an hour.
4. I always carry an umbrella. (She)
5. Their children go to this school.
6. The rivers freeze in winter.
7. The carpets match the curtains.
8. Do you like onions? (He)
9. They usually catch the eight o'clock train. (She)
10. They clean the flat every week. (My mother)
11. These tickets cost $10.
12. The prices rise every year.
13. They like fishing in the lake. (Their father)
14. They worry too much. (She)
15. They do morning exercises every day. (He)

Exercise 2

Make the following sentences negative and interrogative.

1. You know the answer.
2. George usually has breakfast at eight.
3. Children like sweets.
4. His father finishes work at 6.
5. Alice dances in competitions.
6. You remember the address.
7. Their son plays chess very well.

Упражнение 1

Поставьте глагол в форму 3-го лица единственного числа.

1. He watches too much TV.
2. The boy hurries home after school.
3. The bus passes my house every half an hour.
4. She always carries an umbrella.
5. Their child goes to this school.
6. The river freezes in winter.
7. The carpet matches the curtains.
8. Does he like onions?
9. She usually catches the eight o'clock train.
10. My mother cleans the flat every week.
11. This ticket costs $10.
12. The price rises every year.
13. Their father likes fishing in the lake.
14. She worries too much.
15. He does morning exercises every day.

Упражнение 2

Сделайте предложения отрицательными и вопросительными.

1. You don't know the answer.
   Do you know the answer?
2. George doesn't usually have breakfast at eight.
   Does George usually have breakfast at eight?
3. Children don't like sweets.
   Do children like sweets?
4. His father doesn't finish work at 6.
   Does his father finish work at 6?
5. Alice doesn't dance in competitions.
   Does Alice dance in competitions?
6. You don't remember the address.
   Do you remember the address?
7. Their son doesn't play chess very well.
   Does their son play chess very well?

8. These thieves work at night.
9. Nick leaves home at 8 every day.
10. Pamela agrees with us.
11. Their dogs bark all night.
12. The manager takes on new staff every spring.
13. Sam looks very well.
14. The last train leaves at midnight.
15. Mary relaxes at weekends.

Exercise 3

a) Read the description of the performance given by a woman-magician and her husband. The woman gives the description to a circus manager.

Fill the blanks using the verbs given for each paragraph. Note that the verbs aren't in the correct order.

begin fly grow say

I usually … the act myself. I … some magic words. A bird … out of an empty cage, and a flower … in an empty pot.

join put come go

Then Henry … me on the stage. He … into a box. I … knives through the box, but he always … out alive!

choose cover turn applaud tell

Someone from the audience … a card. I … my back, and Henry … my eyes. I … the person what the card is. Everyone in the audience … .

catch disappear throw

Henry and I … coloured balls into the audience. But no one ever … them! They … in clouds of smoke!

8. These thieves don't work at night. Do these thieves work at night?
9. Nick doesn't leave home at 8 every day.
   Does Nick leave home at 8 every day?
10. Pamela doesn't agree with us. Does Pamela agree with us?
11. Their dogs don't bark all night. Do their dogs bark all night?
12. The manager doesn't take on new staff every spring.
    Does the manager take on new staff every spring?
13. Sam doesn't look very well. Does Sam look very well?
14. The last train doesn't leave at midnight.
    Does the last train leave at midnight?
15. Mary doesn't relax at weekends.
    Does Mary relax at weekends?

Упражнение 3

а) Прочтите описание представления, которое дают фокусница и ее муж. Фокусница рассказывает о представлении директору цирка.

Заполните пропуски при помощи глаголов, данных перед каждым параграфом. Глаголы даны вперемешку.

I usually begin the act myself. I say some magic words. A bird flies out of an empty cage, and a flower grows in an empty pot.

Then Henry joins me on the stage. He goes into a box. I put knives through the box, but he always comes out alive!

Someone from the audience chooses a card. I turn my back, and Henry covers my eyes. I tell the person what the card is. Everyone in the audience applauds.

Henry and I throw coloured balls into the audience. But no one ever catches them! They disappear in clouds of smoke!

weigh try rise clap

A strong man from the audience … to lift a piano. He cannot, for it … 1000 kilos. But I … my hands, and the piano … into the air!

finish play hide vanish flash

Our act … with a marvelous spectacle. A green light … and the orchestra … a mysterious tune. Then a grey mist … us, and we … like ghosts!

b) The circus manager wants to know the details. Make up the questions he asks.

1. How, the bird, fly, out of the cage?
2. How, Henry, escape, from the box?
3. How, the balls, disappear?
4. Where, the smoke, come from?
5. How, the piano, rise, into the air?
6. How, you, do, the trick with the cards?
7. What, magic words, you, say?
8. How, you, make, the grey mist?
9. How, you and Henry, vanish, in the end?
10. How long, your act, last?

A strong man from the audience tries to lift a piano. He cannot, for it weighs 1000 kilos. But I clap my hands, and the piano rises into the air!

Our act finishes with a marvelous spectacle. A green light flashes and the orchestra plays a mysterious tune. Then a grey mist hides us, and we vanish like ghosts!

б) Директор цирка хочет узнать детали. При помощи данных слов составьте вопросы, которые он задает.

1. How does the bird fly out of the cage?
2. How does Henry escape from the box?
3. How do the balls disappear?
4. Where does the smoke come from?
5. How does the piano rise into the air?
6. How do you do the trick with the cards?
7. What magic words do you say?
8. How do you make the grey mist?
9. How do you and Henry vanish in the end?
10. How long does your act last?

15.2 The Present Continuous Tense

FORMATION

auxiliary **be** in The Present Indefinite Tense + Participle I

am (is, are) + doing

MEANINGS

1. An action at the moment of speaking.
2. An action at the present period of time.

3. "Emotional Continuous" — used to express annoyance.
   be + *always* (*constantly*) + doing
4. A planned action in the near future (=to be going to do smth)

REMEMBER

I) *NO CONTINUOUS FORMS:*
to be, to feel, to hear, to see, to notice, to seem, to hate, to like, to love, to know, to understand, to want, to need, to remember, to mean, to possess, to find

2) "to have" is used in Continuous only in set phrases.

Exercise 4

Make up true sentences (positive or negative) about what's happening at the moment.

MODEL: I, to speak, on the phone

1. the sun, to shine
2. I, to play chess, with my friend
3. I, to wash, the dishes
4. It, to rain
5. I, to sit, at a desk
6. I, to do, an English exercise

15.2 The Present Continuous Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

I **am reading** a book. You **are speaking** on the phone.
What **is** she **doing**? They **aren't watching** TV.

ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

1. What **are** you **looking** for?
2. I'm terribly tired. I'**m building** a house in the country.
   It's hard work.
3. You **are** *always* **talking** at the lessons!
   Вечно ты болтаешь на уроках!
4. We **are writing** a test tomorrow.
   I **am going to** redecorate my room.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

1) *НЕ ИМЕЮТ ФОРМ "CONTINUOUS"*
I *understand* what you mean. I *find* the film very interesting.
Do you *hear* me? I *don't see* anything, it's too dark.
Where *are* you?

2) Where is Lucy? • She *is having a bath*.

Упражнение 4

Составьте предложения (утвердительные или отрицательные) о том, что сейчас на самом деле происходит.

I am not speaking on the phone.

1. The sun is (isn't) shining.
2. I am not playing chess with my friend.
3. I am not washing the dishes.
4. It's (It isn't) raining.
5. I am sitting at a desk.
6. I am doing an English exercise.

7. I, to listen, music.
8. I, to wear, slippers (shoes)
9. I, to have, dinner
10. I, to ride, a bicycle

Exercise 5

Use the verbs in **Present Continuous**.

1. Where are you, Rachel? • I'm in the kitchen. I … (to make) dinner.
2. It's so quiet! Where are the children? • They … (to play) in the yard.
3. What's wrong? Why … (you, to cry)?
4. Listen! Someone … (to sing) in the next room.
5. I am in a great hurry. My friend … (to wait) for me.
6. I … (not, to work) today. It's my day off.
7. I can't understand a word. What language … (he, to speak)?
8. I can't come tomorrow. I … (to go) to the theatre with my friend.
9. Mike will call you later. He … (to have) dinner.
10. … (you, to do) anything special? Would you like to go to the cinema?

Exercise 6

Put the verbs into the correct form (**Present Indefinite** or **Present Continuous**).

1. Mrs. Lewis … (to wear) a hat today because the sun is very hot.
2. Fred usually … (to stay) at a hotel when he comes to town, but tonight he … (to stay) with us.
3. … (it, ever, to snow) in Australia?
4. … (you, to hear) that sound? It … (to get) louder and louder.
5. It's impossible to talk with you! You always … (to grumble) at me!

7. I am not listening to music.
8. I am (am not) wearing slippers (shoes).
9. I am not having dinner.
10. I am not riding a bicycle.

Упражнение 5

Употребите глаголы в **Present Continuous**.

1. I'm making dinner.
2. They are playing in the yard.
3. Why are you crying?
4. Someone is singing in the next room.
5. My friend is waiting for me.
6. I am not working today.
7. What language is he speaking?
8. I am going to the theatre with my friend.
9. He is having dinner.
10. Are you doing anything special?

Упражнение 6

Поставьте глагол в правильную форму (**Present Indefinite** или **Present Continuous**).

1. Mrs. Lewis is wearing a hat today.
2. Fred usually stays at a hotel when he comes to town, but tonight he is staying with us.
3. Does it ever snow in Australia?
4. Do you hear that sound? It's getting louder and louder.
5. You are always grumbling at me!

6. The Earth revolves round the Sun.
7. We … (to give) a party next Sunday. I'd like you to come.
8. What … (you, to cook)? It … (to smell) so delicious! • It's just chicken.
9. Don't forget to take your umbrella. It … (to rain).
10. What … (you, to mean) you … (not, to know) her? I saw you talking a few minutes ago! • I … (to mean) I … (not, to remember) her name.
11. When he … (to come) home from work, he usually … (to have) dinner, … (to read) a paper and then goes for a walk with his dog.
12. They seem to be very excited.
    I … (to wonder) what they … (to talk) about.
13. … (you, to believe) all that the radio says?
    • No, I … (not, to believe) any of it.
    • Then why … (you, to listen) to it again?
14. What's that terrible noise?
    • Our neighbours … (to quarrel) again.
15. I can't remember if the concert … (to begin) at 6 or at 7.

Exercise 7

Read the following dialogue and put the verbs into the correct form (**Present Indefinite** or **Present Continuous**; positive, negative or interrogative).

Jan: And where … (you, **to come** from) in Finland, Marge?

Marge: I … (**to come** from) Helsinki. But I … (**to live**) there any more. My company, Finn Sport … (**to have**) an office in Tampere, so I've moved there.

Jan: I've heard of Finn Sport. … (they, **to make**) skiing equipment?

Marge: That's right — in fact, all kind of sports equipment. Actually, the company … (**to pay**) for me to study here.

Jan: Really? You're lucky. My company … (**to send**) anyone on language courses. I … (**to pay**) for this course out of my own pocket.

6. The Earth revolves round the Sun.
7. We are giving a party next Sunday.
8. What are you cooking? It smells so delicious!
9. It's raining.
10. What do you mean you don't know her?
    • I mean I don't remember her name.
11. When he comes home from work, he usually has dinner, reads a paper and then goes for a walk with his dog.
12. I wonder what they are talking about.
13. Do you believe all that the radio says?
    • No, I don't believe any of it.
    • Then why are you listening to it again?
14. Our neighbours are quarrelling again.
15. I can't remember if the concert begins at 6 or at 7.

Упражнение 7

Прочтите диалог и выберите правильную форму глагола (**Present Indefinite** или **Present Continuous**; утвердительную, отрицательную или вопросительную).

And where do you come from, Marge?

I come from Helsinki. But I don't live there any more. My company has an office in Tampere.

Do they make skiing equipment?

Actually, the company is paying for me to study here.

My company doesn't send anyone on language courses. I'm paying for this course out of my own pocket.

Marge: What course … (you, **to take**) here? Business English?

Jan: No, I … (**to do**) Business English yet.
I … (**to try**) to improve my general English — especially conversation.

Marge: Well, there … (**to seem**) to be anything wrong with your conversation.

Jan: I … (**to improve**). By the way, … (you, **to know**) about the disco the school … (to **organize**)?

Marge: No. When is it?

Jan: Tonight at 9 o'clock.
It's at The Magnet Club, in Holland Road.

Marge: Unfortunately, I … (**to know**) where that is.

Jan: It's near where I … (**to live**). Look, why … (we, **to meet**) before the disco somewhere and have dinner?
Then we can go to the disco together.

Exercise 8

Translate into English.

1. Зачем вы это объясняете? Все это понимают.
2. Вечно ты опаздываешь! Некрасиво заставлять себя ждать.
3. Ты всегда пишешь левой рукой?
4. Вы меня хорошо слышите?
   • Боюсь, что нет. Вы говорите очень тихо.
5. Не звони ей сейчас. Она отдыхает.
   • Она всегда отдыхает в это время?
6. Мы уезжаем отдыхать в Испанию.
7. Ты все еще читаешь? • Да, книга очень интересная.
8. Они не ладят и часто ссорятся.
9. Уже темнеет, пора идти домой.
10. Вы куда-нибудь идете вечером?
    • Да, мы хотим погулять в парке.
11. А знаешь, о чем я думаю? • Конечно, нет.
12. Почему ты не ешь? • Спасибо, я не хочу.
13. Осенью часто идет дождь.
14. Ты видишь их? Вон они сидят за тем столиком.

What course are you taking here?

I am not doing Business English yet. I am trying to improve my general English.

There doesn't seem to be anything wrong with your conversation.

I am improving. Do you know about the disco the school is organizing?

I don't know where that is.

It's near where I live. Why don't we meet before the disco somewhere and have dinner?

Упражнение 8

Переведите на английский.

1. Why are you explaining it? Everybody understands it.
2. You are always coming late! It's not nice to keep people waiting.
3. Do you always write with your left hand?
4. Do you hear me well?
   • I'm afraid I don't. You are speaking in a very low voice.
5. Don't call her now. She is having a rest.
   • Does she always rest (have a rest) at this time?
6. We are going to Spain for a holiday.
7. Are you still reading? • Yes, the book is very interesting.
8. They don't get on very well and often quarrel.
9. It's already getting dark, it's time to go home.
10. Are you going anywhere tonight?
    • Yes, we want to go for a walk in the park.
11. Do you know what I am thinking about? • Of course, not.
12. Why aren't you eating? • Thank you, I'm not hungry.
13. It often rains in autumn.
14. Do you see them? They are sitting at that table.

15. Вечно она на что-нибудь жалуется!
16. Опять она по телефону разговаривает?
17. Обычно он так быстро говорит, что я ничего не понимаю.
18. Что ты ищешь?
    • Очки, я ничего без них не вижу.
19. Ваша дочь помогает вам по дому?
20. Сегодня ужасная погода: холодно и идет сильный дождь.
21. Ваш сын увлекается спортом, не так ли?
    • Да, он играет в теннис.
22. У него сейчас урок музыки. Не мешай ему.
23. Кого ты ждешь?
    • Подругу. Мы идем в кино.
24. Конечно, я могу вас встретить. Во сколько прибывает ваш поезд?
25. Как! Он плавает?! Но ведь сейчас так холодно!
    • Он плавает в любую погоду.

15. She is always complaining about something!
16. Is she speaking on the phone again?
17. He usually speaks so quickly, that I don't understand anything.
18. What are you looking for?
    • My glasses. I can't see anything without them.
19. Does your daughter help you about the house?
20. The weather is awful today: it's cold and it's raining heavily.
21. Your son is fond of sport, isn't he?
    • Yes, he plays tennis.
22. He is having a music lesson now. Don't bother him.
23. Who are you waiting for?
    • For a friend of mine. We're going to the cinema.
24. Of course, I can meet you. When does your train arrive?
25. Why! Is he swimming? But it's so cold now!
    • He swims in any weather.

15.3 The Future Indefinite Tense

FORMATION

auxiliary **will/shall** + Infinitive without **to**

shall/will + do

MEANING

an action or a succession of actions in the future

Exercise 9

Put the verbs into the correct form of **Future Indefinite** (positive, negative or interrogative)

1. … (you, to have) time to help me tomorrow?
2. He … (to lend) you the book if you ask him.
3. I … (to remember) this day all my life.
4. There … (not, to be) any lift in their new house.
5. Do you think that he … (to recognize) me?
6. She … (to be) 29 next year.
7. Your English is quite good. I'm sure you … (to pass) the exam.
8. Don't worry. The dog … (not, to hurt) you.
9. I wonder how many of us still … (to be) here next year.
10. What … (your friend, to say) when he learns about the accident? • He … (not, to say) much but he … (not, to lend) me the car again.
11. You … (to feel) better after a meal.
12. When … (they, to announce) the results of the exam?
13. I … (to get) the book for you. It … (not, to take) long.
14. I'm sure you … (to like) our new house.
15. … (there, to be) any meeting for the first-year students on September 1?

15.3 The Future Indefinite Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

He **will** (He'**ll**) **finish** school *in three years*. **Will** she **be** there *on Sunday*? I **won't (shan't) go** there *tomorrow*. We **shall** (We'**ll**) **see** him *in a few days*.

ЗНАЧЕНИЕ

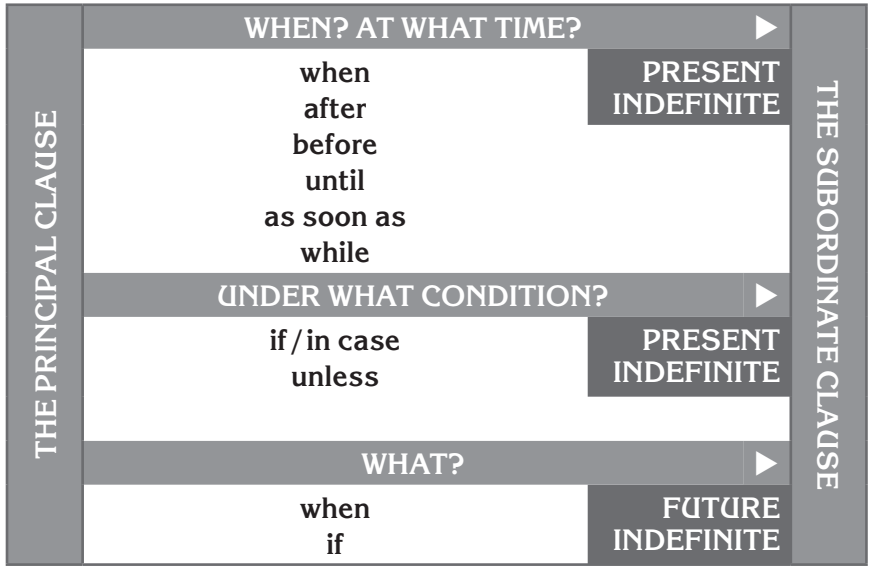
I think I'**ll spend** a month of my summer vacation at the seaside and then **go** to the country.

Упражнение 9

Поставьте глаголы в правильную форму **Future Indefinite** (утвердительную, отрицательную или вопросительную).

1. Will you have time to help me tomorrow?
2. He will lend you the book if you ask him.
3. I shall (will) remember this day all my life.
4. There won't be any lift in their new house.
5. Do you think that he will recognize me?
6. She'll be twenty-nine next year.
7. I'm sure you'll pass the exam.
8. The dog won't hurt you.
9. I wonder how many of us will still be here next year.
10. What will your friend say when he learns about the accident? • He won't say much but he won't lend me the car again.
11. You'll feel better after a meal.
12. When will they announce the results of the exam?
13. I'll get the book for you. It won't take long.
14. I'm sure you will like our new house.
15. Will there be any meeting for the first-year students on September1?

Clauses of Time and Condition



Exercise 10

Put the verbs in the correct tense (**Future Indefinite** or **Present Indefinite**).

1. If I … (not, to feel) well tomorrow, I … (to stay) at home.
2. He asks if you … (to meet) him at the station at 5 o'clock.
3. … (you, to miss) me while I … (to be) away?
4. Can you tell me when Mr. Thompson … (to be) here next time?
5. I … (to send) you a telegramme as soon as I … (to arrive).
6. Don't wait for me in case I … (to be) late.
7. The lift … (not, to start) until you … (to press) this green button.
8. She says that when I … (to see) her son again I … (not, to recognize) him.
9. Hold the bag, please, while I … (to put) the food into the fridge.
10. I am not sure yet when I … (to return).
11. I … (to open) the window when it … (to stop) raining.

Придаточные времени и условия

ПРИДАТОЧНЫЕ ВРЕМЕНИ

He'll help you *when he is* free.

He'll do it *after he finishes* this work.

She'll tell me about it *before she leaves*.

I won't speak to you *until you apologize*.

I'll go on holiday *as soon as I pass* the exam.

We'll clean the flat *while you go* shopping.

ПРИДАТОЧНЫЕ УСЛОВИЯ

We'll go to the cinema *if/in case he gets* tickets.

I won't explain anything *unless you listen* carefully.

ПРИДАТОЧНЫЕ ИЗЪЯСНИТЕЛЬНЫЕ

I don't know *when he will come* today.

I am not sure *if he will agree* to help us.

Упражнение 10

Употребите глаголы в правильной форме (**Future Indefinite** или **Present Indefinite**).

1. If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.
2. He asks if you will meet him at the station at five o'clock.
3. Will you miss me while I am away?
4. Can you tell me when Mr. Thompson will be here next time?
5. I'll send you a telegramme as soon as I arrive.
6. Don't wait for me in case I am late.
7. The lift won't start until you press this green button.
8. She says that when I see her son again I won't recognize him.
9. Hold the bag, please, while I put the food into the fridge.
10. I am not sure yet when I'll return.
11. I shall (will) open the window when it stops raining.

12. I … (to be) surprised if she … (to enter) this University.
13. You must certainly visit us before you … (to leave).
14. You … (not, to lose) weight unless you … (to eat) less bread.
15. I wonder if she … (to follow) our advice.

Exercise 11

Translate into English.

1. Ты рассердишься, если он откажется помочь нам?
2. Я не уйду, пока вы не вернетесь.
3. Я не знаю, будет ли он на собрании, но если он придет, он обязательно выступит.
4. Когда ему исполнится 25 лет, они поженятся.
5. Присмотри, пожалуйста, за детьми, пока я буду готовить обед.
6. Говорят, что, когда мы будем на IV курсе, мы сможем читать английские газеты.
7. Он позвонит, как только что-нибудь узнает.
8. Давай подождем, пока взойдет солнце.
9. «Если вы не сможете ответить на второй вопрос, вам придется прийти еще раз», — сказал экзаменатор.
10. Вы еще будете здесь, когда мы вернемся?
11. Брат никогда не простит мне, если я позволю тебе уйти.
12. Ты не знаешь, когда она обычно возвращается домой?
13. Как только вы решите поехать туда, скажите мне.
14. Сделай все уроки, прежде чем пойдешь гулять.
15. Они начнут работать после того, как обсудят план.
16. Если погода будет плохая, мы не поедем за город.
17. Мы не знаем, сдаст ли Джек экзамен по английскому языку.
18. Интересно, придет ли Джон, если ты попросишь его об этом.
19. Она спрашивает, разрешишь ли ты ей пойти в кино, если она закончит делать уроки в 4 часа.
20. Спроси ее, когда придет ее мама. Если она придет не очень поздно, я ей позвоню.

12. I'll be surprised if she enters this University.
13. You must certainly visit us before you leave.
14. You won't lose weight unless you eat less bread.
15. I wonder if she will follow our advice.

Упражнение 11

Переведите на английский.

1. Will you be angry if he refuses to help us?
2. I won't leave until you return.
3. I don't know if he will be at the meeting, but if he comes, he will certainly speak.
4. When he is twenty-five, they will get married.
5. Look after the children, please, while I cook (am cooking) dinner.
6. They say that when we are in our fourth year we'll be able to read English newspapers.
7. He will call as soon as he finds something out.
8. Let's wait until the sun rises.
9. "If you can't answer the second question, you'll have to come once again," the examiner said.
10. Will you be still here when we return?
11. My brother will never forgive me if I let you go.
12. Do you know when she usually returns home?
13. As soon as you decide to go there, tell me.
14. Do all your homework before you go for a walk.
15. They will start working after they discuss the plan.
16. If the weather is bad, we won't go to the country.
17. We don't know if Jack will pass his English exam.
18. I wonder if John will come if you ask him about it.
19. She asks if you will let her go to the cinema if she finishes her homework at four.
20. Ask her when her mother will come. If she doesn't come very late, I'll call her.

Exercise 12

Use the correct form of the verbs (**Present Indefinite**, **Present Continuous**, **"to be going to"** or **Future Indefinite**) to express a future action.

1. I … (to have) a seminar at 10 tomorrow.
2. I … (to walk) my dog. • Wait a minute! I … (to come) with you.
3. How long … (it, to take) you to do your work?
4. I know he … (to leave) for his home town tomorrow.
5. I think Alice … (to like) your present.
6. I … (to go) home tomorrow. The term … (to start) soon.
7. I can't see you on Sunday. I … (to have) a meal with my friends.
8. Why have you got the flowers? • I … (to visit) my teacher.
9. Boss, remember you … (to fly) to Chicago next week.
10. I have a splitting headache! • Oh, I … (to get) you a pill.
11. When … (their plane, arrive)?
12. Andy … (to go) on a business trip to Athens. He … (to spend) four days there.
13. Don't worry. I … (to feed) your cat while you are away.
14. They … (to return) from their honeymoon tomorrow, … they?
15. This bus … (not, to stop) there.

Exercise 13

Translate into English.

1. Представление закончится в 9, так что к 10 часам я буду дома.
2. Мне кажется, что, если им понадобится наш совет, они сами свяжутся с нами.
3. Ник приезжает сегодня вечером. Вы его будете встречать?
4. У Кейт будет ребенок.
5. Пойдем в кино в воскресенье! • Не могу. Мы с Сэмом будем играть в теннис.

Упражнение 12

Употребите глаголы в правильной форме (**Present Indefinite**, **Present Continuous**, **"to be going to"** или **Future Indefinite**) для выражения действия в будущем.

1. I have a seminar at ten tomorrow.
2. I am going to walk my dog. • Wait a minute! I'll come with you.
3. How long will it take you to do your work?
4. I know he is leaving for his home town tomorrow.
5. I think Alice will like your present.
6. I am going home tomorrow. My term starts soon.
7. I am having a meal with my friends.
8. I am going to visit my teacher.
9. You are flying to Chicago next week.
10. I'll get you a pill.
11. When does their plane arrive?
12. Andy is going on a business trip to Athens. He is going to spend four days there.
13. I'll feed your cat while you are away.
14. They are returning from their honeymoon tomorrow, aren't they?
15. This bus doesn't stop there.

Упражнение 13

Переведите на английский.

1. The show finishes at nine, so I'll be at home by ten o'clock.
2. It seems to me that if they need our advice, they will get in touch with us themselves.
3. Nick is coming tonight. Are you going to meet him?
4. Kate is going to have a baby.
5. Let's go to the cinema on Sunday! • Oh, I can't, I am playing tennis with Sam.

6. Я не знаю, когда ему придется поехать туда снова.
• Но если он поедет, пусть летит на самолете. Это займет гораздо меньше времени.
7. Когда у тебя начнутся занятия?
8. Туча все темнеет и темнеет. По-моему, собирается дождь.
9. Боюсь, перестраивать дачу будет слишком дорого.
10. Если ты как следует это обдумаешь, ты увидишь, что я права.
11. Ты же промок насквозь! Садись, я приготовлю тебе чаю.
12. На небе — ни облачка. Будет прекрасный денек!
13. Я уверена, что он не будет возражать, если ты возьмешь велосипед.
14. Правительство вновь собирается повысить цены.
15. Интересно, понравится ли ей наше предложение?
А что, если она не согласится с нами?

6. I don't know when he will have to go there again. • But if he goes there, let him go by plane. It will take much less time.
7. When do your classes begin?
8. The cloud is getting darker and darker. I think it's going to rain.
9. I'm afraid it will be too expensive to rebuild the country house.
10. If you think it over carefully, you'll see that I am right.
11. Oh, you are wet through! Sit down, I'll make you some tea.
12. There isn't a cloud in the sky. It's going to be a wonderful day!
13. I'm sure he won't mind if you take his bike.
14. The government is going to raise prices again.
15. I wonder if she will like our offer. What if she doesn't agree with us?

15.4 The Past Indefinite Tense

FORMATION

regular verbs — infinitive without **to** + ending **-ed**
irregular verbs — special forms

MEANINGS

1. A past action (the time of the action is usually given or implied).

2. A succession of actions in the past.

3. A recurrent or permanent action in the past.
   used to + **infinitive** (to express an action or a state).
   would + **infinitive** (to express an action).

Exercise 14

Put the verbs into **Past Indefinite**.

1. Mr. Brown talks too much.
2. I sleep well.
3. The weather is nice.
4. My grandfather smokes a lot.
5. She meets her friends on Thursdays.
6. He understands me.
7. You eat too little.
8. I know the answer.
9. We take our dog for a walk twice a day.
10. Alice wants to see you.
11. It costs so much money!
12. Their child often falls ill.
13. My parents always get up early.
14. I always have a shower in the morning.
15. We do the shopping on Saturday.

15.4 The Past Indefinite Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

He **studied** Philosophy at the University. I **heard** her come in.
I **didn't come** because I was ill. Why **did** you **miss** the lecture?

ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

1. She **graduated** from the University *three years ago*.
   We **met** in Germany. They **didn't have** classes *yesterday*.
   What **did** you **say**?
2. He **came** from work, **changed** his clothes, **had** dinner and **sat** down to watch TV.
3. He often **painted** her. I knew that they **loved** each other.

   We **used to go** to school together. | (=раньше,
   They **used to be** great friends. | бывало,
   She **would write** to him every other day. | когда-то)

Упражнение 14

Поставьте глаголы в **Past Indefinite**.

1. Mr. Brown talked too much.
2. I slept well.
3. The weather was nice.
4. My grandfather smoked a lot.
5. She met her friends on Thursdays.
6. He understood me.
7. You ate too little.
8. I knew the answer.
9. We took our dog for a walk twice a day.
10. Alice wanted to see you.
11. It cost so much money!
12. Their child often fell ill.
13. My parents always got up early.
14. I always had a shower in the morning.
15. We did the shopping on Saturday.

Exercise 15

Make the following sentences negative and interrogative.

1. We went abroad last summer.
2. I heard a strange noise.
3. She thought it over.
4. The police caught the criminal.
5. It was a terrible accident.
6. He hid the keys.
7. She found a ring.
8. Nick broke his leg.
9. Your purse was on the table.
10. They flew to Washington.
11. It happened last night.
12. Mary laid the table.
13. His wife forgave him.
14. They were at the cinema a week ago.
15. Tom decided to sell his car.

Exercise 16

Ask questions to the words in bold type.

MODEL: She worked **in London**.

1. **Yes**, I liked yesterday's concert.
2. I wanted **three** apples.
3. **No**, he didn't speak Portuguese.
4. He lived **in Baltimore**.
5. We ate **a steak**.
6. I went on holiday with **Mary**.

Упражнение 15

Сделайте следующие предложения отрицательными и вопросительными.

1. We didn't go abroad last summer. Did you go abroad last summer?
2. I didn't hear any strange noise. Did you hear a strange noise?
3. She didn't think it over. Did she think it over?
4. The police didn't catch the criminal. Did the police catch the criminal?
5. It wasn't a terrible accident. Was it a terrible accident?
6. He didn't hide the keys. Did he hide the keys?
7. She didn't find a ring. Did she find a ring?
8. Nick didn't break his leg. Did Nick break his leg?
9. Your purse wasn't on the table. Was your purse on the table?
10. They didn't fly to Washington. Did they fly to Washington?
11. It didn't happen last night. Did it happen last night?
12. Mary didn't lay the table. Did Mary lay the table?
13. His wife didn't forgive him. Did his wife forgive him?
14. They weren't at the cinema a week ago.
    Were they at the cinema a week ago?
15. Tom didn't decide to sell his car. Did Tom decide to sell his car?

Упражнение 16

Задайте вопросы к выделенным словам.

Where did she work?

1. Did you like yesterday's concert?
2. How many apples did you want?
3. Did he speak Portuguese?
4. Where did he live?
5. What did you eat?
6. Who did you go on holiday with?

7. It took her **a week** to read the book.
8. There were **two** rooms in their old flat.
9. The weather was **wonderful**.
10. She wanted to live in Geneva **because she liked Switzerland**.
11. This fur coat cost **$10,000**.
12. Mr. Smith went to the bank **last Friday**.
13. I met **one of my classmates** the other day.
14. **Ted** solved the problem.
15. She was afraid of **dogs**.

Exercise 17

Imagine that you are asking your friend questions about his trip. Make up questions from the given words.

MODEL: Where, go

1. go, on business
2. where, stay
3. go alone, with a group
4. how, travel
5. have time, go sightseeing
6. the weather, fine
7. have, important, talks
8. very busy
9. how, spend, spare time
10. get acquainted, with anybody
11. go out, in the evenings
12. the food, expensive
13. what, language, speak
14. how long, the trip, last
15. the flight back, pleasant

7. How long (How much time) did it take her to read the book?
8. How many rooms were there in their old flat?
9. What was the weather like?
10. Why did she want to live in Geneva?
11. How much did this fur coat cost?
12. When did Mr. Smith go to the bank?
13. Who did you meet the other day?
14. Who solved the problem?
15. What was she afraid of?

Упражнение 17

Представьте себе, что вы спрашиваете друга о поездке. Составьте вопросы из данных слов.

Where did you go?

1. Did you go there on business?
2. Where did you stay?
3. Did you go alone or with a group?
4. How did you travel?
5. Did you have time to go sightseeing?
6. Was the weather fine?
7. Did you have any important talks?
8. Were you very busy?
9. How did you spend your spare time?
10. Did you get acquainted with anybody?
11. Did you go out in the evenings?
12. Was the food expensive?
13. What language did you speak?
14. How long did the trip last?
15. Was the flight back pleasant?

Exercise 18

Read the story and insert the given verbs in **Past Indefinite**.

"I … (**to keep**) my secret for five long years," the old woman … (**to say)** to the newspaper reporter. The year … (**to be**) 1819, and she … (**to be**) a hundred years old. The reporter … (**to think**) that she … (**not, to look**) older than 60 or 70.

The woman's name … (**to be**) Phoebe Hessel. When she … (**to be**) 15, she … (**to fall**) in love with a young soldier, William Golding. Golding's regiment … (**to go**) to the West Indies. Phoebe … (**not, to want**) to be separated from him, and there … (**to be**) only one way she … (**can**) follow him. She … (**to dress**) in men's clothing and … (**to join**) another regiment which she … (**to know**) was also going to the West Indies.

We'll never know how she … (**to keep**) her secret for so long. She … (**to stay**) in the West Indies for five years. However, in 1733, her lover's regiment … (**to go**) back to Europe. There … (**to be**) only one way she … (**can**) follow him again; somehow she … (**to have to**) get out of the army. Phoebe … (**to go**) to an officer's wife and … (**to tell**) her the truth. By the time Phoebe … (**to come**) back to England, her lover … (**to be**) also there. He had been wounded and … (**to be**) in a military hospital, close to death. She … (**to nurse**) him back to health. They … (**to get**) married shortly afterwards. They … (**to be**) very happy together and … (**to live**) in Brighton for almost fifty years, until Golding … (**to die**) in 1783.

Phoebe … (**to have**) eight children, seven of whom … (**to die**) in their childhood. She … (**to earn**) her living by selling fruit. In 1788, she … (**to meet**) her second husband, William Hessel. He … (**to be**) a fisherman.

In 1821, at the age of 102, she … (**to meet**) King George IV. He … (**to give**) her a small pension and … (**to say**) that she … (**to be**) "a jolly good fellow".

Упражнение 18

Прочтите рассказ и вставьте данные глаголы в **Past Indefinite**.

"I kept my secret for five long years," the old woman said to the newspaper reporter. The year was 1819, and she was a hundred years old. The reporter thought that she didn't look older than 60 or 70.

The woman's name was Phoebe Hessel. When she was 15, she fell in love with a young soldier, William Golding. Golding's regiment went to the West Indies. Phoebe didn't want to be separated from him, and there was only one way she could follow him. She dressed in men's clothing and joined another regiment which she knew was also going to the West Indies.

We'll never know how she kept her secret for so long. She stayed in the West Indies for five years. However, in 1733, her lover's regiment went back to Europe. There was only one way she could follow him again; somehow she had to get out of the army. Phoebe went to an officer's wife and told her the truth. By the time Phoebe came back to England, her lover was also there. He had been wounded and was in a military hospital, close to death. She nursed him back to health. They got married shortly afterwards. They were very happy together and lived in Brighton for almost fifty years, until Golding died in 1783.

Phoebe had eight children, seven of whom died in their childhood. She earned her living by selling fruit. In 1788, she met her second husband, William Hessel. He was a fisherman.

In 1821, at the age of 102, she met King George IV. He gave her a small pension and said that she was "a jolly good fellow".

Exercise 19

Translate into English.

1. Где ты была вчера вечером? Я звонила тебе несколько раз.
2. Эти студенты начали изучать немецкий год назад.
3. Погода была хорошая, и мы решили погулять в парке.
4. Я не знала, что делать, когда он рассказал мне об этом.
5. Это случилось три месяца назад.
6. Когда вы встречались в последний раз?
7. Я не смотрела вчера телевизор: у меня не было времени.
8. Утром было очень холодно, не так ли?
9. Он много курил раньше.
10. Виктор родился в 1965 году.
11. Вчера у нас не было занятий, так как наш преподаватель был болен.
12. Вчера папа вернулся с работы позже обычного.
13. Какой язык ты изучал в школе?
14. Почему ты так рано ушел?
15. Вчера был четверг.
16. Ты была в Москве летом? • Нет, я ездила на море.
17. Ты получила хорошую оценку на экзамене? • Да.
18. Мне не хотелось идти в кино, поэтому я осталась дома и почитала.
19. В комнате было очень много народу, поэтому было душно.
20. Раньше она была очень нервной.

Упражнение 19

Переведите на английский.

1. Where were you last night? I called you several times.
2. These students began to study German a year ago.
3. The weather was fine and we decided to go for a walk in the park.
4. I didn’t know what to do when he told me about it.
5. It happened three months ago.
6. When did you meet last?
7. I didn’t watch TV yesterday, I didn’t have time. (I had no time.)
8. It was very cold in the morning, wasn’t it?
9. He used to smoke a lot.
10. Victor was born in 1965.
11. We had no classes yesterday because our teacher was ill.
12. Yesterday Dad returned from work later than usual.
13. What language did you learn at school?
14. Why did you leave so early?
15. It was Thursday yesterday
16. Were you in Moscow in summer? • No, I went to the seaside.
17. Did you get a good mark at the exam? • Yes, I did.
18. I didn’t want to go to the cinema, that’s why I stayed at home and read.
19. There were very many people in the room, that’s why it was stuffy.
20. She used to be very nervous.

15.5 The Present Perfect Tense

FORMATION

auxiliary **have** in The Present Indefinite Tense + Participle II

have/has + done

MEANINGS

1. An accomplished action **which is viewed** from the moment of speaking **as part of the present situation** because it has a result at present.

USED IN THE PRESENT CONTEXT WITH:

1) *ever*
never
just

already
yet

2) *today, this morning, this week, this month, this year, this summer, etc. (when the period of time is not over yet)*

3) *so far*

4) *once (twice, three times, etc.), the third time, etc.*

2. An action which began before the moment of speaking and continues into it or up to it (with verbs that don't have Continuous forms).

USED IN THE PRESENT CONTEXT WITH:

1) an indication of the period of the duration of the action with preposition *"for" (for an hour, for many years, for the last few days, for a long time, for ages,* etc.), *lately, recently.*

2) an indication of the starting point of the action with the word *"since"* (it can be a preposition, an adverb, and a conjunction).

15.5 The Present Perfect Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

She **has** already **seen** this film. **Has** she **seen** the film yet?
She **hasn't seen** the film yet.

ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

1. I'**ve heard** about it too. (= результат "Now I know about it too.") She **has gone** to the shop. (= результат "She is not here, she is shopping.")

УПОТРЕБЛЯЕТСЯ В КОНТЕКСТЕ НАСТОЯЩЕГО ВРЕМЕНИ:

1) **Have** you *ever* **been** to Africa? **Have** you *ever* **played** cards?
I've *never* **been** to Greece. He **has** *never* **worked** here.
I've *just* **seen** him go out. **I've** *just* **spoken** to him on the phone.
She **has** *already* **spoken** to me about it.
Have you **done** your homework *yet*? I **haven't been** there *yet.*

2) I **haven't seen** her *today*. **Have** you **read** any interesting books *this summer*? We **haven't been** to the cinema *this month.*

3) They **haven't won** a game so *far.*

4) I'**ve read** this book *twice.*
It's the fourth time she **has visited** this town.

2. **I've known** her all my life.

УПОТРЕБЛЯЕТСЯ В КОНТЕКСТЕ НАСТОЯЩЕГО ВРЕМЕНИ:

1. We **haven't heard** from her *for about a year*. **I haven't slept** properly *for the last two days*. She **has been** very busy *lately.*

2. I **haven't seen** her *since* June. She left Moscow in June and I **haven't seen** her *since*. I **haven't seen** her *since* she **left** Moscow.

Exercise 20

Put the verbs into **Present Perfect Tense**.

1. … (the secretary, to come) yet?
2. I … (to do) my homework. Could you check it?
3. She … (not, to receive) any letters this week.
4. My friends and I … (to see) several good films recently.
5. … (Charles, to pass) his exam? • Yes, he …. .
6. Would you like some tea? I … (just, to make) some.
7. What's the matter with Bill? • He … (to break) his arm.
8. … (you, to have) a holiday this year? • No, not yet.
9. He … (not,to finish) his work yet.
10. I … (to buy) a new carpet. Come and look at it.
11. … (you, to hear) from her lately?
12. Is John here? • No, he … (to go) to work.
13. I know the details of the accident. They … (already, to inform) me.
14. I … (not, to notice) it before.
15. I … (often, to see) this girl but I … (never, to speak) to her.
16. … (you, to hear) the latest news? It's most extraordinary!
17. This writer … (not, to write) a single book so far this year.
18. … (you, ever, to ride) a camel? • No, never.
19. Do you know that Jill and Tim … (to get) married?
20. The weather is very hot. It … (not, to rain) at all this summer.

Exercise 21

Make up sentences according to the model.

MODEL 1: to play, cricket? — never, several times

1. to redecorate, a house? — twice
2. to be, abroad? — four times

Упражнение 20

Поставьте глаголы в **Present Perfect**.

1. Has the secretary come yet?
2. I've done my homework.
3. She hasn't received any letters this week.
4. My friends and I have seen several good films recently.
5. Has Charles passed his exam? • Yes, he has.
6. I've just made some.
7. He has broken his arm.
8. Have you had a holiday this year?
9. He hasn't finished his work yet.
10. I've bought a new carpet.
11. Have you heard from her lately?
12. He has gone to work.
13. They have already informed me.
14. I haven't noticed it before.
15. I have often seen this girl but I have never spoken to her.
16. Have you heard the latest news?
17. This writer hasn't written a single book so far this year.
18. Have you ever ridden a camel?
19. Do you know that Jill and Tim have got married?
20. It hasn't rained at all this summer.

Упражнение 21

Составьте предложения, как показано в модели.

Have you ever played cricket?

• No, I've never played cricket.
• Yes, I've played cricket several times.

1. Have you ever redecorated a house? • Yes, I've done it twice.
2. Have you ever been abroad? • Yes, I've been abroad four times.

3. to lose one's way, in a wood? — never
4. to speak, at a meeting? — several times
5. to join, a party? — never
6. to have, an operation? — once
7. to work, on a farm? — never
8. to be, Scotland? — once
9. to sing, in a choir? — several times
10. to catch, a big fish? — never

MODEL 2: the most exciting film — to see

1. the most handsome man — to know
2. the biggest mushroom — to find
3. the most interesting trip — to make
4. the most beautiful garden — to walk in
5. the cleverest student — to teach

Exercise 22

Make up sentences according to the model.

MODEL: the first time — to drive a car (he)

1. the third time — to meet this young man at a party (I)
2. the first time — to divorce (they)?
3. the second time — to break one's leg (he)
4. the fifth time — to make this cake (she)
5. the first time — to quarrel (you)?

3. Have you ever lost your way in a wood?
   • No, I've never lost my way.
4. Have you ever spoken at a meeting?
   • Yes, I've spoken at a meeting several times.
5. Have you ever joined any party?
   • No, I've never joined any party.
6. Have you ever had an operation?
   • Yes, I've had an operation once.
7. Have you ever worked on a farm?
   • No, I've never worked there.
8. Have you ever been to Scotland?
   • Yes, I've been there once.
9. Have you ever sung in a choir?
   • Yes, I've done it several times.
10. Have you ever caught a big fish?
    • No, I've never caught any.

This is the most exciting film I've ever seen.

1. He is the most handsome man I've ever known.
2. This is the biggest mushroom I've ever found.
3. This is the most interesting trip I've ever made.
4. This is the most beautiful garden I've ever walked in.
5. She is the cleverest student I've ever taught.

Упражнение 22

Составьте предложения, как показано в модели.

It's the first time he has driven a car.

1. It's the third time I've met this young man at a party.
2. Is this the first time they have divorced?
3. It's the second time he has broken his leg.
4. It's the fifth time she has made this cake.
5. Is this the first time you've quarrelled?

Exercise 23

Make up questions with **HOW LONG**.

MODEL: He is in hospital.

1. I know the Browns.
2. Fred is a teacher.
3. Alice and Ben are married.
4. Nick has a flat of his own.
5. We are great friends.
6. Mr. Lewis works as a dentist.
7. Jerry and Rachel are in Spain.
8. My friend has a baby.
9. An acquaintance of mine lives in Glasgow.
10. My husband has a beard.

Exercise 24

Answer the questions in **Present Perfect** using the words in brackets.

MODEL: When did you ski last? (since my last holiday).

1. When did you see Rachel last? (for ages)
2. When did you last travel with your friends? (since I graduated from the University)
3. When did he last sew on buttons? (since he got married)
4. When did you last go to a party? (for half a year)
5. When were you at the seaside last? (since last summer)
6. When did you last speak to him on the phone? (for a week)
7. When did she last get a letter from her boyfriend? (for five days)
8. When did you last sing in public? (since I left school)
9. When did he last play football? (for many years)
10. When were you ill last? (since I was twenty)

Упражнение 23

Составьте вопросы с **HOW LONG**.

How long has he been in hospital?

1. How long have you known the Browns?
2. How long has he been a teacher?
3. How long have they been married?
4. How long has he had a flat of his own?
5. How long have you been great friends?
6. How long has he worked as a dentist?
7. How long have they been in Spain?
8. How long has she had the baby?
9. How long has she lived there?
10. How long has he had a beard?

Упражнение 24

Ответьте на вопросы в **Present Perfect**, используя слова в скобках.

I haven't skied since my last holiday.

1. I haven't seen her for ages.
2. I haven't travelled with my friends since I graduated from the University.
3. He hasn't sewn on buttons since he got married.
4. I haven't gone to a party for half a year.
5. I haven't been to the seaside since last summer.
6. I haven't spoken to him on the phone for a week.
7. She hasn't got a letter from him for five days.
8. I haven't sung in public since I left school.
9. He hasn't played football for many years.
10. I haven't been ill since I was twenty.

Exercise 25

Paraphrase the following sentences
using **Present Perfect** with **FOR** or **SINCE**.

MODEL: I last read a newspaper on September 15.
It's two months since I saw Ann.

1. He bought a car in February.
2. She arrived in Italy three days ago.
3. It's years since I took any photographs.
4. I last earned a lot of money in July.
5. He became quite different when he got married.
6. William last paid his debt in 2013.
7. It's two months since I visited my friend.
8. The last time I rode a horse was about ten years ago.
9. The last time we were abroad was in summer 2010.
10. She wrote to me in winter last.
11. It's a week since she cleaned the flat.
12. I was at the theatre at the beginning of the month.
13. I had a proper rest a year ago last.
14. They divorced last month.
15. It's a long time since they got to know each other.

Exercise 26

Insert **SINCE** or **FOR**.

1. He has been away … a long time.
2. They have lived in this town … 1965.
3. We have had this flat … five years.
4. Mary hasn't eaten anything … breakfast.
5. Certain rock groups have existed … the sixties.
6. I have known my husband … at least twenty-five years.
7. Motor cars have been used … the 19th century.
8. Richard hasn't been to his home town … three months.
9. I haven't slept properly … two nights.

Упражнение 25

Перефразируйте следующие предложения,
употребляя **Present Perfect** с **FOR** или **SINCE**.

I haven't read a newspaper since September 15.
I haven't seen Ann for two months.

1. He has had his car since February.
2. She's been in Italy for three days.
3. I haven't taken any photographs for years.
4. I haven't earned much money since July.
5. He has become quite different since he got married.
6. William hasn't paid debts since 2013.
7. I haven't visited my friend for two months.
8. I haven't ridden a horse for ten years.
9. We haven't been abroad since summer 2010.
10. She hasn't written to me since winter.
11. She hasn't cleaned the flat for a week.
12. I haven't been to the theatre since the beginning of the month.
13. I haven't had a proper rest for a year.
14. They have been divorced since last month.
15. They have known each other for a long time.

Упражнение 26

Вставьте **SINCE** или **FOR**.

1. He has been away for a long time.
2. They have lived in this town since 1965.
3. We have had this flat for five years.
4. Mary hasn't eaten anything since breakfast.
5. Certain rock groups have existed since the sixties.
6. I have known my husband for at least twenty-five years.
7. Motor cars have been used since the 19th century.
8. Richard hasn't been to his home town for three months.
9. I haven't slept properly for two nights.

10. I have never travelled aboard a ship … that journey.
11. The light has been on … morning.
12. He has been very ill … the last month.
13. Mr. Thomson has been in hospital … that accident.
14. The campaign has lasted … three months.
15. We've had unbearable heat … the last two months.
16. Everything has changed … we were little children.
17. It has been very cloudy … early morning.
18. Nobody has seen her … last week.
19. I've been awake … a long time.
20. I've been awake … five o'clock.

Exercise 27

Translate into English.

1. Я только что видела его на улице.
2. Мы давно не виделись.
3. Посмотри! Дождь пошел!
4. Вы когда-нибудь были в Крыму? • Да, три раза.
5. Не ждите его, он ушел.
6. Они уже обсудили этот вопрос?
7. Что с ним случилось? • Он простудился.
8. Разве вы раньше не видели этот балет? • Я видела его дважды.
9. Он очень изменился за последнее время.
10. Мы не встречались с тех пор, как он уехал в командировку.
11. Я знаю ее с детства. Это моя лучшая подруга.
12. Я впервые слушаю эту передачу по радио.
13. Она очень устала. У нее был тяжелый день.
14. Вы когда-нибудь ссорились с женой? • Нет. Мы уже пять лет вместе, и еще ни разу не поссорились.
15. Сколько вы здесь живете? • Всю жизнь.
16. У них свое дело уже три года.
17. Это уже четвертая таблетка, которую ты сегодня выпил. В чем дело?
18. Ты уже пообедала?
    • Нет еще. Я завтракала в 9 и с тех пор ничего не ела.

10. I have never travelled aboard a ship since that journey.
11. The light has been on since morning.
12. He has been very ill for the last month.
13. Mr. Thomson has been in hospital since that accident.
14. The campaign has lasted for three months.
15. We've had unbearable heat for the last two months.
16. Everything has changed since we were little children.
17. It has been very cloudy since early morning.
18. Nobody has seen her since last week.
19. I've been awake for a long time.
20. I've been awake since five o'clock.

Упражнение 27

Переведите на английский.

1. I've just seen him in the street.
2. We haven't seen each other for ages.
3. Look! It has started raining!
4. Have you ever been to the Crimea? • Yes, I've been there three times.
5. Don't wait for him, he has left.
6. Have they discussed this question yet?
7. What has happened to him? • He has caught cold.
8. Haven't you seen this ballet before? • I've seen it twice.
9. He has changed a lot lately.
10. We haven't met since he went on a business trip.
11. I've known her since my childhood. She is my best friend.
12. It's the first time I've listened to this programme on the radio.
13. She is very tired. She has had a very difficult day.
14. Have you ever quarrelled with your wife? • No, I haven't. We've been together for five years already and we haven't quarrelled once so far.
15. How long have you lived here? • (I've lived here) all my life.
16. They have had (have run) their own business for three years already.
17. It's the fourth pill you've taken today. What's the matter?
18. Have you had dinner yet? • No, not yet. I had breakfast at 9 and I haven't eaten anything since.

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

FORMATION

auxiliary **be** in The Present Perfect Tense + Participle I

have been + doing

MEANINGS

1. An action which began before the moment of speaking and continues into it or up to it (except the verbs that have no Continuous forms).
   Used with the same indications as The Present Perfect Tense *(lately, recently, since, for…)*
2. An action which was in progress quite recently and which affects the present situation, explains or gives reasons for the state of things at the present moment.

COMPARE

1. THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE **stresses the end and the result** of the action.
   THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE **stresses the action itself** or **the continuing situation**.
   - Rachel **has written** *six letters* today.
   - Rachel **has been writing** letters *all day today*.
2. Use THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE to say **how often** something has happened.
   - I'**ve played** tennis *three times* this week.
   - I'**ve been playing** a lot of tennis *recently*.
3. THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE is preferable to describe **a permanent or a very long-lasting situation**.
   - He **has lived** here *all his life*.
   - He **has been living** in Durham *for the last few months*.

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

I have been learning Spanish *for three years*. **Have** you **been studying** here *long*? (*Как правило, не употребляется в отрицательных предложениях.*)

ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

1. What **have** you **been doing** *lately!*

I **have been doing** my homework *for two hours already*. There is something wrong with the car — he **has been repairing** it *since morning*.

2. *The children are very excited*. They **have been running** in the yard.

She looks very tired. She **has been working** a lot recently.

СРАВНИТЕ

1. THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE **делает акцент на завершении и результате действия**.
   THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE **делает акцент на самом действии или его продолжении**.
   - Сегодня Рейчел **написала** 6 писем.
   - Рейчел *весь день сегодня* **пишет (писала)** письма.
2. Если есть **указание на то, сколько раз совершалось действие**, употребляется THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE.

• На этой неделе я **играла** в теннис *три раза*.

• *В последнее время* я много **играю** в теннис.

3. **Для описания постоянной или очень давно продолжающейся ситуации** предпочтительно употребление THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE.
   - Он **живет (прожил)** здесь *всю жизнь*.
   - *Последние несколько месяцев* он **живет** в Дарэме.

Exercise 28

Put the verbs into **Present Perfect Continuous**.

1. Call the doctor. She … (to get) weaker and weaker since she woke up.
2. Oh, Walter, at last! I … (to try) to get you all day!
3. What's the matter? Your eyes are red…. (you, to cry)?
4. Does your daughter always play the piano so much? She … (to play) since I came.
5. Come on, Alex! I'll be late for work because of you. You … (to have) a bath for an hour already!
6. The kitchen is in a mess. … (you, to cook)?
7. He is the worst student I've ever had. He … (to study) English for a year and he hardly knows the alphabet.
8. I'm sorry I'm late … . (you, to wait) long?
   • Actually, I was late too, so I … (to wait) for ten minutes only.
9. I can't stand this awful weather. It … (to rain) for three days now.
10. They can't find any decision.
    They … (to argue) for two hours already.
11. There is a strange look in your eyes. … (you, to drink)?
12. The children are getting more and more impatient. They … (to look forward) to this holiday for months.
13. The discussion … (to go on) for a long time. I wonder what conclusion they will come to.
14. How long … (your brother, to wear) glasses?
15. Where have you been? What … (you, to do) since we met last?

Exercise 29

Choose the correct form of the verbs:
Present Perfect or **Present Perfect Continuous Tense**.

1. Sue … (to garden) all day. She … (to plant) several apple-trees.
2. I … (to revise) most of the material for my exam.

Упражнение 28

Поставьте глаголы в **Present Perfect Continuous**.

1. She has been getting weaker and weaker.
2. I've been trying to get you all day!
3. Have you been crying?
4. She has been playing since I came.
5. You've been having a bath for an hour already!
6. Have you been cooking?
7. He has been studying English for a year.
8. Have you been waiting long?
   • I have been waiting for ten minutes only.
9. It has been raining for three days now.
10. They have been arguing for two hours already.
11. Have you been drinking?
12. They've been looking forward to this holiday for months.
13. The discussion has been going on for a long time.
14. How long has your brother been wearing glasses?
15. What have you been doing since we met last?

Упражнение 29

Выберите правильную форму глагола: **Present Perfect** или **Present Perfect Continuous**.

1. Sue has been gardening all day. She has planted several apple-trees.
2. I have revised most of the material for my exam.

3. They … (not, to stop) quarrelling since they returned.
4. I … (only, to hear) from her twice since she went away
5. I … (to look) for the documents all day but I … (to find) any so far. I wonder where they can be.
6. I … (to try) to finish my report for the last half an hour and you distract me with your endless questions! • You are unfair, I … (to ask) you only twice.
7. … (you, to hear) the news? Angela and Tom are in love with each other! • That's not new, I … (to know) it for ages.
8. Bob isn't good at driving. He … (already, to fail) his driving test three times.
9. The fortress … (to stand) here for 500 years.
10. I … (to look) through my photograph albums. I wonder what … (to happen) to my schoolmates.
11. The house is in such a mess that I … (not, to finish) the housework yet though I … (to do) it all morning.
12. She is very talented. She … (just, to sell) three of her own paintings.
13. I am sick and tired of that queue! We … (to stand) here for ages and it … (not, to move) at all in the last ten minutes.
14. You look absolutely exhausted! • I … (to play) football with the children and I … (not, to play) for years, so I am not used to it.
15. I … (to shop) here for fifteen years but I … (never, to see) such a big sale.
16. The young couple next door … (to go out) every night this week.
17. I … (to pick) twenty pounds of apples in the last two days. I … (never, to have) such a good crop before.
18. Where are the children? • They are in their room. They … (to draw) since they came home.
19. Where are the letters? … (you, not, to type) them yet?
20. The Bennetts are in Austria now. They … (to travel) round Europe for two months.

3. They haven't stopped quarrelling since they returned.
4. I have only heard from her twice since she went away.
5. I've been looking for the documents all day but I haven't found any so far.
6. I've been trying to finish my report for the last half an hour. • You are unfair, I have asked you only twice.
7. Have you heard the news? • I've known it for ages.
8. He has already failed his driving test three times.
9. The fortress has stood here for 500 years.
10. I've been looking through my photograph albums. I wonder what has happened to my schoolmates.
11. I haven't finished the housework yet though I've been doing it all morning.
12. She has just sold three of her own paintings.
13. We've been standing here for ages and it hasn't moved at all in the last ten minutes.
14. I've been playing football with the children and I haven't played for years.
15. I've been shopping here for fifteen years but I've never seen such a big sale.
16. The young couple next door has gone out every night this week.
17. I've picked twenty pounds of apples in the last two days. I've never had such a good crop before.
18. They have been drawing since they came home.
19. Haven't you typed them yet?
20. They have been travelling around Europe for two months.

Exercise 30

Put the verbs into the correct form: **Present Perfect** or **Present Perfect Continuous**.

Mrs. Ellis is writing to her son, Thomas, who is a student.

Dear Thomas,

It's several weeks since we last had a letter from you. We … (**to look**) forward to hearing from you. Why … (you, **not, to write**) to us? You know how much your letters … (always, **to mean**) to us.

I … (**to send**) a parcel to you with some food and warm clothes. Your father … (**to save**) the weekly sports magazines you like to read, and we … (**to put**) these in the parcel too.

Life … (**to go on**) as usual here. Mr. Jones next door, who … (not, **to enjoy**) good health recently,… (**to have to**) go into hospital. He … (**to have**) an operation and will be home again soon. Meanwhile his cat … (**to come**) to us for food and milk. I think we … (**to manage**) to look after it quite well.

… (you, **to see**) anything of Mark Andrews? Apparently he … (**to leave**) school now and is at the same college as you. We … (**to get**) news of him regularly from his mother. But, of course, he is two years younger than you. He … (not, **to say**) whether he … (**to meet**) you or not.

By now your first exams will be over. We hope you … **(to do**) well in them. Do write soon.

Lots of love, Mum.

Exercise 31

Translate into English.

1. Сколько раз он опаздывал на работу на этой неделе?
2. Ты все утро учишь грамматические правила. Надо сделать перерыв.
3. Твой английский стал лучше. Ты сам занимался?

Упражнение 30

Выберите правильную форму глагола: **Present Perfect** или **Present Perfect Continuous**.

It several weeks since we last had a letter from you. We have been looking forward to hearing from you. Why haven't you written to us? You know how much your letters have always meant to us.

I have sent a parcel to you with some food and warm clothes. Your father has been saving the weekly sports magazines you like to read, and we have put these in the parcel too.

Life has been going on as usual here. Mr. Jones next door, who hasn't enjoyed good health recently, had to go into hospital. He has had an operation and will be home again soon. Meanwhile his cat has been coming to us for food and milk. I think we have managed to look after it quite well.

Have you seen anything of Mark Andrews? Apparently he has left school now and is at the same college as you. We have been getting news of him regularly from his mother. But, of course, he is two years younger than you. He hasn't said whether he has met you or not.

We hope you have done well in them.

Упражнение 31

Переведите на английский.

1. How many times has he been late for work this week?
2. You've been learning grammar rules all morning. You must take a break.
3. Your English has improved. Have you been practising by yourself?

4. Я много думал об этой книге и пришел к выводу, что мы не можем ее издать.
5. Это наш новый дом. Мы живем здесь всего год.
6. Дэвид пытается бросить курить.
   Он не курит уже две недели.
7. Я сто лет его не видела. Ты не знаешь, чем он в последнее время занимается?
8. Это моя любимая книга, я трижды ее читала.
9. Ты знаешь, что у него знаменитая коллекция монет?
   Он с детства их собирает.
10. У меня ужасно болит голова из-за этой погоды.
    Дождь идет со вчерашнего дня.
11. С тех пор как она бросила курить, она все время поправляется.
12. Ты уже полчаса болтаешь по телефону! Не пора ли закончить?
13. Он ищет работу в течение последних нескольких месяцев, но пока ничего не нашел. • Да, теперь это нелегко.
14. Я читаю уже три часа, книга крайне захватывающая.
    • И сколько ты уже прочел?
15. Она добилась больших успехов с тех пор, как начала здесь работать.
16. Кейт уже пришла?
    • Нет, я жду ее с 5 часов.
17. Сколько вы занимаетесь этой проблемой?
18. Она избегает встреч с ним с тех пор, как они поссорились.
19. Это уже десятая конфета, которую ребенок сегодня съел.
20. Где ты был? Тебе целый день кто-то звонит.

4. I've been thinking a lot about this book, and I've come to the conclusion that we can't publish it.
5. This is our new house. We've been living here for only a year.
6. David is trying to give up smoking.
   He hasn't smoked for two weeks already.
7. I haven't seen him for ages. Do you know what he has been doing lately?
8. This is my favourite book, I've read it three times.
9. Do you know that he has a famous collection of coins?
   He has collected them since his childhood.
10. I have a terrible headache because of that weather.
    It's been raining since yesterday.
11. Since she gave up smoking she has been gaining (putting on) weight all the time.
12. You've been speaking on the phone for half an hour already! Isn't it time to finish?
13. He has been looking for a job for the last few months, but he hasn't found anything so far. • It isn't easy now.
14. I've been reading for three hours already. The book is extremely exciting.
    • And how much have you read yet?
15. She has made great progress since she began to work here.
16. Has Kate come yet?
    • No, she hasn't. I've been waiting for her since 5 o'clock.
17. How long have you been studying this problem?
18. She has avoided meeting him since they quarrelled.
19. It's the tenth sweet the child has eaten today.
20. Where have you been? Somebody has been calling you all day!

The Present Perfect Tense — The Past Indefinite Tense

REMEMBER

The Present Perfect (Continuous) Tense is never used in the following cases:

1. with indications of the past time {*yesterday*, *last night*, *the other day*, *just now*, *a week ago*, *in 1970*, etc.).
2. in *when-questions*.
3. when you speak about *the origin of something present*.
4. when *the indication of the past time is implied*.

Exercise 32

Put the verbs into **Present Perfect** or **Past Indefinite**.

1. He … (to take) a train to London at eight o'clock this morning.
2. I … (to star) in many amateur performances when I was at school.
3. How many times … (you, to be) in love?
4. I … (never, to enjoy) a party as much as this one.
5. She … (to have) several interesting jobs since she … (to graduate) from the University.
6. I … (to have) a headache all day yesterday.
7. I … (not, to see) his latest film. They say it's a great success.
8. You … (to be) a charming baby. Everybody … (to envy) your mother.

The Present Perfect Tense — The Past Indefinite Tense

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

Present Perfect (Continuous) Tense никогда не употребляется в следующих случаях:

1. We **were** at the theatre *last night*. We first **met** *a year ago*. She **phoned** me *the other day*. He **gave** a party *last week*.
2. *When* **did** you **speak** to them last? *When* **did** she **go** there?
3. Who **wrote** this book? **Did** you **put** it here?
4. He has passed his History exam. • What mark **did** he **get**? (= **What mark did he get** *at the exam*?)
   Do you know who I **met** in Tverskaya? (= Do you know **who I met** *when I was in Tverskaya*?)

Упражнение 32

Поставьте глаголы в **Present Perfect** или **Past Indefinite**.

1. He took a train to London at eight o'clock this morning.
2. I starred in many amateur performances when I was at school.
3. How many times have you been in love?
4. I've never enjoyed a party as much as this one.
5. She has had several interesting jobs since she graduated from the University.
6. I had a headache all day yesterday.
7. I haven't seen his latest film.
8. You were a charming baby. Everybody envied your mother.

9. … (you, to enjoy) your holiday this year?
10. She … (to do) her nails before breakfast this morning.
11. I … (to buy) a new blouse the other day, but I … (not, to wear) it yet.
12. I … (not, to see) Pete today, but I … (to speak) to him on the phone only yesterday.
13. As far as I know Mrs. Collins … (to work) in that firm for three years from 1990 till 1993.
14. My sister … (to lose) all the keys to the front door and we … (to have to) break the door.
15. I … (never, to meet) my Granny. She … (to die) many years ago.
16. … (you, to be) to the opera lately?
    • Yes, I … (to go) to listen to Traviata on Saturday.
17. Cervantes … (to write) “Don Quixote”.
18. Mr. Greene … (to work) as an assistant manager for twenty years. Then he … (to retire) and … (to go) to live in the country.
19. … (you, to feed) the dog? • Yes, I … (to feed) him before lunch.
    • What … (you, to give) him? • I … (to give) him some meat.
20. How long … (you, to have) that horrible scar?
    • I … (to get) it in a car accident a year ago.
21. I … (just, to start) a new job.
    • How … (you, to find) it? • I … (to answer) an advertisement in the paper.
22. I … (to phone) you twice yesterday. Where … (you, to be)?
23. My friend … (to begin) to learn English at secondary school and … (to do) it for three years. Then she … (to drop) it for a year and … (to forget) most of it. Then she … (to spend) two years at a secretarial college, where she … (to study) commercial English, and for the last six months she … (to study) in London.
24. Where else … (you, to be) since you … (to come) to England?
    • I … (to be) to Stratford, Coventry and Oxford.
    • Oh, you … (to see) a lot. When … (you, to go) to Stratford?
    • I … (to go) there last week. The family I’m staying with … (to take) me.
25. We … (to buy) a new flat last month but we … (not, to sell) our old one yet.
26. I … (to work) practically every Saturday since the beginning of the month.

9. Did you enjoy your holiday this year?
10. She did her nails before breakfast this morning.
11. I bought a new blouse the other day, but I haven’t worn it yet.
12. I haven’t seen Pete today, but I spoke to him on the phone only yesterday.
13. As far as I know Mrs. Collins worked in that firm for three years from 1990 till 1993.
14. My sister lost all the keys to the front door and we had to break the door.
15. I never met my Granny. She died many years ago.
16. Have you been to the opera lately?
    • Yes, I went to listen to Traviata on Saturday.
17. Cervantes wrote Don Quixote.
18. Mr. Greene worked as an assistant manager for twenty years. Then he retired and went to live in the country.
19. Have you fed the dog? • Yes, I fed him before lunch.
    • What did you give him? • I gave him some meat.
20. How long have you had that horrible scar?
    • I got it in a car accident a year ago.
21. I’ve just started a new job.
    • How did you find it? • I answered an advertisement in the paper.
22. I phoned you twice yesterday. Where were you?
23. My friend began to learn English at secondary school and did it for three years. Then she dropped it for a year and forgot most of it. Then she spent two years at a secretarial college, where she studied commercial English, and for the last six months she has been studying in London.
24. Where else have you been since you came to England?
    • I’ve been to Stratford, Coventry and Oxford.
    • Oh, you’ve seen a lot. When did you go to Stratford?
    • I went there last week. The family I’m staying with took me.
25. We bought a new flat last month but we haven’t sold our old one yet.
26. I have worked practically every Saturday since the beginning of the month.

27. How long … (your neighbour, to live) here?
• He … (to live) here all his life. He … (to inherit) the house from his father.
28. How long … (you, to work) for this company?
• I … (to work) for it for two years. • … (you, to like) working there?
• No, I … (not, to like) it at all. • Then why … (you, to stay) so long?
29. I … (just, to have) my first class at the University.
• How … (it, to go)? … (you, to enjoy) it?
30. I … (not, to see) you at the bus stop this morning. … (you, to miss) the bus?
• No, I … (not, to miss) a bus for years. But this morning my friend …
(to give) me a lift.

Exercise 33

Find mistakes and correct them.

MODEL: Where have you first met?
She's been asleep since 11 o'clock.

1. The last bus left for a few minutes.
2. Since when do you know him?
3. Janet has visited Chicago twice.
4. This morning the sun has risen at 5 o'clock.
5. Who did you see there?
6. How long ago did World War II begin?
7. I have already been in New York.
8. It's two months since I've started dieting.
9. I've spoken to him just now.
10. My father has been working for that company for 5 years.
Then he gave it up.
11. We have no trouble so far.
12. Yesterday I worked on my computer for four hours.
13. I lived in Geneva for eight years and now I miss it a lot.
14. She is a woman who lived a remarkable life.
15. I haven't phoned him since the last month.
16. This is the first time he has drunk so much.
17. Have you heard from Alice lately?
18. I'm glad you've been born.

27. How long has your neighbour lived here?
• He has lived here all his life. He inherited the house from his father.
28. How long did you work for this company?
• I worked for it for two years. • Did you like working there?
• No, I didn't like it at all. • Then why did you stay so long?
29. I've just had my first class at the University.
• How did it go? Did you enjoy it?
30. I didn't see you at the bus stop this morning. Did you miss the bus?
• No, I haven't missed a bus for years. But this morning my friend
gave me a lift.

Упражнение 33

Найдите и исправьте ошибки.

WRONG — Where did you first meet?
RIGHT

1. WRONG — The last bus left a few minutes ago.
2. WRONG — Since when have you known him?
3. RIGHT
4. WRONG — This morning the sun rose at five o'clock.
5. RIGHT
6. RIGHT
7. WRONG — I have already been to New York.
8. WRONG — It's two months since I started dieting.
9. WRONG — I spoke to him just now.
10. WRONG — My father worked for that company for five years.
11. WRONG — We've had no trouble so far.
12. RIGHT
13. RIGHT
14. WRONG — She is a woman who has lived a remarkable life.
15. WRONG — I haven't phoned him for the last month.
16. RIGHT
17. RIGHT
18. WRONG — I'm glad you were born.

19. There's been an accident. • Have you seen what has happened?
20. She used to be afraid of dogs.
21. Who has given you this beautiful vase?
22. Have you seen their garden?
    • I saw the house on Monday but I haven't seen the garden.
23. I've bought this in Oxford Street.
24. How many cups of tea have you drunk today?
25. I spent a month in hospital last year.
26. The Chinese invented silk.
27. Have you heard the thunder?
28. I've been to the dentist. • Has he taken out your bad tooth?
29. We met quite by chance the other day.
30. Be careful! This wire is dangerous.
    • Nonsense! I've just touched it and I haven't felt anything.

Exercise 34

Use the correct form of the verbs: **Present Perfect** or **Past Indefinite**.

The Olympic Games

The original Olympic Games … (**to begin**) around 800 BC in Ancient Greece, and … (**to continue**) until they … (**to be**) abolished by the Roman Emperor Theodosius in AD 393. The first modern Olympics … (**to take place**) in Athens in 1896, and since then, more than a dozen different countries … (**to stage**) the Summer Olympics. The cities of Athens, Paris, London, Berlin and Los Angeles … (**to stage**) the Olympics twice.

In 1956, Australia … (**to become**) the first country outside Europe and America to stage the Olympics, while Mexico … (**to be**) the first Latin American country to stage the Olympics, in 1968.

Many of the greatest athletes in the world … (**to take part**) in the Olympic Games, but no one … (**to equal**) the achievements of the great Finnish athlete, Paavo Nurmi, who between 1920 and 1928 … (**to win**) nine gold and three silver medals.

19. WRONG — Did you see what happened?
20. RIGHT
21. WRONG — Who gave you this beautiful vase?
22. WRONG — I saw the house on Monday but I didn't see the garden.
23. WRONG — I bought this in Oxford Street.
24. RIGHT
25. RIGHT
26. RIGHT
27. WRONG — Did you hear the thunder?
28. WRONG — Did he take out your bad tooth?
29. RIGHT
30. WRONG — I've just touched it and I didn't feel anything.

Упражнение 34

Употребите правильную форму глаголов: **Present Perfect** или **Past Indefinite**.

The Olympic Games

The original Olympic Games began around 800 BC in Ancient Greece, and continued until they were abolished by the Roman Emperor Theodosius in AD 393. The first modern Olympics took place in Athens in 1896, and since then, more than a dozen different countries have staged the Summer Olympics. The cities of Athens, Paris, London, Berlin and Los Angeles have staged the Olympics twice.

In 1956, Australia became the first country outside Europe and America to stage the Olympics, while Mexico was the first Latin American country to stage the Olympics, in 1968.

Many of the greatest athletes in the world have taken part in the Olympic Games, but no one has equalled the achievements of the great Finnish athlete, Paavo Nurmi, who between 1920 and 1928 won nine gold and three silver medals.

The Olympic Games … (**to see**) many tragedies and triumphs. For example, in the marathon of 1908, the little Italian, Dorando Pietri … (**to collapse**) five times in the last part of the race, but … (to come) first — only to be disqualified because spectators … (**to help**) him over the finishing line. And in 1936, the famous black American athlete Jesse Owens … (**to break**) six world records in a single day!

From the first modern Olympics in Athens, when only fourteen countries … (**to participate**), the Olympics … (**to grow**) to include over 140 countries. Gold, silver and bronze medals … (**to go**) to over 8,000 men and women.

Exercise 35

Translate into English.

1. Мистер Шелдон проработал в нашей школе 6 лет. Он работает здесь с тех пор, как окончил университет.
2. А мистер Чандлер проработал в нашей школе 6 лет и ушел работать в другую.
3. Мы опоздали на поезд, и нам пришлось ждать следующего.
4. Я давно пришла. Я здесь с 10 часов.
5. Я его только что видела. Он недавно вернулся.
6. Извините, я не слышала вашего вопроса.
7. Дождь прекратился. Мы можем идти гулять.
8. Это самая смешная комедия, которую я когда-либо видела.
9. Я очень занят в последнее время. На этой неделе у меня едва было время, чтобы просмотреть газету.
10. Я давно с ней познакомилась, и с тех пор мы близкие друзья.
11. Как давно вы были в Петербурге?
12. Извините, я немного опоздала. Как долго длится собрание?
13. Мы тоже еще не переехали на новую квартиру.
14. Я давно об этом узнал.
15. На днях я забыла дома деньги и не могла ничего купить.
16. Моя сестра сдала вступительные экзамены.
    • Сколько экзаменов ей пришлось сдавать?
17. Том уже пришел домой? • Да, он пришел в 9 и сразу пошел спать. Он выглядел очень уставшим.

The Olympic Games have seen many tragedies and triumphs. For example, in the marathon of 1908, the little Italian, Dorando Pietri collapsed five times in the last part of the race, but came first — only to be disqualified because spectators helped him over the finishing line. And in 1936, the famous black American athlete Jesse Owens broke six world records in a single day!

From the first modern Olympics in Athens, when only fourteen countries participated, the Olympics have grown to include over 140 countries. Gold, silver and bronze medals have gone to over 8,000 men and women.

Упражнение 35

Переведите на английский.

1. Mr. Sheldon has worked at our school for six years. He has been working here since he graduated from the University.
2. And Mr. Chandler worked at our school for six years and went to work at another one.
3. We missed the train and had to wait for the next one.
4. I came here long ago. I've been here since 10 o'clock.
5. I've just seen him. He returned not long ago.
6. I'm sorry, I didn't hear your question.
7. It has stopped raining. We can go for a walk.
8. This is the funniest comedy I've ever seen.
9. I've been very busy lately. I've hardly had time to look through a paper this week.
10. I got acquainted with her long ago and we've been great friends ever since.
11. How long ago (When) were you in Petersburg?
12. I'm sorry, I'm a little late. How long has the meeting lasted?
13. We haven't yet moved into our new flat either.
14. I learnt about it long ago.
15. I left my money at home the other day and couldn't buy anything.
16. My sister has passed her entrance exams. • How many exams did she have to take?
17. Has Tom come home yet? • Yes, he came at 9 and went to bed at once. He looked very tired.

18. Я не получала от нее известий уже 5 лет. Она уехала из Москвы в 1995 году.
19. Я много слышала об этом пианисте, но никогда не слышала, как он играет.
20. В этом журнале в последнее время много интересных статей.
21. Знаешь, я выбросила все его подарки. • Зачем ты это сделала?
22. Кто написал «Ярмарку тщеславия»?
23. Я видела ее всего один раз. Это было очень давно, поэтому я не помню, как она выглядит.
24. Где вы провели отпуск в этом году? • На море. Погода была замечательная, и мы прекрасно провели время.
25. Уже десять лет, как они развелись.
26. Что вы сказали?
27. Мы вместе работали раньше, и с тех пор мы в хороших отношениях.
28. Давно вы знаете вашего коллегу?
29. Он странно ведет себя со времени этого несчастного случая.
30. Я порезал палец. • Как это случилось?
31. Я опять потеряла зонтик. Я не помню, когда брала его последний раз.
32. Она весь день ходила по магазинам. Она истратила все деньги.
33. Они звонили всего один раз с тех пор, как уехали в отпуск.
34. Это уже пятая тарелка, которую она разбила за последние два дня.
35. Ты ходила в театр в этом месяце? • Да, на прошлой неделе я была в «Новой опере». Я получила большое удовольствие.

18. I haven't heard from her for five years already. She left Moscow in 1995.
19. I've heard a lot about this pianist, but I've never heard him playing.
20. There have been many interesting articles in this magazine lately.
21. You know, I've thrown away all his presents. • Why did you do it?
22. Who wrote "Vanity Fair"?
23. I've seen her only once. It was long ago that's why I don't remember what she looks like.
24. Where did you spend your vacation this year? • At the seaside. The weather was wonderful and we had a very good time.
25. It's ten years since they divorced.
26. What did you say?
27. We used to work together and we have been on good terms ever since.
28. Have you known your colleague long?
29. He has behaved in a strange way since that accident.
30. I've cut my finger. • How did it happen?
31. I've lost my umbrella again. I don't remember when I used it last.
32. She has been shopping all day. She has spent all her money.
33. They have phoned only once since they went away on holiday.
34. It's the fifth plate she has broken for the last two days.
35. Have you been to the theatre this month? • Yes, I was at the New Opera last week. I enjoyed myself greatly.

15.6 The Past Continuous Tense

FORMATION

auxiliary **be** in the Past Indefinite Tense + Participle I
was (were) + doing

MEANINGS

1. An action which was going on at a given moment (period of time) in the past. This moment (period of time) in the past can be shown by:
   a) an indication of time *(from 5 till 6 yesterday, at 3 o 'clock yesterday, all day,* etc.)
   b) another action in the past
   c) a context
2. "Emotional Continuous" implies a subjective, emotionally coloured tone — was (were) + *always (constantly)* + doing
3. A planned action in the near future viewed from the past

Exercise 36

Put the verbs in brackets into **Past Continuous**.

1. On coming up to the house I saw a man who … (to try) to climb through the window.
2. The children were frightened because it … (to get) dark.
3. What … (he, to wear) when you last saw him?
4. They … (to redecorate) the house, so it was all in a mess.
5. The nurse was alone with the baby at that time because Mr. Spencer … (to work) in the garden and Mrs. Spencer … (to shop).

15.6 The Past Continuous Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

Were you **sleeping** *when I called*? I **wasn't doing** anything special *at that time*. She **was walking** with her dog *when we met*.

ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

1. Действие, происходившее в определенный момент (период времени) в прошлом. Он может быть выражен:
   a) I **was doing** my homework *from three till six o 'clock yesterday*. I don't remember what I **was doing** *at nine last night*.
   b) I **was packing** my things *when he called*.
   c) *I met her yesterday*. **She was shopping**.
2. She **was** *constantly* **trying** to attract attention by all means.
3. I got a telegramme saying she **was returning** *on Saturday*.

Упражнение 36

Поставьте глаголы в скобках в **Past Continuous**.

1. I saw a man who was trying to climb through the window.
2. The children were frightened because it was getting dark.
3. What was he wearing when you last saw him?
4. They were redecorating the house, so it was all in a mess.
5. Mr. Spencer was working in the garden and Mrs. Spencer was shopping.

6. I wanted to speak to the captain of the ship which … (to leave) that evening for Portsmouth.
7. When I first met her she … (not, to work) yet. She … (to study) music.
8. There was a strange smell in the hall. Obviously our Vietnamese neighbours … (to cook) their national meal again.
9. He refused to go to the restaurant because he … (to diet).
10. What … (you, to do) when I rang the bell?
11. I watched the children for some time. Most of them … (to bathe), some boys … (to play) ball and all the others … (to run about).
12. We met quite by chance. I saw Gerald at a bus stop. He … (to wait) for a bus.
13. From the sounds next door it was clear that Mary and John … (quarrel) again.
14. I knocked and went in. James … (to read) in an armchair and Alice … (to sew) by the fire.
15. When I arrived the meeting was over. People … (to leave) the hall.
16. He … (always, to whisper) something. It was impossible to hear a word.
17. He got seriously injured when he … (to repair) the fireplace.
18. Just as I … (to think) what to do next, there was a knock at the door.
19. What … (you, to do) between one and two? I phoned you several times.
    • I … (to play) the piano and heard nothing.
20. While she … (to watch) the sunrise, the birds woke up and began to sing.

Exercise 37

Put the verbs in brackets into **Past Continuous** or **Past Indefinite**.

1. I … (not, to see) what he … (to do).
2. We … (to drive) home from the country when we … (to see) the accident.
3. It was very noisy in the room. I … (not, to hear) what he … (to say).

6. I wanted to speak to the captain of the ship which was leaving that evening for Portsmouth.
7. When I first met her she wasn't working yet. She was studying music.
8. Obviously our Vietnamese neighbours were cooking their national meal again.
9. He refused to go to the restaurant because he was dieting.
10. What were you doing when I rang the bell?
11. Most of them were bathing, some boys were playing ball and all the others were running about.
12. He was waiting for a bus.
13. It was clear that Mary and John were quarrelling again.
14. James was reading in an armchair and Alice was sewing by the fire.
15. People were leaving the hall.
16. He was always whispering something.
17. He got seriously injured when he was repairing the fireplace.
18. Just as I was thinking what to do next, there was a knock at the door.
19. What were you doing between one and two?
    • I was playing the piano and heard nothing.
20. While she was watching the sunrise, the birds woke up and began to sing.

Упражнение 37

Поставьте глаголы в скобках в **Past Continuous** или **Past Indefinite**.

1. I didn't see what he was doing.
2. We were driving home from the country when we saw the accident.
3. I didn't hear what he was saying.

4. We … (to walk) in silence for some time, then he … (to speak).
5. It … (to grow) dark, so we … (to return) inside the house.
6. The burglars … (to rob) the bank and … (to drive) away.
7. While Arthur … (to buy) tea, the train … (to leave).
8. She was extremely extravagant. She … (always, to buy) new clothes.
9. When I … (to arrive), Lucy … (already, to wait) for me. She … (to wear) a new hat and … (to look) very pretty.
10. I … (not, to mean) to hurt you. I … (just, to joke).
11. We … (just, to talk) about her when she suddenly … (to come) in.
12. They … (to quarrel) while they … (to try) to find a compromise.
13. I … (to wait) for him for twenty minutes yesterday.
14. This time yesterday I … (to water) vegetables in my garden. It suddenly … (to begin) to rain and I naturally … (to stop) working and … (to go) inside the house.
15. I … (to come) up to her to ask something and saw that she … (to cry).
16. Mary … (to carry) an umbrella as it … (to rain) heavily.
17. I … (to read) in bed last night when I … (to hear) a strange noise. Someone … (to try) to get into the house.
18. While I … (to swim) someone … (to steal) my clothes and I … (to walk) home in my bathing suit.
19. Why … (you, to wake) me up ? I … (to have) such a wonderful dream!
20. We suddenly … (to realize) that we … (to travel) in the wrong direction.

Exercise 38

A policeman is writing a report of the incidents near a football ground. Join the parts of the sentences using **Past Indefinite** or **Past Continuous**.

MODEL: Dell fans enter the ground.
A group of Lee fans arrive. (while)

1. Several of our men receive injuries.
   We try to keep the groups of fans apart. (while)
2. We hold our ground well.
   A group of Dell fans break through our lines. (until)

4. We walked in silence for some time, then he spoke.
5. It was growing dark, so we returned inside the house.
6. The burglars robbed the bank and drove away.
7. While Arthur was buying tea, the train left.
8. She was always buying new clothes.
9. When I arrived, Lucy was already waiting for me. She was wearing a new hat and was looking (looked) very pretty.
10. I didn't mean to hurt you. I was just joking.
11. We were just talking about her when she suddenly came in.
12. They quarrelled while they were trying to find a compromise.
13. I waited for him for twenty minutes yesterday.
14. This time yesterday I was watering vegetables in the garden. It suddenly began to rain and I naturally stopped working and went inside the house.
15. I came up to her to ask something and saw that she was crying.
16. Mary was carrying an umbrella as it was raining heavily.
17. I was reading in bed last night when I heard a strange noise. Someone was trying to get into the house.
18. While I was swimming someone stole my clothes and I walked home in my bathing suit.
19. Why did you wake me up? I was having such a wonderful dream!
20. We suddenly realized that we were travelling in the wrong direction.

Упражнение 38

Полицейский пишет отчет о происшествиях возле футбольного поля. Соедините части предложений, употребив **Past Indefinite** или **Past Continuous**.

While Dell fans were entering the ground, a group of Lee fans arrived.

1. While we were trying to keep the groups of fans apart, several of our men received injuries.
2. We held (were holding) our ground well until a group of Dell fans broke through our lines.

3. The two groups meet.
   Violent fighting breaks out. (when)
4. I try to arrest one hooligan.
   A brick strikes me on the head. (while)
5. Several shopkeepers complain to us.
   The fans cause a lot of damage. (because)
6. All this goes on outside.
   Fans throw stones inside the ground. (while)
7. The situation becomes serious. We radio for extra men. (so)
8. We wait for extra men.
   The situation becomes calm, (however, while)
9. The expected help arrives.
   The fans leave the ground. (when)

Exercise 39

Translate into English.

1. Когда она проснулась, солнце ярко светило.
2. Учительница объясняла правило, когда в класс вошел директор.
3. Она гуляла в саду и не знала, что происходит в доме.
4. Мы смеялись над чьей-то шуткой, когда она вошла. Она с минуту смотрела на нас, затем повернулась и вышла из комнаты.
5. Ему был нужен чемодан, так как он уезжал в командировку.
6. Когда мы ушли, они все еще обсуждали эту проблему.
7. Как тебе не стыдно? Почему ты не остановил их, когда они дрались?
8. Что ты делала в 4 часа? Я позвонил тебе, но никто не ответил.
   • Меня не было дома. Я готовилась к докладу в библиотеке.
9. Он проснулся из-за какого-то звука. Звонил телефон.

3. When the two groups met, violent fighting broke out.
4. While I was trying to arrest one hooligan, a brick struck me on the head.
5. Several shopkeepers complained to us because the fans were causing a lot of damage.
6. While all this was going on outside, fans were throwing stones inside the ground.
7. The situation was becoming (became) serious, so we radioed for extra men.
8. However, while we were waiting for extra men, the situation became calm.
9. When the expected help arrived, the fans were leaving the ground.

Упражнение 39

Переведите на английский.

1. When she woke up, the sun was shining brightly.
2. The teacher was explaining a rule when the principal entered the classroom.
3. She was walking in the garden and didn't know what was happening (going on) in the house.
4. We were laughing at somebody's joke when she came in. She looked at us for a minute, then turned round and left the room.
5. He needed a suitcase as he was going on a business trip.
6. When we left, they were still discussing that problem.
7. Shame on you! Why didn't you stop them when they were fighting?
8. What were you doing at 4 o'clock? I called you but nobody answered.
   • I was out. I was preparing for my report at the library.
9. He woke up because of some sound. The telephone was ringing.

10. Когда мы вернулись, ребенок уже спал.
11. Пока они обсуждали, что делать, я приготовила чай.
12. Вы ждали меня в 5 часов? • Конечно.
13. Я вчера чуть не опоздала на работу. Я ждала автобуса полчаса.
14. Дети тихонько открыли дверь и заглянули внутрь. Мама накрывала на стол, а папа раскладывал подарки под елкой.
15. У него было такое чувство, что за ним кто-то идет.
16. Она что-то кричала мне, но я ничего не слышал, потому что на вокзале, как обычно, было очень шумно.
17. Он внезапно потерял сознание, когда произносил речь.
18. Она все время над ним насмехалась. Бедный мальчик очень страдал.
19. Когда мы пришли на пляж, наши друзья уже были в воде: кто плавал, а кто нырял.
20. Я не слышал телефон: у меня работал пылесос.

10. When we returned, the child was already sleeping.
11. While they were discussing what to do, I made tea.
12. Were you waiting for me at 5 o’clock? • Of course, I was.
13. I was nearly late for work yesterday. I waited for the bus for half an hour.
14. The children opened the door quietly and peeped inside. Mum was laying the table and Dad was putting presents under the Christmas tree.
15. He had a feeling that somebody was following him.
16. She was crying something to me, but I didn’t hear anything as it was very noisy at the railway station as usual.
17. He suddenly fainted when he was making a speech.
18. She was constantly making fun of him. The poor boy was suffering greatly.
19. When we came to the beach, our friends were already in the water: some were swimming and others were diving.
20. I didn’t hear the telephone ring: my vacuum-cleaner was working.

15.7 The Past Perfect Tense

FORMATION

auxiliary **have** in The Past Indefinite Tense + Participle II

had + done

MEANINGS

1. An action accomplished before a given past moment.
   This moment can be shown by:
   a) an indication of time with preposition **by**;
   b) another past action;
   c) a context (when there is a step back in narration and the succession of actions is broken).

2. An action which began before a given past moment and continued into it or up to it (with verbs that don't have Continuous forms). Used with the same indications— *for*, *since*, *lately*, etc. — as The Present Perfect.

3. Used in the principal clause of a complex sentence with correlatives *hardly … when*, *scarcely … when*, *no sooner… than*, *nearly … when*.

15.7 The Past Perfect Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

I **had** already **done** my homework when my friend came.
I **hadn't done** my homework when my friend came.
Had you **done** your homework when he came?

ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

1. 1.Действие, совершившееся до определенного момента в прошлом. Этот момент может быть выражен:
   a) I **had finished** all the housework *by three o'clock*.
   b) The child **had fallen** asleep *before they came*. They **had covered** a long distance *when a car passed them*.
   c) He arrived at the hotel, unpacked his luggage and wanted to go for a walk, but he remembered that he **had promised** to call his wife.

2. Now she could do all the things she **had wanted** to do *for years*. He realized that she **had** really **loved** him *all her life*. He was ill. He **had had** a sore throat *since* he got caught in the rain.

3. He **had** *hardly* **entered** the room *when* somebody hit him. *Hardly* **had** he **entered** the room *when* somebody hit him. (не успел он…, как …)

Exercise 40

Pete is remembering the happiest moment of his life. Complete what he says, using the given information. Put the verbs into **Past Perfect**.

The happiest moment of my life was on top of a mountain in Wales last summer. I was happy for a lot of different reasons…

1. I climb a mountain.
2. The rope doesn't break.
3. My girlfriend agrees to marry me.
4. A letter comes with good news about my exams.
5. I spend a wonderful holiday in Wales.
6. My favourite team wins the football championship.

Exercise 41

Use the words in brackets to make up sentences with verbs in **Past Perfect**.

MODEL: She was terribly upset, (to quarrel, with her boyfriend)

1. He was very hungry. (not, to have time, to eat, during the whole day)
2. We were very glad to meet again, (not, to see each other, for several years)
3. Unfortunately I couldn't speak to him. (to leave, by the time, to come)
4. She was late for the lesson, (because, to miss, the bus)
5. I didn't recognize Mrs. Dale at once, (to change a lot, since, to meet, last)
6. He said he could go on holiday with us. (to pass exams, by, that time)
7. Nelly got a bad mark for the test, (not, to prepare for it, at all)
8. He had to return to the shop, (to forget, to buy bread)
9. I was not surprised at her behaviour, (to know her, for many years)
10. He was already very famous at the age of 30. (to make, an important discovery, by that time)

Упражнение 40

Пит вспоминает самый счастливый период своей жизни. Закончите его рассказ, используя данную информацию. Поставьте глаголы в **Past Perfect**.

1. I had climbed a mountain.
2. The rope hadn't broken.
3. My girlfriend had agreed to marry me.
4. A letter had come with good news about my exams.
5. I had spent a wonderful holiday in Wales.
6. My favourite team had won the football championship.

Упражнение 41

Составьте предложения из слов в скобках, употребляя глаголы в **Past Perfect**.

She had quarrelled with her boyfriend.

1. He hadn't had time to eat during the whole day.
2. We hadn't seen each other for several years.
3. He had left by the time I came.
4. She was late for the lesson because she had missed the bus.
5. She had changed a lot since we met last.
6. He had passed his exams by that time.
7. She hadn't prepared for it at all.
8. He had forgotten to buy bread.
9. I had known her for many years.
10. He had made an important discovery by that time.

Exercise 42

Put the verbs into **Past Perfect** or **Past Indefinite**.

1. He … (to keep) looking at her trying to remember where he … (to see) her before.
2. She … (to forget) into which book she … (to put) the money and … (to spend) hours to find it.
3. We … (to be) sorry we … (to be) rude to her.
4. Hardly … (I, to go) to bed when somebody … (to knock) at the door.
5. I … (to recognize) them at once though seven years … (to pass) since our last meeting.
6. I had to think over what he … (to tell) me.
7. She … (to refuse) to go to the party because she … (to be) very tired.
8. He … (to lose) the book he … (to borrow) from the library.
9. The police (never, to find) who … (to steal) the ring.
10. I … (not, to know) the time because I … (to have) no watch.
11. She … (no sooner, arrived) to stay with her aunt than she … (to fall) ill.
12. It … (to be) impossible for him to find a job after he … (to serve) a ten-year sentence.
13. When we … (to meet) his parents they … (already, to know) the news.
14. His words … (to seem) strange to us as he … (never, to lie) to us before.
15. I … (not, to know) how long she … (to be) in the room.
16. She … (to be) the most secretive person I … (ever, to meet).
17. She … (to live) alone. She … (to be) a widow for twenty years.
18. The friends … (to talk) about what they … (to achieve) since they … (to leave) school.
19. He … (to be) an American citizen for 10 years by the time the war … (to begin).
20. When they … (to buy) the farm, it … (to be) empty for many years. Nobody … (to live) there since the previous owner … (to commit) suicide.

Упражнение 42

Поставьте глаголы в **Past Perfect** или **Past Indefinite**.

1. He kept looking at her trying to remember where he had seen her before.
2. She forgot into which book she had put the money and spent hours to find it.
3. We were sorry we had been rude to her.
4. Hardly had I gone to bed when somebody knocked at the door.
5. I recognized them at once though seven years had passed since our last meeting.
6. I had to think over what he had told me.
7. She refused to go to the party because she was very tired.
8. He lost the book he had borrowed from the library.
9. The police never found who had stolen the ring.
10. I didn't know the time because I had no watch.
11. She had no sooner arrived to stay with her aunt than she fell ill.
12. It was impossible for him to find a job after he had served a ten-year sentence.
13. When we met his parents they already knew the news.
14. His words seemed strange to us as he had never lied to us before.
15. I didn't know how long she had been in the room.
16. She was the most secretive person I had ever met.
17. She lived alone. She had been a widow for twenty years.
18. The friends talked about what they had achieved since they left school.
19. He had been an American citizen for 10 years by the time the war began.
20. When they bought the farm, it had been empty for many years. Nobody had lived there since the previous owner committed suicide.

Exercise 43

REVISION

Choose the correct tense form of the verbs: **Past Indefinite**, **Past Continuous** or **Past Perfect**. Read the whole text first.

1. They … (**to buy**) blue writing paper and … (**to go**) round the corner to the office of the telephone company where Grace Brooks … (**to work**) as a night telephone operator. Grace … (**to be**) pretty though not very young. She … (**to begin**) working for the company many years ago, after she … (**to finish**) school. She … (**to remain**) unmarried all those years, and because she … (**to work**) at night and … (**to sleep**) in the daytime it … (**to be**) very difficult for her to find a husband.

At first, after Guy and Ralph … (**to explain**) to her what they … (**to want**) to do and … (**to ask**) her to write the letter to Ray, Grace … (**to refuse**) to do it…

She … (**to remember**) the time she … (**to get**) acquainted with Ray. He … (**to want**) to marry her. But she … (**just, to finish**) school then and … (**to start**) to work for the telephone company; she … (**to be**) very young then and … (**not, to want**) to marry anybody. Time … (**to pass**). During all those years she … (**to see**) him a few times but only a polite word … (**to pass**) between them, and each time he … (**to look**) sadder and sadder.

Finally she … (**to agree**) to write the letter for Guy and Ralph.

The next day Guy and Ralph … (**to be**) in the post-office at 4 o'clock. By that time there … (**to be**) a large crowd in the post office. When Ray … (**to come**) in and … (**to see**) a letter in his box, he … (**to look**) at it in surprise. He … (**to open**) the box, … (**to take**) out the blue envelope and … (**to go**) to the corner of the room to read it. When he … (**to finish**), he … (**to behave**) like mad. He … (**to smile**) happily and … (**to run**) out of the room before Guy and Ralph … (**to have**) time to say anything to stop him…

When Guy and Ralph … (**to run**) into the room where Grace … (**to work**), Ray … (**to stand**) near the girl with the widest and happiest smile they … (**ever, to see**) on his face. It … (**to be**) clear they … (**not, to speak**) a word yet…

Упражнение 43

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

Выберите правильную форму глаголов: **Past Indefinite**, **Past Continuous** или **Past Perfect**. Сначала прочитайте весь текст.

1. They bought blue writing paper and went round the corner to the office of the telephone company where Grace Brooks worked as a night telephone operator. Grace was pretty though not very young. She had begun working for the company many years before, after she had finished school. She had remained unmarried all those years, and because she worked at night and slept in the daytime it was very difficult for her to find a husband.

At first, after Guy and Ralph had explained to her what they wanted to do and had asked her to write a letter to Ray, Grace refused to do it…

She remembered the time she had got acquainted with Ray. He wanted to marry her. But she had just finished school then and had started to work for the telephone company; she was very young then and didn't want to marry anybody. Time passed. During all those years she had seen him a few times but only a polite word had passed between them, and each time he looked sadder and sadder.

Finally she agreed to write the letter for Guy and Ralph.

The next day Guy and Ralph were in the post-office at 4 o'clock. By that time there was a large crowd in the post-office. When Ray came in and saw a letter in his box, he looked at it in surprise. He opened the box, took out the blue envelope and went to the corner of the room to read it. When he finished, he behaved like mad. He smiled happily and ran out of the room before Guy and Ralph had time to say anything to stop him…

When Guy and Ralph ran into the room where Grace worked, Ray was standing near the girl with the widest and happiest smile they had ever seen on his face. It was clear they hadn't spoken a word yet…

From E. Caldwell "Letters in the Mail"

2. I … (**not, to care**) much for Aubrey, or for his young woman, but I … (**have to**) admit that they … (**to know**) their job when I … (**to come**) to the opening of the exhibition a few months later. They … (**to gather**) in treasures of every sort from all over the country and … (**to arrange**) them admirably. The jewel of the show … (**to be**), of course, the great Titian. It … (**to have**) a wall to itself at the end of the room and I … (**to look**) at it when Deborah … (**to come**) in.

The likeness … (**to be**) fantastic. Lord Warbeck … (**never, to have**) his paintings cleaned, so that Titian's flesh tints … (**to be**) golden and carmine, in vivid contrast to Deborah's pink and white…. By a happy chance she … (**to choose**) to wear a very plain black dress which … (**to match**) up well to the portrait's dark clothes. She … (to stand) there still and silent, staring at her centuries-old likeness. I … (**to wonder**) what she … (**to feel**).

A pressman's camera … (**to flash**) and … (**to click**). First one visitor and then another … (**to notice**) the resemblance and presently the rest of the gallery was deserted. Everyone … (**to crowd**) round the Titian to stare from the painted face to the real one and back again. … People … (**to move**) to get a good view of her profile, without losing sight of the Titian, which fortunately … (**to be**) in profile too. It must have been horribly embarrassing for Deborah, but she … (**never, to seem**) to notice them. She … (**to go**) on peering into the picture for a very long time. Then she … (**to turn**) round and … (to walk) quickly out of the building. As she … (**to pass**) me I saw that she … (**to cry**) — a surprising display of emotion in one so calm.

About ten minutes later Aubrey … (**to discover**) that a pair of Degas statuettes … (**to miss**) from the stand opposite the Titian. … There … (**to be**) a considerable fuss but nothing was found. I … (**to leave**) as soon as I could and … (**to go**) to the Franklins…

Exercise 44

Translate into English.

1. Как только учительница вошла в класс, она увидела, что кто-то из учеников нарисовал ее на доске.
2. Когда мы приехали на курорт, мы прежде всего пошли к морю.

2. I didn't care much for Aubrey, or for his young woman, but I had to admit that they knew their job when I came to the opening of the exhibition a few months later. They had gathered in treasures of every sort from all over the country and arranged them admirably. The jewel of the show was, of course, the great Titian. It had a wall to itself at the end of the room and I was looking at it when Deborah came in.

The likeness was fantastic. Lord Warbeck had never had his paintings cleaned, so that Titian's flesh tints were golden and carmine, in vivid contrast to Deborah's pink and white… By a happy chance she had chosen to wear a very plain black dress which matched up well to the portrait's dark clothes. She stood there still and silent, staring at her centuries-old likeness. I wondered what she felt.

A pressman's camera flashed and clicked. First one visitor and then another noticed the resemblance and presently the rest of the gallery was deserted. Everyone was crowding (had crowed) round the Titian to stare from the painted face to the real one and back again. … People were moving to get a good view of her profile, without losing sight of the Titian, which fortunately was in profile too. It must have been horribly embarrassing for Deborah, but she never seemed to notice them. She went on peering into the picture for a very long time. Then she turned round and walked quickly out of the building. As she passed me I saw that she was crying — a surprising display of emotion in one so calm.

About ten minutes later Aubrey discovered that a pair of Degas statuettes were missing from the stand opposite the Titian. … There was a considerable fuss but nothing was found. I left as soon as I could and went to the Franklins…

From C. Hare "Fair of Face"

Упражнение 44

Переведите на английский.

1. As soon as the teacher entered the classroom, she saw that some of the pupils had drawn her on the blackboard.
2. When we arrived at the resort, we first of all went to the sea.

3. В доме было тихо, так как дети уснули.
4. Когда я проснулся, завтрак уже был готов.
5. Не успел я оглянуться, как человек исчез.
6. Когда он вышел из университета, уже стемнело. Собирался дождь.
7. Дети сделали уроки и играли в саду.
8. Я видел много репродукций этой картины прежде, чем увидел оригинал. Я нашел в нем много деталей, которых не замечал в репродукциях.
9. Я посмотрел на нее с ужасом. Это была уже пятая сигарета, которую она выкурила за последний час.
10. Хотя выглянуло солнце, дождь все еще шел.
11. Едва он прикоснулся к подушке, как сразу уснул.
12. Он был очень рассержен, так как Ник опаздывал уже на полчаса. Он подождал еще 10 минут и ушел.
13. По их поведению было видно, что они женаты много лет.
14. Это была вечеринка бывших одноклассников. Гости рассказывали, что с ними случилось с тех пор, как они закончили учиться. Многие из них не видели друг друга все это время.
15. К тому времени, когда приехала скорая помощь, он скончался. Он потерял много крови.
16. Мы все приготовили задолго до того, как они приехали.
17. К 8 часам дождь прекратился, и мы пошли гулять.
18. Дождь уже прекратился. Все шли без зонтов.
19. Когда я вернулась, гости уже танцевали.
20. Когда я вернулась, гости уже пообедали и теперь танцевали.

3. It was quiet in the house as the children had fallen asleep.
4. When I woke up, breakfast was already ready.
5. I had hardly turned around when the man disappeared.
   (Hardly had I turned around…)
6. When he went out of the University, it had already got dark.
   It was going to rain.
7. The children had done their homework and were playing in the garden.
8. I had seen many copies of that picture before I saw the original.
   I found many details in it which I hadn't noticed in the copies.
9. I looked at her in horror. It was the fifth cigarette she had smoked for the last hour.
10. Though the sun had come out, it was still raining.
11. No sooner had he touched the pillow than he fell asleep.
    (He had no sooner touched the pillow than he fell asleep.)
12. He was very angry as Nick was already half an hour late.
    He waited ten minutes more and left.
13. It was clear from their behaviour that they had been married for many years.
14. It was a party of former classmates. The guests were telling each other what had happened to them since they finished their studies. Many of them hadn't seen each other all that time.
15. By the time the ambulance came he was dead. He had lost a lot of blood.
16. We had prepared everything a long time before they came.
17. It had stopped raining by 8 o'clock and we went for a walk.
18. It had already stopped raining. Everybody was walking without their umbrellas.
19. When I returned, the guests were already dancing.
20. When I returned, the guests had already had dinner and were dancing.

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

FORMATION

auxiliary be in The Past Perfect Tense + Participle I
had been + doing

MEANINGS

1. An action which began before a given past moment and continued into it or up to it (except the verbs that have no Continuous forms). Used with the same indications — lately, since, for, etc. — as The Present Perfect Continuous.
2. An action which was in progress just before a given past moment and it affects the past situation in some way.

Exercise 45

Make up sentences. Use **Past Perfect Continuous**.

MODEL: She suffered from that disease for many years.
The doctors cured her. (before)

1. They experimented for a year. They achieved some promising results. (before)
2. They walked two hours. They saw a lake. (when)
3. She walked in the garden all afternoon. She was tired. (because)
4. I suddenly recognized the man. He watched my window for some time. (who)
5. She had a pain in her back. She carried heavy bags again. (because)
6. They stayed at that hotel for a fortnight. They got a letter. (when)

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

It turned out she **had been studying** English *for only a few months*. (*Как правило, не употребляется в отрицательных предложениях.*)

ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

1. She suddenly realized that she **had been walking** *for a long time*. He felt tired as he **had been studying** *since morning*.
2. He *had a black eye*. He **had been fighting**.

Упражнение 45

Составьте предложения. Употребите **Past Perfect Continuous**.

She had been suffering from that disease for many years before the doctors cured her.

1. They had been experimenting for a year before they achieved some promising results.
2. They had been walking for two hours when they saw a lake.
3. She was tired because she had been walking in the garden all afternoon.
4. I suddenly recognized the man who had been watching my window for some time.
5. She had a pain in her back because she had been carrying heavy bags again.
6. They had been staying at that hotel for a fortnight when they got a letter.

7. She saved money for a year. She bought a new car. (before)
8. She waited for Jim for a long time. She was angry. (as)
9. The policeman investigated that case. He was found dead. (who)
10. Tom repaired his car for some time. It started raining. (when)

Exercise 46

Use the correct form of the verbs (positive, negative or interrogative) of **Past Perfect** or **Past Perfect Continuous**.

Wendy is telling Jo about some of the difficulties she had on her wedding day.

Wendy: Well, first of all, I couldn't get my wedding dress to fit.
The dressmaker … (**to make**) a mistake in the measurements.

Jo: … (**you, not, to try**) it on in the dressmaker's before that?

Wendy: I … (**to have**) a first fitting two weeks before, but I … (**not, to try**) on the final version. There … (**not, to be**) time. I … (**to make**) so many other arrangements for the wedding. Anyway, after my sister … (**to alter**) the dress with her sewing machine, Dave phoned to say he couldn't go ahead with the wedding. He said he wasn't well. He … (**to be**) sick that morning.

Jo: … (**he, to celebrate**) the night before?

Wendy: Oh yes. He … (**to have**) a good time with some of the men from his office. And I suppose with all the excitement he … (**not, to sleep**) well. But I thought he had other reasons. Anyway, I was so angry … I … (**almost, to decide**) to call the whole thing off when he phoned again. He … (**to talk**) to his father … .

Jo: … (**his father, to give**) him a few words of fatherly advice?

Wendy: Yes, I suppose that was it. Anyway, he … (**to calm down**), and wanted to go ahead. And we did. And we've been happy ever since.

7. She had been saving money for a year before she bought a new car.
8. She was angry as she had been waiting for Jim for a long time.
9. The policeman who had been investigating that case was found dead.
10. Tom had been repairing his car for some time when it started raining.

Упражнение 46

Употребите правильную форму глаголов (утвердительную, отрицательную или вопросительную) в **Past Perfect** или **Past Perfect Continuous**.

The dressmaker had made a mistake in the measurements.

Hadn't you tried it on in the dressmaker's before that?

I had had a first fitting two weeks before, but I hadn't tried on the final version. There hadn't been time. I had been making so many other arrangements for the wedding. Anyway, after my sister had altered the dress with her sewing machine, Dave phoned. He had been sick that morning.

Had he been celebrating the night before?

He had been having a good time with some of the men from his office. And I suppose with all the excitement he hadn't slept well.

I had almost decided to call the whole thing off when he phoned again.

He had been talking to his father.

Had his father given (been giving) him a few words of fatherly advice?

Anyway, he had calmed down, and wanted to go ahead.

Exercise 47

REVISION

Use the correct form of the verbs: **Past Indefinite**, **Past Continuous**, **Past Perfect** or **Past Perfect Continuous**. Read the whole text first.

1. They … (**to talk**) for a long time. But while he … (**to speak**) a very extraordinary thing … (**to happen**). Though he … (**to address**) the skipper, he … (**not, to talk**) to him, he … (**to put**) his thoughts into words for himself, and with his eyes on the man in front of him he … (**not, to see**) him. But now an image … (**to present**) itself to him, an image not of the man he … (**to see**), but of another man. It … (**to be**) as though he were looking into one of those distorting mirrors that make you extraordinarily squat or outrageously elongate, but here exactly the opposite … (**to take place**), and in the obese ugly old man he … (**to catch**) the shadowy glimpse of a stripling. He … (**to give**) him now a quick, searching scrutiny. Why a haphazard stroll … (**to bring**) him just to this place? A sudden tremor of his heart … (**to make**) him slightly breathless. An absurd suspicion … (**to seize**) him. What … (**to occur**) to him … (**to be**) impossible, and yet it might be a fact.

Neilson … (**to give**) a gasp for at that moment a woman … (**to come**) in… The moment … (**to come**) … . She … (**to give**) the man who … (**to sit**) in the chair by the window an indifferent glance and … (**to go**) out of the room. The moment … (**to come**) and … (**to go**).

2. Then suddenly he … (**to be**) afraid. He … (**not, to see**) Mabel for seven years. He … (**to forget**) what she … (**to look**) like. She … (**to be**) a total stranger. He … (**to feel**) a terrible sinking in his stomach, and his knees … (**to begin**) to shake. He … (**can't**) do it. He must tell Mabel that he … (**to be**) sorry, but he really … (**can't**) marry her. But how could a man tell a girl a thing like that when she … (to expect) to marry him for seven years and … (**to come**) six thousand miles to do it?

Упражнение 47

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

Употребите правильную форму глаголов: **Past Indefinite**, **Past Continuous**, **Past Perfect** или **Past Perfect Continuous**. Сначала прочтите весь текст.

1. They talked for a long time. But while he was speaking a very extraordinary thing happened. Though he had been addressing the skipper, he hadn't been talking to him, he had been putting his thoughts into words for himself, and with his eyes on the man in front of him he hadn't seen him. But now an image presented itself to him, an image not of the man he saw, but of another man. It was as though he were looking into one of those distorting mirrors that make you extraordinarily squat or outrageously elongate, but here exactly the opposite took place, and in the obese ugly old man he caught the shadowy glimpse of a stripling. He gave him now a quick, searching scrutiny. Why had a haphazard stroll brought him just to this place? A sudden tremor of his heart made him slightly breathless. An absurd suspicion seized him. What had occurred to him was impossible, and yet it might be a fact…

Neilson gave a gasp for at that moment a woman came in… The moment had come. … She gave the man who was sitting in the chair by the window an indifferent glance and went out of the room. The moment had come and gone.

From W.S. Maugham "Red"

2. Then suddenly he was afraid. He hadn't seen Mabel for seven years. He had forgotten what she looked like. She was a total stranger. He felt a terrible sinking in his stomach, and his knees began to shake. He couldn't do it. He must tell Mabel that he was sorry, but he really couldn't marry her. But how could a man tell a girl a thing like that when she had been expecting to marry him for seven years and had come six thousand miles to do it?

From W.S. Maugham "Mabel"

Exercise 48

Translate into English.

1. Когда я привела сына в эту школу, моя подруга работала там уже пять лет.
2. Он закончил работать только к полуночи.
3. Учитель объяснил правило трижды, прежде чем ученик его понял.
4. Они насквозь промокли из-за дождя. Мне было неудобно, что они так долго меня ждали.
5. Мы шли около часа, а потом увидели какую-то деревню.
6. В течение трех лет она была лучшей студенткой в группе.
7. Она отложила книгу, которую читала, и поднялась со стула, чтобы поздороваться со мной.
8. Книга, которую она читала, выглядела потрепанной.
9. Когда он вошел в комнату, она его не заметила. Она разговаривала с гостями.
10. Дети что-то оживленно обсуждали. Они побывали в цирке. / Они шли из цирка.
11. Пока она разговаривала по телефону, ребенок сел в коляске и начал играть в игрушки.
12. Девочка играла на пианино два часа, прежде чем мама разрешила ей отдохнуть.
13. Он выглядел усталым. У него был тяжелый день. Он много работал.
14. Она готовилась к экзаменам с сентября, то есть уже месяц, когда родители нашли ей преподавателя по французскому.
15. Они пригласили его на вечер, который устраивали в субботу.
16. Не успела она рассказать мужу о происшествии, как приехала полиция.
17. Она знала об этом уже несколько дней, но все еще не верила в это.
18. Он мучился от боли уже целую неделю, когда решил наконец пойти к врачу.
19. У нее было такое чувство, что он за ней наблюдает.

Упражнение 48

Переведите на английский.

1. When I brought my son to that school, my friend had been working there for five years already.
2. He had finished working only by midnight.
3. The teacher had explained the rule three times before the pupil understood it.
4. They were wet through because of the rain. I felt ill at ease because they had been waiting for me so much time.
5. We walked for an hour and then saw a village.
6. She was the best student in her group for three years.
7. She put aside the book she had been reading and rose from the chair to greet me.
8. The book she was reading looked shabby.
9. When he entered the room, she didn't notice him. She was talking to the guests.
10. The children were discussing something quite excitedly. They had been to the circus. / They were coming from the circus.
11. While she was talking on the phone, the baby sat up in the pram and began to play with his toys.
12. The girl had been playing the piano for two hours before her mother let her have a rest.
13. He looked tired. He had had a difficult day. He had been working hard.
14. She had been preparing for exams since September, that is for a month, when her parents found a French teacher for her.
15. They invited him to the party they were giving on Saturday.
16. She had hardly told her husband about the accident when the police arrived.
17. She had known about it for several days but still didn't believe in it.
18. He had been suffering from pain for a whole week when he finally decided to go to the doctor.
19. She had a feeling that he was watching her.

20. Вчера я наблюдал за детьми два часа. Они такие смешные!
21. Я наблюдал за ней минут двадцать, прежде чем она заметила.
22. Все рейсы были отменены, так как целый день шел сильный снег. Некоторые пассажиры сидели в аэропорту с раннего утра.
23. Бывало, он рисовал часами.
24. Прошло три года с тех пор, как мы последний раз разговаривали. Но нам казалось, что мы расстались только вчера.
25. Старушка жила в этой квартире со времен войны, но не хотела уезжать.
26. Когда он пришел, мы спорили.
27. Когда он пришел, мы спорили уже полчаса и очень сердились друг на друга.
28. Он вернулся очень поздно. Мама уже волновалась.
29. Он некоторое время внимательно смотрел на меня, прежде чем подошел и спросил, не встречались ли мы раньше.
30. Я не закончила статью к пятнице, хотя работала над ней с понедельника.

20. Yesterday I watched the children for two hours. They are so funny!
21. I had been watching her for about twenty minutes before she noticed.
22. All the flights were cancelled as it had been snowing hard the whole day. Some passengers had been sitting at the airport since early morning.
23. He used to paint for hours.
24. Three years had passed since we talked last. But it seemed to us that we had parted only the day before.
25. The old woman had lived in that flat since the war but didn't want to leave it.
26. We were arguing when he came.
27. When he came we had been arguing for half an hour already and were very angry with each other.
28. He returned very late. The mother was already worrying.
29. He had been looking at me attentively for some time before he came up and asked if we had met before.
30. I hadn't finished the article by Friday though I had been working at it since Monday.

15.8 The Future Continuous Tense

FORMATION

auxiliary **be** in The Future Indefinite Tense + Participle I
will/shall be + **doing**

MEANING

An action in progress at a definite future moment. This moment can be indicated by an adverbial modifier, another future action or a context. (Used with verbs that have Continuous forms.)

Exercise 49

Put the verbs into Future Continuous.

1. This time next month I'll be on holiday. I … (to sit) on a beach.
2. When we arrive in England, it … (probably, to rain).
3. I'll call her at eight. • Oh, don't, she … (still, to have) breakfast.
4. I'm glad I'll see you at the parade. • But I'm afraid, it won't be easy to recognize me. I … (to wear) a special uniform.
5. I'd like to see your new house so much! • You are welcome to come. But tomorrow it … (not, to look) its best, as the painters … (still, to work) on it.
6. We'd better go out tomorrow because Mary … (to prepare) for her concert all day.
7. It won't be easy for the burglars to get out of the country. The police … (to watch) all the railway stations.
8. What do you think the children … (to do) when we get home? • I suppose they … (to have) dinner.
9. We've reached the top of the hill just in time. The sun … (to rise) in a minute.
10. The plane … (to take off) in a few minutes. Fasten your seat belts, please.
11. You will surely recognize her. She … (to wear) her ridiculous green hat.

15.8 The Future Continuous Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

I'll be *still* **working** *this time tomorrow*. I **won't / shan't be working** *this time tomorrow*. **Will** you **be working** *this time tomorrow*?

ЗНАЧЕНИЕ

This time next month **I'll be skiing**.
When you come, **I'll be checking** my pupils' papers.
Good luck at your exam. We'**ll be thinking** of you.

Упражнение 49

Поставьте глаголы в **Future Continuous**.

1. I'll be sitting on a beach.
2. When we arrive in England, it will probably be raining.
3. She will be still having breakfast.
4. I'll be wearing a special uniform.
5. But tomorrow it won't be looking its best, as the painters will be still working on it.
6. Mary will be preparing for her concert all day.
7. The police will be watching all the railway stations.
8. What do you think the children will be doing when we get home? • I suppose they will be having dinner.
9. The sun will be rising in a minute.
10. The plane will be taking off in a few minutes.
11. She'll be wearing her ridiculous green hat.

12. … (your friend, to wait) for you at 4 o'clock?
13. She'll be very busy at 8. She … (to put) the children to bed.
14. Do you think that someone will be in when you get home?
    • Of course. My dog … (to wait) for me at the door.
15. It's a moving spectacle. I'm sure you'll enjoy it. Tiny colourful lanterns … (to drift) all over the lake.

Exercise 50

Use the correct form of the verb: **Future Continuous** or **Future Indefinite.**

1. I've arranged to play tennis with James at nine tonight. • But you … (to play) in dark. You … (not, to see) the ball.
2. I … (to call) you tomorrow at six. • Oh, call later if you don't mind. I … (to bathe) the baby then.
3. Oh, he has just gone out. • Never mind. I … (to wait).
4. Why did you take his textbook? He … (to look) for it everywhere tomorrow.
5. But you can't go to a fancy dress party in a dinner jacket! • Why not? • Because everyone … (to wear) a fancy dress.
6. You … (to have) something to eat, won't you?
7. Wages have risen, so I suppose prices … (to go up) too.
8. This cup is dirty. • I'm sorry, I … (to bring) you another one.
9. We … (not, to play) cards at the party tonight, our hostess forbids us.
10. Loudspeaker: The ship … (to leave) in a few minutes, so all people not travelling are asked to go ashore.
11. I … (not, to take) any photos for some time because there is something wrong with my camera. I must have it repaired.
12. I … (not, to borrow) his car again. I don't like the way it runs.
13. The election campaign … (to be) the main topic of this TV show. The party leaders … (to speak) about their programmes.
14. … (you, to use) your dictionary this afternoon? • No, you can borrow it if you like. • Thanks a lot. I … (to return) it in the evening.
15. You … (to see) lots of beautiful places while driving there. • I'm afraid I … (not, to have) the chance to enjoy the views. I … (to map-read).

12. Will your friend be waiting for you at four o'clock?
13. She'll be putting the children to bed.
14. My dog will be waiting for me at the door.
15. Tiny colourful lanterns will be drifting all over the lake.

Упражнение 50

Употребите правильную форму глаголов: **Future Continuous** или **Future Indefinite.**

1. But you'll be playing in the dark. You won't see the ball.
2. I'll call you tomorrow at six. • I'll be bathing the baby then.
3. I'll wait.
4. He'll be looking for it everywhere tomorrow.
5. Because everyone will be wearing a fancy dress.
6. You'll have something to eat, won't you?
7. Wages have risen, so I suppose prices will be going up/will go up too.
8. I'll bring you another one.
9. We won't be playing/won't play cards at the party tonight.
10. The ship will be leaving in a few minutes, so all people not travelling are asked to go ashore.
11. I will not be taking any photos for some time.
12. I won't borrow his car again.
13. The election campaign will be the main topic of this TV show. The party leaders will be speaking about their programmes.
14. Will you be using your dictionary this afternoon?
    • I'll return it in the evening.
15. You'll see lots of beautiful places while driving there. • I'm afraid, I won't have the chance to enjoy the views. I'll be map-reading.

15.9 The Future Perfect Tense

FORMATION

auxiliary **have** in The Future Indefinite Tense + Participle II

will/shall have + done

MEANINGS

1. An action accomplished before a given future moment. The moment can be indicated by an adverbial modifier or another future action.
2. An action which began before a future moment and will continue up to this moment or into it.

   If the verb has Continuous forms, **Future Perfect Continuous** is used in this meaning.

   auxiliary *be* in The Future Perfect Tense + Participle I

   will/shall have been + doing

Exercise 51

Put the verbs into **Future Perfect (Continuous)**.

1. By next spring they … (to build) four more houses in our street.
2. I've started saving money for a car. By this time next year I … (to save) $2,000.
3. You are too late. The train … (to leave) before you reach the station.
4. Next September I … (to study) English at this college for five years. But I'm not going to stop my studies.
5. If she goes on with this diet, she … (to lose) about 10 kilos by the end of the month.
6. He is studying at a very expensive college. By the time he leaves it, his parents … (to spend) $25,000 on his education.

15.9 The Future Perfect Tense

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

He **will have read** the book *by this time*. He **won't have read** the book *by this time*. **Will** he **have read** the book *by this time*?

ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

1. We **shall have made up** our minds how to vote *before the meeting*. I **will have finished** the task *by the time he comes*.

   We **shall have lived** in this flat *for 15 years by next winter*.

   Next autumn she **will have been teaching** *for twenty years*.

Упражнение 51

Поставьте глаголы в **Future Perfect (Continuous)**.

1. By next spring they will have built four more houses in our street.
2. By this time next year I will have saved $2,000.
3. The train will have left before you reach the station.
4. Next September I will have been studying English at this college for five years.
5. If she goes on with this diet, she will have lost about 10 kilos by the end of the month.
6. By the time he leaves it, his parents will have spent $25,000 on his education.

7. I have to read a lot of books for my classes in literature. By the end of the term I … (to read) twenty volumes.
8. On the tenth of next month this criminal … (to be) in prison for ten years.
9. When we reach this little town, we … (to cover) half of the distance.
10. By the end of next year I … (to work) for this company for 25 years.
11. I grow blackcurrants to make jam. By the end of the summer I … (to make) about 20 kilos.
12. When you come, I … (to finish) all the housework. We'll be able to go for a walk then.
13. Next month our families … (to be) neighbours for twenty-five years.
14. By this time I … (to finish) my studies and I … (to teach) for a year already.
15. On our next wedding anniversary we … (to be) married for twenty-five years. • Wow, that's a real date!

Exercise 52

Use the correct form of the verbs:
Future Perfect (Continuous) or **Future Continuous**.

1. I hope it … (to stop) snowing by tomorrow morning. Otherwise planes … (not, to take off).
2. Let's meet at the station at 3 o'clock. • O.K. I … (to wait) for you there.
3. Next year he … (to be) my roommate for two years.
4. President: By the end of the year neighbouring countries … (to marvel) at our progress, for they … (not, to equal) our success.
5. I wonder what they … (to do) at this time tomorrow.
6. In a few minutes' time the students … (to write) the composition for 2 hours.
7. By the time you move to this new district, the number of schools there … (to double).

7. By the end of the term I will have read twenty volumes.
8. On the tenth of next month this criminal will have been in prison for ten years.
9. When we reach this little town, we'll have covered half of the distance.
10. By the end of next year I shall have been working for this company for 25 years.
11. By the end of the summer I will have made about 20 kilos.
12. When you come, I will have finished all the housework.
13. Next month our families will have been neighbours for twenty-five years.
14. By this time I will have finished my studies and I will have been teaching for a year already.
15. On our next wedding anniversary we'll have been married for twenty-five years.

Упражнение 52

Употребите правильную форму глаголов:
Future Perfect (Continuous) или **Future Continuous**.

1. I hope it will have stopped snowing by tomorrow morning. Otherwise planes won't be taking off.
2. I'll be waiting for you there.
3. Next year he will have been my roommate for two years.
4. By the end of the year, neighbouring countries will be marvelling at our progress, for they will not have equalled our success.
5. I wonder what they will be doing at this time tomorrow.
6. In a few minutes' time the students will have been writing the composition for 2 hours.
7. By the time you move to this new district, the number of schools there will have doubled.

8. Don't worry. By the time you get home, we … (to prepare) everything for the party.
9. President: By the end of the year our factories … (to produce) all the goods we need. So we won't depend on any other countries.
10. I hope the telegramme … (come) before they start.
11. In ten minutes they … (to discuss) this question for three hours.
12. She … (to leave) for work before the children get home from school.
13. President: By the end of the year you … (enjoy) a better standard of living than at any time in our country's history!
14. By the end of the month 10,000 people … (to visit) this new museum.
15. Next year she … (to work) at this hospital for ten years.

Exercise 53

Translate into English.

1. Он говорит, что не сможет прийти завтра в 2 часа, так как будет давать урок в это время.
2. Я не знаю, вернется ли он к 31 декабря, но если он приедет, мы будем встречать Новый Год вместе.
3. Я уезжаю завтра вечером, поэтому завтра весь день я буду упаковывать вещи. К 7 я все упакую.
   • А во сколько отправляется поезд?
   ◆ В 9.
4. Когда он вернется, мы уже будем обедать.
5. Через неделю будет 2 года, как в нашем районе строят театр.
6. К концу недели мы закончим работу.
7. Я буду ждать тебя у входа в 7 часов.
8. Студенты сдадут все экзамены к концу июня.
9. Зимой исполнится 15 лет, как он работает в этом городе.
10. Приходите в 2 часа. К этому времени доктор осмотрит последнего пациента, и Вы сможете с ним поговорить.
11. Как изменится система образования к концу эксперимента?

8. By the time you get home we'll have prepared everything for the party.
9. By the end of the year our factories will be producing all the goods we need.
10. I hope the telegramme will have come before they start.
11. In ten minutes they will have been discussing this question for three hours.
12. She will have left for work before the children get home from school.
13. By the end of the year you'll be enjoying a better standard of living than at any time in our country's history!
14. By the end of the month 10,000 people will have visited this new museum.
15. Next year she will have been working at this hospital for ten years.

Упражнение 53

Переведите на английский.

1. He says he won't be able to come at two tomorrow as he will be giving a lesson at this time.
2. I don't know if he will have returned by the thirty-first of December, but if he comes, we'll be seeing the New Year in together.
3. I'm leaving tomorrow evening, so I'll be packing my things all day tomorrow. I will have packed everything by 7 o'clock.
   • And when does the train leave?
   ◆ (It leaves) at 9.
4. When he returns, we'll be already having dinner.
5. In a week they will have been building a theatre in our district for two years.
6. We'll have finished the work by the end of the week.
7. I'll be waiting for you at the entrance at 7 o'clock.
8. The students will have passed all their exams by the end of June.
9. In winter he will have been working in this town for 15 years.
10. Come at two o'clock. By this time the doctor will have examined the last patient and you'll be able to speak to him.
11. How will the system of education have changed by the end of the experiment?

12. Он еще не закончит работу к этому времени. Он все еще будет собирать необходимый материал.
13. Завтра будет уже неделя, как идет дождь! Это невыносимо!
14. К концу года в этом театре поставят третью новую пьесу.
15. Я еще не буду спать, когда ты вернешься.
16. Я надеюсь, что уже все приготовлю к тому времени, как придут гости.
17. Она напечатает документы к 8 часам?
18. Я не могу встретиться с Вами в это время. Я еще только буду ехать домой.
19. Завтра будет три года, как он пишет книгу.
    Через месяц он ее практически закончит.
20. Как я узнаю твою дочь?
    • Она довольно высокая, белокурая, с веснушками. На ней будет ярко-красный костюм.

12. He won't have finished the work by this time. He will be still collecting the necessary material.
13. Tomorrow it will have been raining for a week already! It's unbearable!
14. By the end of the year they will have staged the third new play at this theatre.
15. I won't be sleeping yet when you return.
16. I hope I will have prepared everything by the time the guests come.
17. Will she have typed the papers by 8 o'clock?
18. I can't meet you at this time. I'll still be travelling home.
19. Tomorrow he will have been writing his book for three years.
    In a month he will have practically finished it.
20. How will I recognize your daughter?
    • She is quite tall, fair, with freckles. She'll be wearing a bright red costume.

UNIT 16 REVISION

Exercise 1

TEST

1. … (you, to see) Barry Levinson's latest film?
   ❶ Have you seen ❷ Did you see ❸ Had you seen
2. My great-grandmother used to talk to me and my sister about everything that … (to happen) to her in her life.
   ❶ happened ❷ had happened ❸ had been happening
3. I … (to want) to be a dentist until I … (to be) twelve.
   ❶ had wanted … was ❷ wanted … had been ❸ wanted… was
4. She … (to be) ill before Christmas, but she … (to be) fine since then.
   ❶ had been … had been ❷ has been … has been
   ❸ was … is ❹ was … has been
5. I … (to spend) a fortnight in hospital last year.
   ❶ spent ❷ had spent ❸ was spending ❹ has spent
6. How many bars of chocolate … (you, to eat) today?
   ❶ did you eat ❷ have you been eating ❸ have you eaten
7. After dinner Mike … (to read) for two hours, then he … (to watch) TV, and then he … (to talk) on the phone for half an hour.
   ❶ read … watched … talked
   ❷ had been reading … watched … had been talking
   ❸ was reading … watched … was talking
8. We couldn't go out because it … (to rain) heavily since early morning.
   ❶ had rained ❷ has been raining
   ❸ had been raining ❹ was raining
9. I … (not, to fall) asleep yet when the telephone … (to ring).
   ❶ didn't fall … had rung ❷ wasn't falling … was ringing
   ❸ hadn't fallen … rang
10. What … (you, to do) yesterday from 6 till 9?
    ❶ were you doing ❷ did you do ❸ had you been doing
11. I … (not, to see) much of Mary lately.
    ❶ didn't see ❷ don't see ❸ haven't seen
12. He … (to own) this house since 1970.
    ❶ has been owning ❷ is owning ❸ owns ❹ has owned

УРОК 16 ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

Упражнение 1

ТЕСТ

1. ❶ Have you seen Barry Levinson's latest film?
2. ❷ My great-grandmother used to talk to me and my sister about everything that had happened to her in her life.
3. ❸ I wanted to be a dentist until I was twelve
4. ❹ She was ill before Christmas, but she has been fine since then
5. ❶ I spent a fortnight in hospital last year.
6. ❸ How many bars of chocolate have you eaten today
7. ❶ After dinner Mike read for two hours, then he watched TV, and then he talked on the phone for half an hour
8. ❸ We couldn't go out because it had been raining heavily since early morning.
9. ❸ I hadn't fallen asleep yet when the telephone rang.
10. ❶ What were you doing yesterday from 6 till 9?
11. 11. ❸ I haven't seen much of Mary lately.
12. ❹ He has owned this house since 1970.

13. She … (to lie) in the sun too long and got burnt.
❶ lied ❷ was lying ❸ had been lying ❹ lay ❺ laid

14. Would you let me have a copy of your book as soon as you … (to finish) it, please?
❶ will finish ❷ finish ❸ will have finished ❹ finished

15. The legend says that this old castle … (to stand) in the field for several centuries.
❶ has been standing ❷ has stood ❸ had stood ❹ stands

16. The group … (to work) carelessly the other day.
❶ worked ❷ was working ❸ has worked ❹ has been working

17. If it … (to rain) again, we'll have to return.
❶ rain ❷ rains ❸ will rain

18. He used … (to work) in a bank.
❶ work ❷ working ❸ to work ❹ to working

19. Why … (you, to return) so early?
❶ did you return ❷ have you returned ❸ had you returned

20. It … (to be) already dark and it … (to rain).
❶ was … rained ❷ had been … had been raining ❸ was … was raining

21. The family … (to sit) already at table when she … (to come) in to dinner.
❶ had already sat … came ❷ was sitting … came ❸ sat … came

22. I … (not, to see) your brother for ages.
❶ haven't been seeing ❷ haven't seen ❸ didn't see

23. This is the first time I … (to read) this beautiful poem.
❶ am reading ❷ have been reading ❸ have read ❹ read

24. We … (to stay) with the Robins for two days and returned home.
❶ had stayed ❷ have stayed ❸ stayed ❹ were staying

25. … (you, to hear) the news last night?
❶ Have you heard ❷ Did you hear ❸ Were you hearing

26. When I … (to be) at school, we … (to take) exams in all the subjects.
❶ was … were taking ❷ was … took ❸ had been … took

27. When we … (to get) acquainted, she … (to work) in that firm for about a year.
❶ got … had been working ❷ got … had worked ❸ had got … had worked

13. ❹ She lay in the sun too long and got burnt.

14. ❷ Would you let me have a copy of your book as soon as you finish it, please?

15. ❷ The legend says that this old castle has stood in the field for several centuries.

16. ❶ The group worked carelessly the other day.

17. ❷ If it rains again, we'll have to return.

18. ❸ He used to work in a bank.

19. ❶ Why did you return so early?

20. ❸ It was already dark and it was raining.

21. ❷ The family was already sitting at table when she came in to dinner.

22. ❷ I haven't seen your brother for ages.

23. ❸ This is the first time I've read this beautiful poem.

24. ❸ We stayed with the Robins for two days and returned home.

25. ❷ Did you hear the news last night?

26. ❷ When I was at school, we took exams in all the subjects.

27. ❶ When we got acquainted, she had been working in that firm for about a year.

28. Since they … (to come) to Washington he … (not, to speak) Russian.
❶ have come … doesn't speak ❷ had come … didn't speak ❸ came … isn't speaking ❹ came … hasn't spoken

29. What time … (the plane, to arrive) at the airport?
❶ is the plane arriving ❷ does the plane arrive ❸ will the plane arrive

30. Mr. Freeman … (to rise) from the armchair where he … (to sit) and … (to go) to answer the phone.
❶ rose … was sitting … was going ❷ raised … had sat … went ❸ had risen … had been sitting … was going ❹ rose … had been sitting … went

31. She … (constantly, to speak) about her garden! She doesn't seem to be interested in anything else.
❶ is constantly speaking ❷ was constantly speaking ❸ constantly speaks

32. I hope I … (to prepare) everything by the time the guests … (to come).
❶ will prepare … come ❷ prepare … will come
❸ will have prepared … come

33. Ask them when they … (to return) from their vacation.
❶ will return ❷ return ❸ are returning

34. Where … (you, to get) these pretty earrings?
❶ have you got ❷ did you get ❸ had you got

35. I … (hardly, to say) a couple of words when she … (to start) shouting at me.
❶ have hardly said … started ❷ hardly said … had started ❸ had hardly said … started

36. I … (just, to leave) the room when I … (to hear) some strange noise behind.
❶ was just leaving … had heard ❷ was just leaving … heard

37. According to the eyewitnesses the robbers … (to threaten) the manager of the bank with a gun.
❶ were threatening ❷ have threatened ❸ threatened ❹ had threatened

38. … (you, to be) at Kate's birthday party?
❶ Did you be ❷ Were you ❸ Have you been

39. Don't worry! I … (to wait) for you when you … (to come). You won't get lost.
❶ will wait … will come ❷ am waiting … come ❸ will be waiting … come

40. I … (to be) ready by 7 o'clock.
❶ was ❷ had been ❸ have been

28. ❹ Since they came to Washington he hasn't spoken Russian.

29. ❷ What time does the plane arrive at the airport?

30. ❹ Mr. Freeman rose from the armchair where he had been sitting and went to answer the phone.

31. ❶ She is constantly speaking about her garden!

32. ❸ I hope I will have prepared everything by the time the guests come.

33. ❶ Ask them when they will return from their vacation.

34. ❷ Where did you get these pretty earrings?

35. ❷ I had hardly said a couple of words when she started shouting at me.

36. ❷ I was just leaving the room when I heard some strange noise behind.

37. ❸ According to the eyewitnesses the robbers threatened the manager of the bank with a gun.

38. ❷ Were you at Kate's birthday party?

39. ❸ I'll be waiting for you when you come.

40. ❶ I was ready by 7 o'clock.

41. She … (to cook) about two hours yesterday.
❶ had been cooking ❷ had cooked ❸ cooked ❹ was cooking

42. They … (to travel) for about a month when their son … (to fall) ill.
❶ travelled … had fallen ❷ had travelled … had fallen
❸ had been travelling … fell ❹ were travelling … fell

43. How long … (you, to build) your country house?
❶ have you built ❷ do you build
❸ are you building ❹ have you been building

44. On his way to the office he … (to remember) that he … (to leave) the documents at home.
❶ remembered … had left ❷ remembered … left

45. I … (to do) a lot of stupid things in my life.
❶ do ❷ am doing ❸ have done ❹ have been doing ❺ did

46. While she … (to cook) the children … (to begin) to argue and finally … (to quarrel).
❶ cooked … began … had quarrelled
❷ was cooking … had begun … quarrelled
❸ was cooking … began … quarrelled

47. He … (to run) away from home three times when he … (to be) fourteen.
❶ has run … has been ❷ ran … had been ❸ had run … was ❹ ran … was

48. Since when … (you, to be) abroad?
❶ are you ❷ have you been ❸ were you

49. I … (to see) your sister in the shop. She … (to try on) new shoes
❶ saw … tried on ❷ have seen … was trying on ❸ saw … was trying on

50. I … (to come) into the room. She … (to open) the box and … (try on) new shoes.
❶ came … opened … had tried on
❷ had come … opened … trying
❸ came … had opened … was trying

41. ❸ She cooked about two hours yesterday.

42. ❸ They had been travelling for about a month when their son fell ill.

43. ❹ How long have you been building your country house?

44. ❶ On his way to the office he remembered that he had left the documents at home.

45. ❸ I've done a lot of stupid things in my life.

46. ❸ While she was cooking the children began to argue and finally quarrelled.

47. ❹ He ran away from home three times when he was fourteen.

48. ❷ Since when have you been abroad?

49. ❸ I saw your sister in the shop. She was trying on new shoes.

50. ❸ I came into the room. She had opened the box and was trying on new shoes.

Exercise 2

Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense form.
Retell the texts.

1. Maria Campos … (**to become**) a rising star in the Progressive Party. She … (**to begin**) her political career while she … (**to study**) at Woodsville University. When she first … (**to stand**) as a candidate for Woodsville, she … (**not, to win**) many votes — Woodsville is a traditional town, and no woman … (**ever, to be**) a candidate there before. "They … (**to elect**) the same man, year after year," she told me, "and they just … (**to laugh**) at me when I … (**to get up**) to speak." But she was the winning candidate in the next election, and since then she … (**to show**) herself to be a hard-hitting speaker who … (**never, to be**) afraid to say what she thinks.

In recent months she … (**to fight**) hard to improve the position of women. She told me the reason. "I began this campaign because women … (**continually, to write**) to me, complaining of how their husbands … (**to treat**) them. Sometimes their husbands … (**to throw**) them out of the family home and left them without any possessions. The law always … (**to take**) the husband's side in such cases."

When I … (**to interview**) Maria Campos last week, she … (**to plan**) a new campaign on this question. She … (**already, to persuade**) some of the country's most important legal experts to support her. "The law must be changed," she … (**to say**) to me.

2. There was a man sitting there and as I … (**to walk up**) he … (**to welcome**) me and … (**to ask**) me what kind of drink I would like… I … (**to choose**) a long drink and … (**to sit down**). He … (**to be**) a tall, thin man, browned by the sun. I … (**not, to know**) his name, but when we … (**to talk**) for a short time, another man … (**to come**) in who … (**to tell**) me he … (**to be**) the secretary, and … (**to call**) my friend George.

"… (**you, to hear**) from your wife yet?" he asked him.

The other's eyes … (**to brighten**).

"Yes, I … (**to have**) letters by this mail. She … (**to have**) a pleasant time."

Упражнение 2

Употребите правильную временную форму глаголов в скобках.
Перескажите тексты.

1. Maria Campos has become a rising star in the Progressive Party. She began her political career while she was studying at Woodsville University. When she first stood as a candidate for Woodsville, she didn't win many votes — Woodsville is a traditional town, and no woman had ever been a candidate there before. "They elected (had elected, had been electing) the same man, year after year," she told me, "and they just laughed at me when I got up to speak." But she was the winning candidate in the next election, and since then she has shown herself to be a hard hitting speaker who has never been afraid to say what she thinks.

In recent months she has been fighting (has fought) hard to improve the position of women. She told me the reason. "I began this campaign because women were continually writing (had been writing) to me, complaining of how their husbands treated (were treating, had treated) them. Sometimes their husbands threw (had thrown) them out of the family home and left them without any possessions. The law always took the husband's side in such cases."

When I interviewed Maria Campos last week, she was planning a new campaign on this question. She had already persuaded some of the country's most important legal experts to support her. "The law must be changed," she said to me.

2. There was a man sitting there and as I walked up he welcomed me and asked me what kind of drink I would like… I chose a long drink and sat down. He was a tall, thin man, browned by the sun. I didn't know his name, but when we had been talking for a short time, another man came in who told me he was the secretary, and called my friend George.

"Have you heard from your wife yet?" he asked him.

The other's eyes brightened.

"Yes, I had letters by this mail. She is having a pleasant time."

"… (**she, to tell**) you not to worry?"

George … (**to give**) a little laugh, but was I mistaken in thinking that there … (**to be**) in it a sound of sorrow?

"In fact she … . But that's easier said than done. Of course I know she wants a holiday, and I'm glad she should have it, but it's hard on me." He … (**to turn**) to me. "You see, this … (**to be**) the first time I … (**ever, to be**) separated from my wife, and I … (**to be**) like a lost dog without her."

"How long … (**you, to be**) married?"

"Five minutes."

The secretary of the club … (**to laugh**).

"Don't be a fool, George. You … (**to be**) married eight years."

After we … (to talk) a little, George, looking at his watch, … (**to say**) he must go and change his clothes for dinner and … (**to leave**) us.

… "We all … (**to ask**) him as much as we can, now that he … (**to be**) alone," his secretary … (**to say**) to me. "He … (**to be**) so terribly miserable since his wife … (**to go**) home."

3. The rain … (**to fall**) when she … (**to awake**) and it … (**to be**) impossible to go out. During tea Guy … (**to be)** silent and abstracted. She … (**to get**) her sewing and … (**to begin**) to work. Guy … (**to sit**) down to read such of the English papers as he … (**not, yet, to go**) through from cover to cover; but he … (**to be**) restless; he … (**to walk**) up and down the large room and then … (**to go**) out on the veranda. He … (**to look**) at the steady rain. What … (**he, to think**) of? Doris … (**to be**) vaguely uneasy.

It … (**to be**) not till after dinner that he … (**to speak**). During the simple meal he … (**to exert**) himself to be his usual gay self, but the exertion … (**to be**) apparent. The rain … (**to cease**) and the night (**to be**) starry. They … (**to sit**) on the veranda. In order not to attract insects they … (**to put)** out the lamp in the sitting-room. <…> "Doris, I … (**to have got**) something to say to you," he … (**to say**) suddenly.

"Did she tell you not to worry?"

George gave a little laugh, but was I mistaken in thinking that there was in it a sound of sorrow?

"In fact she did. But that's easier said than done. Of course I know she wants a holiday, and I'm glad she should have it, but it's hard on me." He turned to me. "You see, this is the first time I have ever been separated from my wife, and I am like a lost dog without her."

"How long have you been married?"

"Five minutes."

The secretary of the club laughed.

"Don't be a fool, George. You have been married eight years."

After we had talked a little, George, looking at his watch, said he must go and change his clothes for dinner and left us.

… "We all ask him as much as we can, now that he is alone," his secretary said to me. "He has been so terribly miserable since his wife went home."

From W.S. Maugham "Mabel"

3. The rain was falling when she awoke and it was impossible to go out. During tea Guy was silent and abstracted. She got her sewing and began to work. Guy sat down to read such of the English papers as he hadn't yet gone through from cover to cover; but he was restless; he walked up and down the large room and then went out on the veranda. He looked at the steady rain. What was he thinking of? Doris was vaguely uneasy.

It was not till after dinner that he spoke. During the simple meal he had exerted himself to be his usual gay self, but the exertion was apparent. The rain had ceased and the night was starry. They were sitting on the veranda. In order not to attract insects they had put out the lamp in the sitting-room. <…> "Doris, I've got something to say to you," he said suddenly.

From W.S. Maugham "The Force of Circumstance"

4. One afternoon I … (**to drive**) over to the farm; I … (**not, to see**) Sonia for six weeks because her children … (**to be**) home for the holidays and I … (**to loathe**) her children. I … (**to miss**) her, she … (**to be**) never boring. The house-boy … (**to say**) she … (**to be**) down the river with Dr. Frank. I … (**to wander**) down the path, but they … (**not, to be**) in sight. I … (**to wait**) for about eight minutes and … (**to walk**) back. All the natives except the house-boy … (**to go**) to sleep in their huts. I … (**not, to see**) the house-boy for some time, and when I did I … (**to be**) frightened by the fear on his face.

I … (**to come**) round by the old ox-stalls, now deserted — since Sonia … (**to abandon**) farming, even with a tractor, far less a span of oxen. The house-boy … (**to appear**) then and … (**to whisper**) to me, "Baas Van der Merwe … (**to come**). He … (**to look**) in the window."

I … (**to walk**) quietly round the stalls till I … (**to have**) a view of the house, and … (**to see**) a man of about fifty, undernourished-looking, in khaki shorts and shirt. He … (**to stand**) on a box by the drawing-room window. He … (**to have**) his hand on the curtain, parting it, and … (**to look**) steadily into the empty room.

"Go down to the river and warn them," I … (**to say**) to the boy.

He … (**to turn**) to go, but "Boy!" … (**to shout**) the man. The house-boy rapidly … (**to go**) towards the voice. <…>

I … (**to go**) to look for Sonia.

I … (**to get**) down to the river just as they … (**to land**).

5. Andrew Dale … (**to attend**) an international conference in Barcelona. It … (**to be**) the first time he … (**to be**) to the city. Like most people, he … (**to hear**) a lot about the Rambles, and … (**to be**) eager to go there. So he … (**to study**) the conference programme and … (to convince) himself that he … **(not, to want**) to hear old Professor Thimble's lecture the next morning. (When he … (**to be**) a young man, Thimble … (**to develop**) a theory about a possible relationship between the Basque language and certain Red Indi dialects. He … (**to give**) the same lecture on the subject ever since.

4. One afternoon I drove over to the farm; I hadn't seen Sonia for six weeks because her children had been home for the holidays and I loathed her children. I had missed her, she was never boring. The house-boy said she was down the river with Dr. Frank. I wandered down the path, but they were not in sight. I waited for about eight minutes and walked back. All the natives except the house-boy had gone to sleep in their huts. I didn't see the house-boy for some time, and when I did I was frightened by the fear on his face.

I was coming round by the old ox-stalls, now deserted — since Sonia had abandoned farming, even with a tractor, far less a span of oxen. The house-boy appeared then and whispered to me, "Baas Van der Merwe has come. He is looking in the window."

I walked quietly round the stalls till I had a view of the house, and saw a man of about fifty, undernourished-looking, in khaki shorts and shirt. He was standing on a box by the drawing-room window. He had his hand on the curtain, parting it, and was looking steadily into the empty room.

"Go down to the river and warn them," I said to the boy.

He turned to go, but "Boy!" shouted the man. The house-boy rapidly went towards the voice. <…>

I went to look for Sonia.

I got down to the river just as they were landing.

From Muriel Spark "The Curtain Blown by the Breeze"

5. Andrew Dale was attending an international conference in Barcelona. It was the first time he had been to the city. Like most people, he had heard a lot about the Rambles, and was eager to go there. So he studied the conference programme and convinced himself that he didn't want to hear old Professor Thimble's lecture the next morning. (When he was a young man, Thimble developed a theory about a possible relationship between the Basque language and certain Red Indian dialects. He had been giving the same lecture on the subject ever since.

Andrew … (**to have**) just one tiny problem: he … (**to be**) confined to a wheelchair, the result of an accident on the rugby field when he … (**to be**) at school. What he … (**to need**) … (**to be**) someone to go with him to the Rambles. That evening, at dinner, he .. (**to sit**) next to Tony Willingham, a man he … (**to meet**) once or twice before. It … (to turn out) that Tony … (**to know**) Barcelona very well, and … (**to be**) full of enthusiasm for the sights of the Rambles and the nearby Gothic Quarter. Andrew … (**to decide**) to try his luck. He … (**to bring**) the conversation round to the subject of Professor Thimble and his theories.

"Well, old Thimble … (to do) a lot of work on Basque, <…> but between you and me, I … (**not, to think**) he … (**to have**) anything new to say. <…> It … (**to be**) a crime to stay in a stuffy lecture hall when the sun … (**to shine**)." <…>

The two truants … (**to set**) off after breakfast, but first they … (**to wait**), like guilty schoolboys, until the other conference delegates … (**to go**) off to Thimble's lecture. Tony … (**to wheel**) Andrew out into the street and … (**to hail**) a taxi. To Tony's surprise, it … (**to take**) only a few seconds to fold the wheelchair and put it in the boot, while Andrew, using a pair of walking-sticks, … (**to ease**) himself into the front seat. When they … (**to get**) to the Rambles, the taxi-driver (a rare man who actually … (**to understand**) about such things) … (**to reassemble**) the chair, and soon Tony and Andrew … (**to stroll**) down the centre of the avenue, enjoying the morning sunshine and the colourful displays of the flower sellers.

Andrew had just one tiny problem: he was confined to a wheelchair, the result of an accident on the rugby field when he was at school. What he needed was someone to go with him to the Rambles. That evening, at dinner, he sat next to Tony Willingham, a man he had met once or twice before. It turned out that Tony knew Barcelona very well, and was full of enthusiasm for the sights of the Rambles and the nearby Gothic Quarter. Andrew decided to try his luck. He brought the conversation round to the subject of Professor Thimble and his theories.

"Well, old Thimble has done a lot of work on Basque, <…> but between you and me, 1 don't think he has anything new to say. <…> It is a crime to stay in a stuffy lecture hall when the sun is shining." <…>

The two truants set off after breakfast, but first they waited, like guilty schoolboys, until the other conference delegates had gone off to Thimble's lecture. Tony wheeled Andrew out into the street and hailed a taxi. To Tony's surprise, it took only a few seconds to fold the wheelchair and put it in the boot, while Andrew, using a pair of walking-sticks, eased himself into the front seat. When they got to the Rambles, the taxi-driver (a rare man who actually understood about such things) reassembled the chair, and soon Tony and Andrew were strolling down the centre of the avenue, enjoying the morning sunshine and the colourful displays of the flower sellers.

From J. Allsop "A Spray of Heather"

Exercise 3

Translate into English.

1. Где вы провели выходные?
2. Вы видели что-нибудь интересное в театре в последнее время?
3. Я слышала, вы недавно были в командировке.
4. Он сразу его узнал. Они встречались несколько раз.
5. Она очень испугалась, когда увидела змею.
6. Он вернулся домой только после того, как купил билеты.
7. К вечеру он так устал, что отказался идти с нами в кино.
8. Она никогда не просила о помощи, хотя и нуждалась в ней.
9. Вы закончите работу к четвергу?
   • Боюсь, мы еще не будем готовы.
10. Я думаю, что, если вы сделаете это, вы совершите большую ошибку.
11. Ни они, ни мой брат никогда не бывали в этих краях.
12. Она уже 20 лет преподает в школе.
13. Я еще читала, когда мама вернулась из магазина.
14. Я очень устала вчера. Я спала весь вечер.
15. Он поговорил по телефону и быстро вышел комнаты.
16. Когда дети вернулись, она приготовила ужин и накрывала на стол.
17. Она была очень взволнована. Она ждала меня весь вечер.
18. Он решил кроссворд в течение получаса.
19. Вы слышали объявление?
20. Я едва узнала его. Он очень постарел.
21. Ваш почерк стал лучше.
22. Я забыл зонт дома и, когда пошел дождь, промок до нитки.
23. Я занимаюсь с раннего утра и повторила уже большую часть материала.
24. Он не уезжал из города этим летом.
25. Вам несколько раз звонили, пока вас не было.

Упражнение 3

Переведите на английский.

1. Where did you spend the weekend?
2. Have you seen anything interesting at the theatre lately?
3. I hear you were on a business trip not long ago.
4. He recognized him at once. They had met several times.
5. She got very frightened when she saw a snake.
6. He returned home only after he had bought tickets.
7. He was so tired by the evening that he refused to go to the cinema with us.
8. She never asked for help though she needed some.
9. Will you have finished the work by Thursday?
   • I'm afraid, we won't be ready yet.
10. I think that if you do it, you'll make a great mistake.
11. Neither they nor my brother has ever been to these parts.
12. She has been teaching at school for twenty years already.
13. I was still reading when my mother returned from the shop.
14. I was very tired yesterday. I slept all evening.
15. He spoke on the phone and quickly left the room.
16. When the children returned, she had prepared dinner and was laying the table.
17. She was very excited. She had been waiting for me all evening.
18. He solved the crossword puzzle for half an hour.
19. Did you hear the announcement?
20. I hardly recognized him. He had got very old.
21. Your handwriting has improved.
22. I left my umbrella at home and when it started raining I got wet to the skin.
23. I have been studying since early morning and I have already revised most of the material.
24. He hasn't left town this summer.
25. Somebody called you several times while you were out.

26. Ты давно здесь?
    • Да, я пришла рано утром.
27. Когда-то мы вместе учились в школе, и с тех пор мы в хороших отношениях.
28. Я думаю, что переведу статью к концу недели. Я работаю над ней уже три дня и перевела больше половины. Я никогда не переводила таких трудных статей.
29. Как только я напишу письмо, я сразу же его отправлю, но я не знаю, когда она его получит.
30. Когда он пробирался сквозь толпу, он услышал, как кто-то окликнул его.
31. Даже если он вам ничего не скажет, это не значит, что он ничего не заметил.
32. В случае, если встретишь Ника, скажи ему, что я уезжаю в командировку.
33. Я не знаю, когда я встречусь с Аней. Последнее время мы мало видимся.
34. Это была та самая женщина, которую он столько искал.
35. Я думаю об этом с тех пор, как получил от них это странное письмо.
36. Прошло уже 10 лет с тех пор, как они расстались.
37. Ты вся дрожишь. Что случилось?
38. Он чихает весь вечер. За последний час он чихнул раз десять. Может, он простудился.
39. Ну где же ты оставил шляпу?
40. Мои бабушка и дедушка живут в этой деревне всю жизнь.
41. Он провел в тюрьме несколько месяцев, прежде чем сознался в преступлении.
42. Утро было солнечное, но с 12 часов погода изменилась, и теперь идет снег с дождем.
43. Не звоните мне от трех до пяти — я буду работать в лаборатории.
44. Я никак не мог уснуть и вышел в сад. Небо было ясное, и звезды ярко светили.
45. На днях я встретила школьную подругу, которую не видела три года. Мы пошли в кафе и проговорили около двух часов.

26. Have you been here long?
    • Yes, I came early in the morning.
27. We used to go to school together and we've been on good terms since then.
28. I think I will have translated the article by the end of the week. I've been working at it for three days already and I have translated more than half. I've never translated such difficult articles.
29. As soon as I write the letter, I will send it, but I don't know when she will receive it.
30. When he was getting through the crowd, he heard somebody call him.
31. Even if he doesn't tell you anything, it doesn't mean that he didn't notice anything.
32. In case you meet Nick, tell him that I'm going on a business trip.
33. I don't know when I'll meet Ann. We haven't seen much of each other lately.
34. It was the woman he had been looking for so long.
35. I've been thinking about it since I got that strange letter from them.
36. It's already 10 years since they parted.
37. You are trembling all over. What's the matter? (What has happened?)
38. He has been sneezing all evening. He has sneezed about ten times for the last hour. He may have caught cold.
39. Where did you leave your hat?
40. My grandparents have lived in this village all their life.
41. He had spent several months in prison before he confessed his crime.
42. The morning was sunny but the weather has changed since twelve o'clock and now it's sleeting.
43. Don't call me from three to five — I'll be working at the lab.
44. I couldn't fall asleep and went out into the garden. The sky was clear and the stars were shining brightly.
45. The other day I met a school friend whom I hadn't seen for three years. We went to a cafe and talked about two hours.

46. Я должен спросить каждого из вас, что вы делали в пятницу в 7 часов вечера.
47. Он все экзамены сдал?
    • К сожалению, он провалился на истории.
48. К тому времени как он пришел, мы уже выяснили все подробности происшествия.
49. Когда я пришел, они собрали вещи и ждали такси.
50. Когда я пришел, они уже собирали вещи.
51. Я никогда не слышал эту оперу. Кто написал музыку?
52. Я понятия не имею, кого они здесь ждут. Они здесь уже час.
53. Вечно у нас в доме ломается лифт! Только в этом месяце он ломался 5 раз.
54. Они отошли довольно далеко от дома, когда поняли, что собирается дождь.
55. Не приходи рано утром. Он еще будет спать.
56. Он включил свет и сел за стол, чтобы прочитать письмо, которое принес почтальон.
57. Не успел он дочитать завещание, как наследник упал в обморок.
58. Я сто лет не была в зоопарке. Я была там всего два или три раза в детстве.
59. Мы выйдем в 5, если дождь к тому времени прекратится.
60. Когда-то это была богатая и могущественная страна.

46. I have to ask each of you what you were doing at seven o'clock on Friday.
47. Has he passed all his exams?
    • Unfortunately, he failed his History exam.
48. By the time he came we had already found out all the details of the accident.
49. When I came, they had packed their things and were waiting for the taxi.
50. When I came they were already packing their things.
51. I've never heard this opera. Who wrote the music?
52. I have no idea who they are waiting for. They have been here for an hour already.
53. The lift in our house is breaking down all the time! It has broken down five times this month only.
54. They had gone quite far away from the house when they realized that it was going to rain.
55. Don't come early in the morning. He will be still sleeping.
56. He turned on the light and sat down at the table to read the letter the postman had brought.
57. Hardly had he read the will up to the end when the heir fainted.
58. I haven't been to the Zoo for ages. I was there only two or three times in my childhood.
59. We'll go at five if it has stopped raining by this time.
60. It used to be a rich and powerful country.

UNIT 17 MODAL VERBS

17.1 Can, could

17.2 May, might

17.3 Must, to have to, to be to

17.4 Need

17.5 Should

17.6 Forms of the Infinitive

- *The Infinitive with* **Can**
- *The Infinitive with* **May**
- *The Infinitive with* **Must**
- *The Infinitive with* **Need**
- *The Infinitive with* **Should**

17.1 CAN, COULD

The verb *can* is used to indicate the possibility or the ability of something.

Can is also used to say that someone has permission to do something.

Can is also used to indicate prohibition, doubt and surprise.

Could is used to express a polite request.

Study the following examples:

1. He *can* read English, (*one's ability to do smth*)
2. I *can* come at six. (*capability*)
3. *Can* I use your pen? (*asking for permission*)

УРОК 17 МОДАЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ

17.1 Can, could

17.2 May, might

17.3 Must, to have to, to be to

17.4 Need

17.5 Should

17.6 Формы инфинитива

- *Инфинитив с глаголом* **Can**
- *Инфинитив с глаголом* **May**
- *Инфинитив с глаголом* **Must**
- *Инфинитив с глаголом* **Need**
- *Инфинитив с глаголом* **Should**

17.1 CAN, COULD

Модальный глагол ***can*** выражает возможность или способность сделать что-либо.

Can также употребляется, если требуется получить или дать разрешение.

Can также может обозначать запрет, сомнение и удивление.

Could обозначает вежливую просьбу.

Изучите следующие примеры:

1. Он *умеет* читать по-английски.
2. Я *могу* прийти в шесть часов.
3. *Можно* я воспользуюсь твоей ручкой?

4. *Could* you tell me the time? (*a polite request*)
5. *Could* I ask you a few questions? (*a polite way of asking for permission*)
6. You *can* use my phone. (*giving permission*)
7. You *can't* touch these papers. (*prohibition*)
8. *Can* he believe it? (*doubt and surprise*)
9. He *can't* know about it. (*impossibility*)

PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
can do	could do	will be able to do
can't do	couldn't do	won't be able to do
Can … do?	Could … do?	Will … be able to do?

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with **CAN / CAN'T** or **COULD / COULDN'T**.

1. You … wash this dress but you … iron it. If you iron it you'll spoil it.
2. Excuse me. … you show me the way to the post office?
3. You … park your car here.
4. … you close the window, please? It's getting cold.
5. … I smoke here? No, you … . This is a non-smoker.

4. Скажите, *пожалуйста*, который час. *Не могли бы вы* сказать, …?
5. *Могу ли* я задать вам несколько вопросов?
6. *Можете* от меня позвонить.
7. *Нельзя* трогать эти бумаги.
8. *Неужели* он верит этому?
9. *Не может быть*, чтобы он об этом знал.

The child *can read*. — Ребенок умеет читать.
The child *could read* when he was 5. — Ребенок умел читать в 5 лет.
The child *will be able to read* this word. — Ребенок сможет прочитать это слово.

I *can't phone* him right now. — Я не могу позвонить ему сейчас.
I *couldn't phone* him yesterday. — Я не мог позвонить ему вчера.
I *won't be able to do* it tomorrow. — Я не смогу сделать это завтра.

Can you speak English? — Вы говорите на английском?
Could you speak English last year? — Вы говорили на английском в прошлом году?
Will he be able to say a few words in English? — Он сможет сказать несколько слов на английском?

Упражнение 1

Вставьте **CAN / CAN'T** или **COULD / COULDN'T**.

1. You can wash this dress but you can't iron it.
2. Excuse me, could you show me the way to the post office?
3. You can't park your car here.
4. Could you close the window, please? It's getting cold.
5. Can I smoke here? • No, you can't. This is a non-smoker.

6. … I turn up the volume? This is my favourite song.
   • Of course you … .
7. You … cross the street here. If you do you'll be fined.
8. … you help me with this grammar rule, please. I don't understand it.
9. I wonder if I … return the book a bit later, please?
   • I'm sorry but you … . Many people have already asked for it.
10. You are my friend … . you tell me what to do in this situation?

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with **CAN** in the correct form.

1. Stephen is learning French. Now he … speak French well but he hopes that he … speak French well in a year.
2. I know I … drive a car well unless I have much practice.
3. Last year Jane … type as well as she … this year.
4. Bess … play the piano but she is taking lessons and her teacher says that she … play the piano soon.
5. A year ago I … afford to buy a new car as I didn't have enough money. Fortunately I … afford a new car now.
6. I … find a proper present for her yesterday but I believe I … do it tomorrow.
7. I … take part in this competition but I'm sure I … take part in the next competition.
8. She says she … get in touch with Mr. Wilson last week as the latter was away but when he returns she … do it.
9. I'm afraid I … give you advice now. I'm not an expert in this field. But I'll ask Mr. Bank and then I … advise you something.
10. … you entertain so many guests? It's always a problem with me. I … never do it.

6. Can I turn up the volume? This is my favourite song.
   • Of course you can.
7. You can't cross the street here.
8. Could you help me with this grammar rule, please? I don't understand it.
9. I wonder if I could return the book a bit later, please?
   • I'm sorry but you can't.
10. You are my friend. Can you tell me what to do in this situation?

Упражнение 2

Вставьте **CAN** в правильной форме.

1. can't, will be able to
2. won't be able to
3. couldn't, can
4. can't, will be able to
5. couldn't, can
6. couldn't, will be able to
7. can't, will be able to
8. couldn't, will be able to
9. can't, will be able to
10. will you be able to, can

Exercise 3

Translate into English.

1. Эти брюки нельзя стирать в стиральной машине.
2. Я смогу ответить на ваши вопросы, только когда просмотрю отчет.
3. Он говорит, что не смог повторить правила по нескольким причинам.
4. Думаю, мне удастся объяснить ему, что он неправ.
5. Неужели он такой упрямый?
6. Неужели он верит в такую ерунду?
7. Не может быть, чтобы он был таким злым.
8. Он просит разрешения уйти. • Ему пока нельзя уходить.
9. Могу я позвонить тебе позже?
10. Вы не подскажете, где я могу купить конверт?
11. Я могу купить что-нибудь к ужину.
12. Я не смогу закончить перевод к понедельнику.
13. Он умел хорошо плавать, когда ему было 6 лет.
14. Ты умел говорить по-английски в школе?
15. Где мы можем встретиться?
16. Сколько раз в неделю ты сможешь брать уроки музыки?
17. Ты можешь рассказать мне все подробно?
18. Нельзя читать в темноте.
19. Вы не могли бы мне перезвонить?
20. Я не могу это понять.

Упражнение 3

Переведите на английский.

1. You can't wash these trousers in the washing machine.
2. I'll be able to answer your questions only after I look through the report.
3. He says he couldn't revise the rules for several reasons.
4. I think I'll be able to explain to him that he is wrong.
5. Can he be so stubborn?
6. Can he believe such nonsense?
7. He can't be so bad-tempered.
8. He is asking for permission to leave. • He can't leave yet.
9. Can I phone you later?
10. Could (can) you tell me where I can buy an envelope?
11. I can buy something for dinner.
12. I won't be able to finish the translation by Monday.
13. He could swim well when he was 6.
14. Could you speak English at school?
15. Where can we meet?
16. How many times a week will you be able to take music lessons?
17. Can you tell me everything in detail?
18. You can't read in the dark.
19. Could you phone me back?
20. I can't understand it.

17.2 MAY, MIGHT

These modal verbs are used to make a request, to ask permission and to make supposition.

Might is also used to express reproach.

Study the following examples:

1. *May I* use your phone, please? (*a formal way of asking permission*)
   • Yes, you may. • No you can't.
2. *May I* join you? (*a polite request*)
3. You *may* as well be right. (*possibility*)
4. He *may* be busy now. (*supposition*)
5. You *might* help him now. (*reproach*)

Exercise 4

Choose between **MAY** and **MIGHT**.

1. … I come in? (request) • Yes, you … . (permission)
2. It's unfair that he doesn't know the truth. You … tell him everything. (reproach)
3. He … know about it himself. (a suggestion)
4. He is waiting for you. You … put off your work for some time. (reproach)
5. … we leave our things here? (a polite request)
6. He … not understand English. (a possibility)
7. You know he is ill. You … go and visit him. (reproach)
8. Where are you going to spend your vacation?
   • I don't know yet. I … go to Spain. (possibility)
9. After school he … go to University. (suggestion)
10. … I talk to him right now? The matter is urgent. (a polite request)

17.2 MAY, MIGHT

Эти модальные глаголы выражают просьбу, разрешение, предположение.

Might также употребляется для выражения упрека.

Изучите следующие примеры:

1. *Могу я* (*Можно*) от вас позвонить?
   • Да, можете. • Нет, не можете.
2. *Можно я* присоединюсь к вам?
3. *Может быть*, ты и прав.
4. *Возможно* (*Наверное*), он сейчас занят.
5. *Мог бы и* помочь ему сейчас.

Упражнение 4

Вставьте **MAY** или **MIGHT**.

1. May I come in? • Yes, you may.
2. You might tell him everything.
3. He may know about it himself.
4. You might put off your work for some time.
5. May we leave our things here?
6. He may not understand English.
7. You might go and visit him.
8. I may go to Spain.
9. After school he may go to University.
10. May I talk to him right now?

Exercise 5

Translate into English.

1. Возможно, он придет позже.
2. Мог бы и показать мне это письмо.
3. Можно мне войти? • Нет.
4. Может быть, он сейчас дома.
5. Не мог бы я оставить здесь свои вещи?
6. Могли бы и объяснить ему его ошибку.
7. Возможно, ты знаешь его.
8. Ты можешь брать мою машину, когда она тебе нужна.
9. Наверное, это не его адрес.
10. Это может быть Фрэнк.

17.3 MUST

Must is used to say that something is necessary. *Must* is also used to express prohibition and supposition.

Study the following examples:

1. You *must* go and apologise at once. (*necessity*)
2. You *mustn't* tell anyone about it. (*prohibition*)
3. He *must* be at home now. (*supposition*)

COMPARE

He *must be* at home now. (supposition)

He *may be* at home now. (suggestion)

Упражнение 5

Переведите на английский.

1. He may come later.
2. You might show me this letter.
3. May I come in? • No, you can't.
4. He may be at home now.
5. May I leave my things here?
6. You might explain his mistake to him.
7. You may know him.
8. You may use my car whenever you need it.
9. It may not be his address.
10. It may be Frank.

17.3 MUST

Модальный глагол *must* выражает необходимость, запрет или предположение.

Изучите следующие примеры:

1. Ты *должен* немедленно пойти и извиниться.
2. Ты *не должен* никому об этом рассказывать.
3. Он, *должно быть*, сейчас дома.

СРАВНИТЕ

Он, *должно быть* (*наверняка*, *вероятно*, *по-видимому*), сейчас дома.

Может быть (*возможно*, *наверное*), он сейчас дома.

MUST, TO HAVE TO

PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
must do	had to do	will have to do
mustn't do	didn't have to do	won't have to do
Must do?	Did … have to do?	Will … have to do?

Exercise 6

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of **MUST / HAD TO / WILL HAVE TO**.

1. Hurry up! We … be late.
2. As we were short of time I … decide what to do at once.
3. Tomorrow is my day off, so I … get up early.
4. You … take better care of the children.
5. If you don't know how to use a new machine you … touch it.
6. One can't keep this book long. I know I … to return it in a week.
7. I knew nobody could cope with the task better than me, so I … go there myself. And I was right.
8. Mark says he will see Margaret off, so you … to do it.
9. It was Sunday yesterday, so I … go to work.
10. "You … stop at the red light," the mother said to the child.

Exercise 7

Translate into English.

1. Я должен знать, что происходит.
2. Неужели ты действительно должен делать это за него?

MUST, TO HAVE TO

1. I **must give** him a full account of my work every day. — Я **обязан** каждый день предоставлять ему полный отчет о работе.
2. I **had to give** him a full account of my work yesterday. — Вчера я **должен был** (**мне пришлось**) предоставить ему полный отчет о работе.
3. I'**ll have to give** him a full account of my work tomorrow — Завтра я **буду должен** (**мне придется**) предоставить ему полный отчет о работе.

Упражнение 6

Вставьте **MUST / HAD TO / WILL HAVE TO** в правильной форме.

1. Hurry up! We mustn't be late.
2. As we were short of time I had to decide what to do at once.
3. Tomorrow is my day off, so I won't have to get up early.
4. You must take better care of the children.
5. If you don't know how to use a new machine you mustn't touch it.
6. One can't keep this book long. I know I must return it in a week.
7. I knew nobody could cope with the task better than me, so I had to go there myself.
8. Mark says he will see Margaret off, so you won't have to do it.
9. It was Sunday yesterday, so I didn't have to go to work.
10. "You must stop at the red light," the mother said to the child.

Упражнение 7

Переведите на английский.

1. I must know what is going on.
2. Must you really do it for him?

3. Сколько дней ты должен там провести?
4. Тебе придется напомнить ему об этом разговоре.
5. Мы вынуждены были отложить отъезд (departure).
6. Когда он был маленьким, ему часто приходилось оставаться дома одному.
7. Я надеюсь, я не должен буду отвечать на его вопросы.
8. Боюсь, нам придется изменить планы.
9. Мы должны сделать для нее все, что мы можем.
10. Я должен был подумать прежде, чем ответить на его вопрос.
11. Если ты туда пойдешь, я должен буду сопровождать тебя.
12. Боюсь, я должна буду задержаться на работе до 8.
13. Должен сказать тебе, что ты неправа.
14. Должно быть, это необычное решение.
15. Почему тебе пришлось туда поехать?

MUST, TO HAVE TO, TO BE TO

1. *To have to* is used to say that something is necessary because of certain circumstances.

Compare the following examples:

1. “Smoking in the office is forbidden. You *must go out*,” the manager said.

   As smoking in the office is forbidden I *have to go out*.
2. “You *must look after* the children properly,” Mrs. Frank said to the nurse.

   As she can’t afford a nurse she *has to look after* the children herself.

3. How many days must you spend there?
4. You will have to remind him of this conversation.
5. We had to postpone the departure.
6. When he was little he often had to stay at home alone.
7. I hope I won’t have to answer his questions.
8. I’m afraid we’ll have to change our plans.
9. We must do everything we can for her.
10. I had to think before answering his question.
11. If you go there I’ll have to accompany you.
12. I’m afraid I’ll have to stay at work till 8.
13. I must tell you that you are wrong.
14. It must be an unusual decision.
15. Why did you have to go there?

MUST, TO HAVE TO, TO BE TO

1. Модальный глагол *to have to* выражает необходимость, обусловленную обстоятельствами.

Сравните следующие примеры:

1. «Курить в офисе запрещено. Вы *должны выходить*», — сказал управляющий.
   Так как курить в офисе запрещено, мне *приходится выходить*.
2. «Вы *должны следить* за детьми как следует», — сказала миссис Фрэнк няне.
   Так как она не может позволить себе няню, ей *приходится присматривать* за детьми самой.

PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
have (has) to do	had to do	will have to do
don't (doesn't) have to do	didn't have to do	won't have to do
Do (does)… have to do?	Did… have to do?	Will… have to do?

2. *To be to* is used to denote a planned action.

Compare the following examples:

"You *must look after* the children properly," Mrs. Frank said to the nurse.

As she can't afford a nurse she *has to look after* the children herself.

"What *am I to do*?" the young woman asked the mistress of the house.

"You *are to look* after the children and teach them good manners."

TO BE TO, WAS (WERE) TO

PRESENT	PAST
I'm to do it	I was to do it
I'm not to do it	I wasn't to do it
Am I to do it?	Was I to do it?

I *have to get up* early on Monday as I go to the swimming pool before work. • Мне *приходится вставать* рано по понедельникам, так как я хожу в бассейн перед работой.

I *had to phone* him yesterday as I didn't know for sure what to do. • Мне *пришлось звонить* ему вчера, так как я в точности не знал, что делать.

I'*ll have to go* there again as I left some necessary papers there. • Мне опять *придется* туда *идти*, так как я забыл там важные бумаги.

2. *To be to* выражает заранее запланированное действие.

Сравните следующие примеры:

«Вы *должны следить* за детьми как следует», — сказала миссис Фрэнк няне.

Так как она не может позволить себе няню, ей *приходится присматривать* за детьми самой.

«Что я *должна делать*?» — спросила молодая женщина хозяйку дома.

«Вы *должны следить* за детьми и учить их хорошим манерам».

TO BE TO, WAS (WERE) TO

• As we have agreed *I'm to meet* Walter at the airport.
Как мы договорились, *я должен встретить* Уолтера в аэропорту.

• As we had agreed *I was to meet* Walter at six.
Как мы договорились, я *должен был встретить* Уолтера в 6.

• Where *were you to meet* Walter?
Где ты *должен был встретить* Уолтера?

Exercise 8

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of
MUST / TO BE TO / TO HAVE TO.

1. As his eyes are bad he …. wear glasses.
2. They asked me questions and I … answer them.
3. Where … I to take these papers? • Mr. Duglas is expecting you at his office.
4. I … see her. It's important.
5. We … meet at five but I was late.
6. As he couldn't join me I … go alone.
7. You … admit that you are wrong.
8. It's an official party. Everyone … wear a tie.
9. The manager was busy, so we … wait for some time.
10. Who …. do this part of the work? • Mark and Steve have agreed to do it.
11. How … I understand you? What do you expect from me?
12. I'm so worried. You definitely … let me know as soon as you learn anything new.
13. It takes me long to get to work. I … spend an hour and a half every day.
14. "You … give up smoking," the doctor said to the patient.
15. … I discuss it with him? Do you expect me to?

Exercise 9

Translate into English.

1. Так как моя машина часто ломается, мне приходится ездить на автобусе.
2. Что мне делать с этой коробкой? • Оставьте ее в коридоре.
3. Как ты мог об этом забыть? Ты всегда должен об этом помнить.
4. Тебе часто приходится помогать детям делать домашнее задание?
5. Когда вы их ждете? • Они должны приехать во вторник.
6. Как мы договорились, Эллен должна была купить цветы и ждать нас на остановке.

Упражнение 8

Вставьте **MUST / BE TO / TO HAVE TO** в правильной форме.

1. As his eyes are bad he has to wear glasses.
2. They asked me questions and I had to answer them.
3. Where am I to take these papers?
4. I must see her. It's important.
5. We were to meet at five but I was late.
6. As he couldn't join me I had to go alone.
7. You must admit that you are wrong.
8. Everyone is to wear a tie.
9. The manager was busy, so we had to wait for some time.
10. Who is to do this part of the work?
11. How am I to I understand you?
12. You definitely must let me know as soon as you learn anything new.
13. I have to spend an hour and a half every day.
14. "You must give up smoking," the doctor said to the patient.
15. Am I to discuss it with him?

Упражнение 9

Переведите на английский.

1. As my car often breaks down I have to take a bus.
2. What am I to do with this box? • Leave it in the hall.
3. How could you forget about it? You must always remember about it.
4. Do you often have to help your children with their homework?
5. When do you expect them? • They are to come on Tuesday.
6. As we had agreed Ellen was to buy flowers and wait for us at the bus stop.

7. Я должен связаться с ними?
8. Так как у нас было много багажа, нам пришлось звать носильщика.
9. Вы не должны критиковать детей в присутствии посторонних.
10. «Вы обязательно должны носить очки», — сказал врач пациенту.
11. И что я должен сказать, если он затронет этот вопрос?
12. Тебе придется остаться дома до тех пор, пока он не появится.
13. Он заболел. Кто должен выполнять его обязанности?
14. Он не смог купить билеты в театр, и нам пришлось остаться дома.
15. Ты должен сказать нам правду.

17.4 NEED

Need is used to express necessity.

Study the following examples:

1. You *needn't (=don't have to*) look after him. He is old enough.
2. Must I talk to him? • No you *needn't*.
3. You *needn't (=don't have to)* go shopping. We've got everything necessary.

NOTE:

NEED is mostly used in negative sentences!

It's more common to use *MUST* in positive and interrogative sentences.

7. Am I to get in touch with them?
8. As we had a lot of luggage we had to call a porter.
9. You mustn't criticise the children in other people's presence.
10. "You absolutely must wear glasses," the doctor said to the patient.
11. What am I to say if he touches upon this question?
12. You'll have to stay at home until he turns up.
13. He has fallen ill. Who is to take on his work?
14. He couldn't buy tickets to the theatre and we had to stay at home.
15. You must tell us the truth.

17.4 NEED

Need выражает необходимость.

Изучите следующие примеры:

1. Вам *незачем* присматривать за ним. Он достаточно взрослый.
2. Я должен поговорить с ним? • Нет, *не нужно*.
3. Тебе *не надо* идти в магазин. У нас есть все необходимое.

NEED обычно употребляется в отрицательных предложениях.

В утвердительных и вопросительных предложениях, как правило, употребляется *MUST*.

Exercise 10

Fill in the blanks with **MUST, NEED, TO HAVE TO**.

1. I have this newspaper myself. You … bring yours to show me the article.
2. You … cross the road at the red light.
3. We've got plenty of time. We … take a taxi.
4. If you want to stay in this country for a long time you … have a visa.
5. I … buy a new bag. They gave me a bag as a birthday present.
6. You … drive on the left in Great Britain.
7. … I tell her the truth? • No, you … . It isn't necessary at all.
8. You … say such things in other people's presence.
9. She … make any decisions. He decides everything for her.
10. The final day to pay the bill is tomorrow. So I … do it without delay. • No, you … . I've already paid the bill. I forgot to tell you.
11. He … ask his boss for a letter of recommendation. His boss offered to write one himself.
12. You … look for a present. I know what to give him.
13. You … shout at the children, otherwise we'll have to dismiss you.
14. I have a nice house in the country. I … bother about how to spend a vacation.
15. You … make him change his mind. He … give up his studies.
16. I'd better ask them for help. • Oh, you … .We'll manage to do it ourselves.
17. You … believe him. He is a liar. Everybody knows it.
18. You … tell him what to do. He seems to know the job well.
19. He … apologise. I'm not angry with him.
20. I … apologise. It wasn't my fault.

Упражнение 10

Вставьте **MUST, NEED, TO HAVE TO**.

1. You needn't/don't have to bring yours to show me the article.
2. You mustn't cross the road at the red light.
3. We needn't/don't have to take a taxi.
4. If you want to stay in this country for a long time you must have a visa.
5. I didn't have to buy a new bag.
6. You must drive on the left in Great Britain.
7. Must I tell her the truth? • No, you needn't.
8. You mustn't say such things in other people's presence.
9. She needn't/doesn't have to make any decisions.
10. So I must do it without delay. • No, you needn't. I've already paid the bill. I forgot to tell you.
11. He didn't have to ask his boss for a letter of recommendation.
12. You needn't/don't have to look for a present. I know what to give him.
13. You mustn't shout at the children, otherwise we'll have to dismiss you.
14. I needn't/don't have to bother about how to spend a vacation.
15. You must make him change his mind. He mustn't give up his studies.
16. Oh, you needn't.
17. You mustn't believe him.
18. You needn't/don't have to tell him what to do.
19. He needn't/doesn't have to apologise.
20. I didn't have to apologise.

Exercise 11

Translate into English.

1. Вам не нужно ему звонить. Я вам все объясню.
2. Ты должен отдохнуть. Нельзя продолжать работу, если ты устал.
3. Тебе не нужно покупать билеты Я уже купила два билета.
4. Все же ты должен будешь заплатить за разбитое окно.
5. Нам можно не торопиться. У нас еще есть время.
6. Вам не нужно провожать его на станцию. Я сам его провожу.
7. Мне не пришлось его будить. Он сам проснулся.
8. Вы хотите, чтобы я пришла пораньше? • Нет, не нужно.
9. Ты считаешь, я должен быть ему благодарен? • Да.
10. Я действительно должна принимать все эти таблетки? • Нет, не нужно.
11. Вы больны. Я останусь до тех пор, пока не придет ваш муж. • Не нужно. Я чувствую себя намного лучше.
12. Ей не нужно больше здесь оставаться, если она не хочет.
13. Не нужно обо мне беспокоиться. Подумайте о себе.
14. Ты не должен забывать о таких важных вещах впредь.
15. Не нужно об этом рассказывать, если вам не хочется.

17.5 SHOULD

Should is used to give advice or to say that something is morally right. *Should* is also used when you expect something to happen.

Study the following examples:

You *should* be there in time. (*I expect you to.*)

Such behaviour *should* be rewarded. (*it's morally right*)

You *should* consult the doctor. (advice)

One *shouldn't* take such words too close to heart.

Упражнение 11

Переведите на английский.

1. You needn't/don't have to phone him. I'll explain everything to you.
2. You must have a rest. You can't go on with the work if you are tired.
3. You needn't/don't have to buy tickets. I have already bought two tickets.
4. You will have to pay for the broken window after all.
5. We needn't/don't have to hurry. We have some time.
6. You needn't/don't have to see him off at the station. I'll do it myself.
7. I didn't have to wake him up. He woke up himself.
8. Do you want me to come earlier? • No, you needn't.
9. Do you believe I must be grateful to him? • Yes, you must.
10. Must I really take all these pills? • No, you needn't.
11. You are ill. I'll stay with you until your husband comes. • You don't have to. / You needn't. I feel much better.
12. She needn't/doesn't have to stay here if she doesn't want to.
13. You needn't/don't have to worry about me. Think of yourself.
14. You mustn't forget about such important things in future.
15. You needn't/don't have to talk about it if you don't feel like it.

17.5 SHOULD

Should обычно употребляется для выражения долженствования, желательности действия, совета.

Изучите следующие примеры:

Ты *должен* быть там вовремя.

Такое поведение *должно* быть вознаграждено.

Вам *следует* спросить (проконсультироваться) у врача.

Не следует принимать такие слова близко к сердцу.

Exercise 12

Change the sentences below using **SHOULD / SHOULDN'T**.

MODEL: He has lost his dog. (he, to put an advertisement in the paper)

1. He says he won't be able to organize the party himself. (you, to help him)
2. He refuses to take part in the competition. (he, to give his reasons for it)
3. I phoned him last night and he was already in bed. (you, not to phone him so late in future)
4. She spends all days in the sun trying to get a tan. (tell her to be careful)
5. He is drinking the fifth cup of coffee. (tell him not to drink so much coffee)
6. They are going on a hike. But the weather is awful. (they, not to go on a hike in such rainy weather)
7. The doctor says my nerves are bad. (you, to go to a health resort)
8. Your behaviour to him is cruel. (you, not to behave to him like that)
9. I understand that he is wrong. (tell him not to hush things up)
10. They are going on holiday. (they, not to take much luggage)
11. She completely disagrees with what they suggest. (she, not to sign any papers)
12. George is ill. (we, to visit him)
13. Clark always reads in bed. (tell him not to do it)
14. They have invited him to come and stay with them but he doesn't want to go. (tell him not to refuse the invitation)
15. He doesn't want to give in to our views. (tell him not to insist)

Упражнение 12

Измените предложения, используя **SHOULD/ SHOULDN'T**.

He should put an advertisement in the paper.

1. You should help him.
2. He should give his reasons for it.
3. You shouldn't phone him so late in future.
4. You should be careful.
5. You shouldn't drink so much coffee.
6. They shouldn't go on a hike in such rainy weather.
7. You should go to a health resort.
8. You shouldn't behave to him like that.
9. You shouldn't hush things up.
10. They shouldn't take so much luggage.
11. She shouldn't sign any papers.
12. We should visit him.
13. You shouldn't read in bed.
14. You shouldn't refuse the invitation.
15. You shouldn't insist.

Exercise 13

Translate into English.

1. Неужели это правда?
2. Возможно, он знает об этом.
3. Могу я видеть м-ра Мора?
4. Возможно, он понимает английский.
5. Мы отправляемся (должны отправиться) на рассвете.
6. Вы должны много работать над английским.
7. Идет дождь. Тебе придется надеть плащ.
8. Документы должны быть готовы к пятнице.
9. Детям не следует есть много сладкого.
10. Мне приходится много работать, поэтому я ложусь спать поздно.
11. Тебе не стоит с ним разговаривать.
12. Тебе не нужно сюда приходить.
13. Ему приходится готовить доклад сегодня, так как он не сделал этого вчера.
14. Вам следует послать ему приглашение.
15. Ему не пришлось возвращаться.
16. Я смогу купить тебе собаку, когда у нас будет большая квартира.
17. По новому расписанию у нас должно быть три занятия по английскому языку в неделю.
18. Тебе придется объяснить такое поведение.
19. Ты сможешь прийти завтра?
20. Ты можешь приходить в любое время.
21. Я думаю, тебе следует чаще его навещать.
22. Вам опять придется прийти завтра.
23. Мне предстоит встретиться с ним на этой неделе.
24. Его машина сломалась, и ему пришлось ехать на такси.
25. Ему действительно пришлось делать все самому?
26. Ты сможешь объяснить ему суть вопроса?
27. Ты действительно должен скрывать правду?
28. Вы должны были написать это сочинение еще на прошлой неделе.
29. Не может быть, чтобы он был дома.

Упражнение 13

Переведите на английский.

1. Can it be true?
2. He may know about it.
3. May (can) I see Mr. More?
4. He may understand English.
5. We are to start at dawn.
6. You must work hard at your English.
7. It’s raining. You’ll have to put on your raincoat.
8. The documents are to be ready by Friday.
9. Children shouldn’t eat many sweets.
10. I have to work hard that’s why I go to bed late.
11. You shouldn’t speak with him.
12. You needn’t come here.
13. He has to prepare the talk today as he didn’t do it yesterday.
14. You should send him an invitation.
15. He didn’t have to return.
16. I’ll be able to buy you a dog when we have a large flat.
17. According to the new schedule we are to have three English classes a week.
18. You’ll have to give reasons for such behaviour.
19. Will you be able to come tomorrow?
20. You can/may come any time you like.
21. I think you should visit him more often.
22. You’ll have to come again tomorrow.
23. I am to meet him this week.
24. His car broke down and he had to take a taxi.
25. Did he really have to do everything himself?
26. Will you be able to explain the point to him?
27. Must you really conceal the truth?
28. You were to write this essay last week.
29. He can’t be at home.

30. Ты сможешь развести костер, если пойдет дождь?
31. Ему действительно пришлось заплатить за это?
32. Вам придется отложить поездку. Мы без вас не справимся.
33. Не нужно (нет необходимости) говорить ему об этом.
34. Врач говорит, она должна больше гулять.
35. Вам не следует переутомляться. Вы еще не достаточно здоровы.
36. Возможно, он знает что-то такое, чего не знаем мы.
37. Фильм должен был начаться в семь.
38. Она не могла выйти замуж за него без согласия родителей.
39. Когда вы приедете, вы сможете сами все увидеть.
40. Я думаю, что вам не придется долго ждать.

17.6 Forms of the Infinitive

The Infinitive with CAN, COULD

To express disbelief, surprise or doubt in negative and interrogative sentences *can* is used with the following forms of the infinitive.

THE INFINITIVE			
Indefinite	**Continuous**	**Perfect**	**Perfect Continuous**
can do	can be doing	can have done	can have been doing
could do	could be doing	could have done	could have been doing

NOTE:

1. If the main verb is used in the negative form, the structure of the sentence should be changed.
2. **Can** sounds more categorical than **could**.

30. Will you be able to make a fire if it rains?
31. Did he really have to pay for it?
32. You'll have to put off the trip. We won't be able to do without you.
33. You needn't/don't have to tell him about it.
34. The doctor says she must walk more.
35. You shouldn't overstrain yourself. You are not well enough yet.
36. He may know something we don't know.
37. The film was to begin at seven.
38. She couldn't marry him without her parents' consent.
39. When you come you will be able to see for yourself.
40. I don't think you'll have to wait long.

17.6 Формы инфинитива

Инфинитив с CAN, COULD

Для выражения недоверия, удивления или сомнения в отрицательных и вопросительных предложениях *can* употребляется со следующими формами инфинитива.

He *can't know* about it. • *Не может быть, что* он *знает* об этом.

Can he *know* about it? • *Неужели* он об этом *знает*?

Can he *be telling* lies? • *Неужели* он *говорит* неправду?

He *can't be telling* lies. • *Не может быть, чтобы* он *говорил* неправду.

He *can't (couldn't) have done* it. • *Не может быть, чтобы он это сделал.*

Can (could) he *have done* it? • *Неужели* он это *сделал*?

He *can't have been working* all this time. • *Не может быть, чтобы* он все это время *работал.*

Can he *have been working* all this time? • *Неужели* он *работает* все это время?

He didn't understand you. • He *can't have misunderstood* you. (He *can't have failed to understand* you). — *Не может быть, чтобы* он вас *не понял.*

Exercise 14

React to the following statements. (Show doubt or surprise.)

MODEL: He is working.

1. He is talking on the phone.
2. He answered our letter at once.
3. He knows three foreign languages.
4. He is still telling them about his success.
5. He has been watching TV since morning.
6. She was so impolite to us.
7. She has been cooking dinner for three hours.
8. He absolutely forgot to get in touch with her.
9. He is still angry with me.
10. They refused to help us.
11. He has been living here for five years.
12. He has already had five cups of coffee.
13. My grandmother is in hospital.
14. The children are still bathing.
15. He has been practising the piano since morning.

Exercise 15

React to the following sentences. (Show disbelief.)

MODEL: He answered all the questions correctly.

1. He failed to come yesterday.
2. She didn't invite the Moors.
3. The child is hungry.
4. Mark is preparing a talk.
5. He has spent all the money.

Упражнение 14

Выразите сомнение или удивление по поводу предложенных высказываний.

Can (could) he be working?

1. Can (could) he be talking on the phone?
2. Can (could) he have answered your letter at once?
3. Can he know three foreign languages?
4. Can he be still telling them about his success?
5. Can he have been watching TV since morning?
6. Can she have been impolite to you?
7. Can she have been cooking dinner for three hours?
8. Can he have forgotten to get in touch with her?
9. Can he be angry with you?
10. Can they have refused to help you?
11. Can he have been living here for five years?
12. Can he have had five cups of coffee?
13. Can she be in hospital?
14. Can they be still bathing?
15. Can he have been practising the piano since morning?

Упражнение 15

Выразите недоверие по отношению к следующим высказываниям.

He can't have answered all the questions correctly.

1. He can't have failed to come yesterday.
2. She can't have failed to invite the Moors.
3. The child can't be hungry.
4. Mark can't be preparing a talk.
5. He can't have spent all the money.

6. He can't have been working here for six years.
7. She can't be still interested in the problem.
8. He hasn't finished the work.
9. Robert is washing his car.
10. She has been working in the garden since morning.
11. She is sleeping.
12. He has been choosing a present for her for three hours.
13. He didn't get promotion.
14. He is still fixing the shelf.
15. He has been riding a bike since morning.

Exercise 16

Translate into English.

1. Не может быть, чтобы он меня заметил.
2. Неужели это правда?
3. Неужели она мне лжет?
4. Не может быть, чтобы он тебя об этом спросил.
5. Не может быть, чтобы он меня не понял.
6. Неужели она забыла мой адрес?
7. Неужели он все еще нас ждет?
8. Не может быть, чтобы она была занята.
9. Не может быть, чтобы они все еще обсуждали эту проблему.
10. Неужели они смотрят этот фильм?

6. He can't have been working here for six years.
7. She can't be still interested in the problem.
8. He can't have failed to finish the work.
9. Robert can't be washing his car.
10. She can't have been working in the garden since morning.
11. She can't be sleeping.
12. He can't have been choosing a present for her for three hours.
13. He can't have failed to get promotion.
14. He can't be still fixing the shelf.
15. He can't have been riding a bike since morning.

Упражнение 16

Переведите на английский.

1. He can't have noticed me.
2. Can it be true?
3. Can she be lying to me?
4. He can't have asked you about it.
5. He can't have misunderstood me.
6. Can she have forgotten my address?
7. Can he be still waiting for us?
8. She can't be busy.
9. They can't be still discussing this problem.
10. Can they be watching this film?

The Infinitive with MAY

To express possibility or supposition in positive and negative sentences *may* is used with the following forms of the infinitive.

THE INFINITIVE			
Indefinite	**Continuous**	**Perfect**	**Perfect Continuous**
may do	may be doing	may have done	may have been doing

NOTE:

might have done is used to express reproach.

Exercise 17

Change the following sentences using **MAY** or **CAN**.

MODEL: 1. Perhaps he is working.
2. Is it possible that he is working?

1. Perhaps he is having lunch.
2. Perhaps it is true.
3. Is it possible that he came yesterday?
4. Is it possible that he knows the way?
5. Perhaps he has been dreaming about it for ages.
6. Perhaps he didn't know about it.
7. Is it possible that their car has broken down?
8. Perhaps the criminal has left the country.
9. Is it possible that he has lost his way?

Инфинитив с глаголом MAY

Для выражения возможности или предположения в повествовательных и отрицательных предложениях ***may*** употребляется со следующими формами инфинитива.

He *may be* a good doctor.	*Возможно*, он хороший врач.
He *may be* at home now.	*Может быть*, он сейчас дома.
He *may be speaking* with his friend.	*Возможно*, он *говорит* с другом.
He *may have been trying* to get you on the phone all this time.	*Наверное*, он *пытается* дозвониться до тебя все это время.
He *may have said* it for fun.	*Может быть*, он *сказал* это для смеха.
You *might have come* in time.	*Мог бы прийти* вовремя!

Упражнение 17

Измените следующие предложения, употребляя **MAY** или **CAN**.

1. **He may be working.**
2. **Can he be working?**

1. He may be having lunch.
2. It may be true.
3. Can he have come yesterday?
4. Can he know the way?
5. He may have been dreaming about it for ages.
6. He may not have known about it.
7. Can their car have broken down?
8. The criminal may have left the country.
9. Can he have lost his way?

10. Perhaps she isn't feeling well today.
11. Perhaps she has fallen ill.
12. Is it possible that he has been practising the piano all this time?
13. Perhaps he has lost the telephone number.
14. Perhaps he has done it on purpose.
15. Is it possible that he has been thinking about it the whole day today.
16. Perhaps he is playing football in the yard.
17. Perhaps she is walking her dog.
18. Perhaps he has been staying at home all this time.
19. Is it possible that he has been working in the garden all this time?
20. Perhaps his wife has asked them to come.

Exercise 18

Use **MIGHT** to express reproach.

MODEL: I haven't done it.

1. I didn't phone him yesterday.
2. She didn't tell them the truth.
3. We didn't wait for you.
4. I didn't meet him at the airport.
5. I haven't answered his letter.
6. I haven't packed the things yet.
7. She didn't tell us about their arrival.
8. I didn't explain anything to him.
9. He hasn't returned her the money yet.
10. I didn't speak to him yesterday.

10. She may not be feeling well today.
11. She may have fallen ill.
12. Can he have been practising the piano all this time?
13. He may have lost the telephone number.
14. He may have done it on purpose.
15. Can he have been thinking about it the whole day today?
16. He may be playing football in the yard.
17. She may be walking her dog.
18. He may have been staying at home all this time.
19. Can he have been working in the garden all this time?
20. His wife may have asked them to come.

Упражнение 18

Употребите **MIGHT** для выражения упрека.

You might have done it.

1. You might have phoned him.
2. She might have told them the truth.
3. You might have waited for us.
4. You might have met him at the airport.
5. You might have answered his letter.
6. You might have packed the things.
7. She might have told you about their arrival.
8. You might have explained everything to him.
9. He might have returned her the money.
10. You might have spoken to him yesterday.

Exercise 19

Translate into English.

1. Наверное, он знает об этом.
2. Возможно, он тебе не солгал.
3. Может быть, его вчера не было в городе.
4. Возможно, они все еще обсуждают эту статью.
5. Наверное, она ушла погулять.
6. Возможно ли, чтобы она лгала нам все это время?
7. Неужели он прав?
8. Возможно, она была вчера взволнована.
9. Может быть, он слышал об этом.
10. Может ли быть, чтобы они все еще выбирали подарок?
11. Наверное, он все еще ищет свой зонт.
12. Мог бы и помочь им вчера.
13. Могли бы и предупредить нас заранее.
14. Наверное, они все еще загорают.
15. Мог бы сразу показать ему это сообщение.

The Infinitive with MUST

To express supposition and strong belief in positive sentences *must* is used with the following forms of the infinitive.

THE INFINITIVE			
Indefinite	**Continuous**	**Perfect**	**Perfect Continuous**
must do	must be doing	must have done	must have been doing

REMEMBER

He *must have misunderstood* you.
He *must have failed to get in touch* with him.

Упражнение 19

Переведите на английский.

1. He may know about it.
2. He may not have told you a lie.
3. He may not have been in town yesterday.
4. They may be still discussing this article.
5. She may have gone out for a walk.
6. Can she have been telling us lies all this time?
7. Can he be right?
8. She may have been excited yesterday.
9. He may have heard about it.
10. Can they be still choosing a present?
11. He may be still looking for his umbrella.
12. You might have helped them yesterday.
13. You might have warned us in advance.
14. They may be still sunbathing.
15. You might have shown him the message at once.

Инфинитив с глаголом MUST

Для выражения предположения, основанного на уверенности, в повествовательных предложениях *must* употребляется со следующими формами инфинитива.

He *must be* at home now.	Он, *должно быть*, сейчас дома.
He *must know* about it.	*Наверняка*, он об этом *знает*.
The child *must be sleeping* now.	Ребенок, *должно быть, спит*.
They *must have agreed* with Pete.	*По-видимому*, они *согласились* с Питом.
They *must have been playing* chess the whole day today.	*Вероятно*, они целый день сегодня играют в шахматы.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

Он, *должно быть*, тебя *неправильно понял*.
Он, *вероятно*, *не связался* с ними.

Exercise 20

Complete the following situations using MUST.

MODEL: She is so angry with him. (he, to say something wrong)

1. Steve isn't his usual self today. (he, to be nervous)
2. They didn't meet yesterday. (they, to put off the meeting)
3. The teacher let Paul go home. (he, to look ill)
4. She is tired. (she/to have a rest, now)
5. She didn't stop to talk. (she, to be in a hurry)
6. He hasn't phoned yet. (he, to take the exam, now)
7. Don't disturb him. (he, to fix the bicycle, for two hours already)
8. (she, to misunderstand you) that's why she didn't answer.
9. Professor Crone isn't here. (he, to give a lecture now)
10. He is a good specialist. (he, to study the problem, for ten years)
11. They always appear everywhere together. (they, to be in love)
12. He knows everything. (they, to tell him about it, when they last met)
13. She is in the kitchen. (she, to do the washing up/now)
14. Billy has a black eye again. (he, to have a fight with Nick)
15. The child is upset. (his parents, not to buy the toy, he wanted to get)
16. He says he has a lot to do today. (he, not to translate the article yesterday)
17. They are glad so many guests have come. (they, to prepare for the party, for a week)
18. He is in the living-room. (he, to watch TV now)
19. He knows the town well. (he, to live, here, all his life)
20. His car is in the garage. (he, to be at home)

Exercise 21

Translate into English.

1. Он должен был ответить на ее письмо.
2. Он, должно быть, ответил на ее письмо.

Упражнение 20

Отреагируйте на высказывания, употребив MUST.

He must have said something wrong.

1. He must be nervous.
2. They must have put off the meeting.
3. He must have looked ill.
4. She must be having a rest now.
5. She must have been in a hurry.
6. He must be taking the exam now.
7. He must have been fixing the bicycle for two hours already.
8. She must have misunderstood you.
9. He must be giving a lecture now.
10. He must have been studying the problem for ten years.
11. They must be in love.
12. They must have told him about it when they last met.
13. She must be doing the washing up now.
14. He must have had a fight with Nick.
15. His parents must have failed to buy the toy he wanted to get.
16. He must have failed to translate the article yesterday.
17. They must have been preparing for the party for a week.
18. He must be watching TV now.
19. He must have been living here all his life.
20. He must be at home.

Упражнение 21

Переведите на английский.

1. He had to answer her letter.
2. He must have answered her letter.

3. Они должны были встретить м-ра Свифта.
4. Они, должно быть, встретили м-ра Свифта.
5. Он должен был навестить ее вечером.
6. Он, должно быть, навестил ее вечером.
7. Она должна была исправить ошибки.
8. Она, должно быть, исправила ошибки.
9. Он должен был купить цветы.
10. Он, должно быть, купил цветы.

Exercise 22

Translate into English.

1. Он, вероятно, никогда здесь раньше не был.
2. Должно быть, она спросила его об этом.
3. Он, наверняка, приехал рано утром.
4. Он, вероятно, все еще ждет вас.
5. Он, должно быть, бегает сейчас в парке.
6. По-видимому, эти люди уже давно следят за нами.
7. Должно быть, он любит мороженое.
8. Вероятно, его машина все же сломалась.
9. Должно быть, они уже давно знакомы.
10. Они, вероятно, играют во дворе.
11. Он, должно быть, никогда здесь раньше не был.
12. Он, по-видимому, ничего не читал об этом.
13. Они, должно быть, друзья.
14. Этот человек, должно быть, уже полчаса ищет свою собаку.
15. Он, по-видимому, все еще гостит у друзей.

3. They had to meet Mr. Swift.
4. They must have met Mr. Swift.
5. He had to visit her in the evening.
6. He must have visited her in the evening.
7. She had to correct the mistakes.
8. She must have corrected the mistakes.
9. He had to buy flowers.
10. He must have bought flowers.

Упражнение 22

Переведите на английский.

1. He must have never been here before.
2. She must have asked him about it.
3. He must have come early in the morning.
4. He must still be waiting for you.
5. He must be jogging in the park now.
6. These people must have been watching us for a long time.
7. He must like ice-cream.
8. His car must have broken down.
9. They must have been acquainted for a long time.
10. They must be playing in the yard.
11. He must have never been here before.
12. He must have read nothing about it.
13. They must be friends.
14. This man must have been looking for his dog for half an hour already.
15. He must still be staying with his friends.

The Infinitive with NEED

Need is used in negative sentences to say that something isn't or wasn't necessary.

THE INFINITIVE	
Indefinite	**Perfect**
needn't do	needn't have done

COMPARE

1. It was Sunday so I *didn't have to get up* early.
2. Don't you remember it's Sunday? You *needn't have got up* so early!

Exercise 23

Complete the following situations using **NEEDN'T** or **DIDN'T HAVE TO**.

MODEL: Why did you clean the whole flat yourself.
I could help you. You … .

1. I've bought you an ice-cream. • But I have a sore throat. You … .
2. I've come to get the books. • We could have brought them to you ourselves. You … .
3. I've made an apple-pie. • Well, I've also made one. You … .
4. It was warm. We were walking without our warm coats on. We … .
5. I left the house very early yesterday and had to wait for Clark for a long time. I … .
6. Why did you carry all these bags yourself? I could have helped you. You … .
7. The task didn't take me much time. The teacher asked us to translate only the first part of the text. I … .

Инфинитив с глаголом NEED

Need употребляется в отрицательных предложениях и выражает отсутствие необходимости.

You *needn't take* all these things.
You'll find everything necessary there.

Вам *не нужно брать* все это с собой. Там будет все необходимое.

You *needn't have taken* all these things.
You can find everything necessary here.

Вам *не нужно было брать* все это с собой.
Здесь есть все необходимое.

СРАВНИТЕ

1. Было воскресенье, так что мне *не надо было* рано *вставать*.
2. Разве ты не помнишь, что сегодня воскресенье? Тебе *не надо было* так рано *вставать*!

Упражнение 23

Отреагируйте, употребив **NEEDN'T** или **DIDN'T HAVE TO**.

You needn't have cleaned the whole flat yourself.

1. You needn't have bought it.
2. You needn't have come.
3. You needn't have made it.
4. We didn't have to put them on.
5. I needn't have left the house early.
6. You needn't have carried them yourself.
7. I didn't have to translate the whole text.

8. Why did you order so much food? We are not that hungry. You … .
9. It wasn't a formal party so nobody was wearing ties. The guests … .
10. Why did you ask him for money? I have some. You … .

The Infinitive with SHOULD

Should + Indefinite Infinitive is used to give advice.

Should + Perfect Infinitive is used to express reproach.

THE INFINITIVE	
Simple	**Perfect**
should do shouldn't do	should have done shouldn't have done

Exercise 24

Complete the following situations using **SHOULD**.

MODEL: He didn't apologise for his rude behaviour.
We are still angry with him. He … .

1. He went to the mountains last month and it affected his health.
   • He … .
2. She stayed in the sun too long yesterday and today she feels bad.
   • She … .
3. They didn't warn us that they would arrive. We didn't expect them.
   • Of course it wasn't very polite. They … .
4. He didn't tell us anything about his intentions. We weren't prepared.
   • That wasn't nice of him. He … .
5. We followed them and it was our mistake. They got angry.
   • We … .

8. You needn't have ordered so much food.
9. The guests didn't have to wear ties.
10. You needn't have asked him for money.

Инфинитив с глаголом SHOULD

Should + Indefinite Infinitive употребляется, если нужно дать совет.

Should + Perfect Infinitive употребляется для выражения упрека.

You *should follow* the doctor's instructions.
• Вам *следует следовать* советам врача.

You *should have followed* the doctor's instructions.
• Вам *надо было следовать* советам врача.

Упражнение 24

Отреагируйте на высказывания, употребив **SHOULD**.

He should have apologised.

1. He shouldn't have gone to the mountains.
2. She shouldn't have stayed in the sun so long.
3. They should have warned you.
4. He should have told you.
5. We shouldn't have followed them.

6. I know I behaved badly to him. Now he doesn't want to talk to me. • Of course you … .
7. She left the party without saying "good-bye". • It was so impolite. She … .
8. I couldn't keep silent. Now I see it was a mistake. I … .
9. It's a pity you didn't come to her birthday party. • She was upset. You … .
10. He has given up jogging in the morning. • It's bad. He … .

Exercise 25

Translate into English.

1. Вам следовало послать ему приглашение. Вы же были когда-то друзьями.
2. Скажи ему, что ему следует быть аккуратнее. Ты же знаешь, как неаккуратно он водит машину.
3. Не было необходимости повторять это дважды. Мы сразу все поняли.
4. Не надо было над ним смеяться. Вы его обидели.
5. Не стоит обращать внимание на его слова. Он не всегда думает, прежде чем что-нибудь сказать.
6. Сегодня не нужно готовить обед. Друзья пригласили нас в ресторан.
7. Тебе следовало перезвонить ему. Он ждал твоего звонка целый день вчера.
8. Ему не нужно было звонить в гостиницу. Мы всегда делаем такие вещи сами.
9. Тебе не надо было пить холодную воду. Вот теперь у тебя болит горло.
10. Доктор говорит, ей следует лежать в постели.
11. Ему следовало купить билеты заранее.
12. Не следует сажать цветы здесь.
13. Ей не нужно было брать напрокат машину. Зачем она это сделала? Она же знает, что может пользоваться моей, когда захочет.
14. Мне надо было последовать твоему совету. Теперь у меня проблемы.

6. Of course you shouldn't have behaved badly to him.
7. She shouldn't have left the party without saying "good-bye".
8. I should have kept silent.
9. You should have come to her birthday party.
10. He shouldn't have given up jogging.

Упражнение 25

Переведите на английский.

1. You should have sent him an invitation. You used to be friends.
2. Tell him he should be more careful. You know how carelessly he drives the car.
3. You needn't have repeated things twice. We understood everything at once.
4. You shouldn't have laughed at him. You hurt him.
5. You shouldn't pay attention to his words. He doesn't always think before saying something.
6. I don't have to make dinner today. Our friends have invited us to a restaurant.
7. You should have called him back. He waited for a call from you the whole day yesterday.
8. He needn't have called the hotel. We usually do such things ourselves.
9. You shouldn't have drunk cold water. Now you have a sore throat.
10. The doctor says she should stay in bed.
11. He should have bought tickets beforehand.
12. You shouldn't plant flowers here.
13. She needn't have rented a car. Why did she do it? She knows she can use mine whenever she wants.
14. I should have taken your advice. Now I'm in trouble.

15. Тебе следует больше тренироваться. Ты плохо играешь.
16. Не стоит читать в темноте.
17. Не надо было брать зонт. День сегодня солнечный и теплый.
18. Тебе не стоило отказываться от этого предложения. Оно разумное.
19. Тебе не следовало надевать новые туфли. Ты должна была подумать, что тебе будет трудно ходить.
20. Не было необходимости везти с собой туфли. Всем было понятно, что по городу удобнее ходить в кроссовках.

Exercise 26

REVISION Choose the modal verb.

1. I can't help you now. You (should have / must have) told me everything at once.
2. The garden is beautiful. The people who lived here (can have / must have) been keen on gardening.
3. I like both houses. I (can't / couldn't) decide which one I like more.
4. The flat looks tidy. It (could have / must have) been redecorated not long ago.
5. We know everything. You (needn't / mustn't) bother to tell more lies.
6. Customers (may/might) leave their cars in the car park behind the shop.
7. You (may not / can't) drive here faster than 30 miles an hour.
8. If your eyes are so bad you (are to / should) wear glasses.
9. The manager will be angry with me. I (must have / should have) posted these letters yesterday.
10. I've made a cake. • You (needn't have bothered / didn't have to bother).
11. We've run out of paper. I (need / will have to) go and buy some.
12. You (have to / should) close all the windows whenever you go out.
13. He (may not have / can't have) left without saying good-bye. He is a well-bred man.

15. You should practise more. You play badly.
16. You shouldn't read in the dark.
17. You needn't have taken your umbrella. The day is warm and sunny today.
18. You shouldn't have rejected the proposal. It is reasonable.
19. You shouldn't have put on your new shoes. You should have thought it would be difficult for you to walk.
20. We didn't have to take shoes. Everybody understood that it's more comfortable to walk about the town wearing trainers.

Упражнение 26

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ Выберите модальный глагол.

1. You should have told me everything at once.
2. The people who lived here must have been keen on gardening.
3. I can't decide which one I like more.
4. It must have been redecorated not long ago.
5. You needn't bother to tell more lies.
6. Customers may leave their cars in the car park behind the shop.
7. You can't drive here faster than 30 miles per hour.
8. If your eyes are so bad you should wear glasses.
9. I should have posted these letters yesterday.
10. You needn't have bothered.
11. I'll have to go and buy some.
12. You should close all windows whenever you go out.
13. He can't have left without saying good-bye.

14. You haven't had a holiday for a long time. You (are to be/must be) exhausted.
15. (Can/may) he have spent all his money? He got his pay only yesterday.
16. I (won't have/won't be able) to go to sleep until he comes. I must know everything.
17. I think I (can/will be able to) call on you next week.
18. They (needn't have bought/didn't have to buy) new skates for the child. The Smiths had given them a pair of skates.
19. What (were you to/did you have to) prepare for today's lesson?
20. (Might he/Can he) have left the house? He is ill.
21. I'm not sure where she is. She (may have/can have) gone shopping.
22. I don't know why he didn't greet you. He (may not/can't) have noticed you.
23. She left early. The baby-sitter phoned and she (was to/had to) go home.
24. He has got a lot to do this week. He (will have/will be able) to work on Sunday.
25. You (needn't/don't have to) look for a flat yourself. You can turn to an agency for help.
26. You (must have/should have) reserved a table beforehand.
27. We (are to/have to) meet at the club.
28. She is in the garden. She (must be/may be) planting something.
29. There were few people there. I (didn't have to wait/needn't have waited) long.
30. You can't wear such clothes in the office. You (are to/have to) wear a suit.
31. We are looking for a house. It (mustn't/needn't) necessarily be large.
32. You (should have helped/had to help) the old lady to carry the bags.
33. You (must have/might have) come on time. It's impolite to keep people waiting.
34. You (shouldn't have/needn't have) touched it. It's not yours.
35. I (must/should) do it. I have no other way out.

14. You must be exhausted.
15. Can he have spent all his money?
16. I won't be able to go to sleep until he comes.
17. I think I will be able to call on you next week.
18. They didn't have to buy new skates for the child.
19. What were you to prepare for today's lesson?
20. Can he have left the house?
21. She may have gone shopping.
22. She may not have noticed you.
23. She had to go home.
24. He'll have to work on Sunday.
25. You needn't/don't have to look for a flat yourself.
26. You should have reserved a table beforehand.
27. We are to meet at the club.
28. She must be planting something.
29. I didn't have to wait long.
30. You are to wear a suit.
31. It needn't necessarily be large.
32. You should have helped the old lady to carry the bags.
33. You might have come on time.
34. You shouldn't have touched it.
35. I must do it.

Exercise 27

REVISION Translate into English.

1. Не может быть, чтобы он уже сделал эту работу.
2. Тебе следовало подумать о последствиях.
3. Не может быть, чтобы он все еще делал эту работу.
4. Вам не нужно было приходить.
5. Неужели он так равнодушен к тому, что происходит?
6. Тебе следует больше гулять.
7. Неужели он был так нетерпелив с ребенком?
8. Не может быть, чтобы он не спросил разрешения.
9. Не следует так нервничать.
10. Вы, вероятно, приняли Барбару за ее сестру.
11. Они, должно быть, не приняли его план.
12. Не может быть, чтобы он принял участие в соревновании.
13. Может быть, они знают друг друга.
14. Им следовало выйти пораньше.
15. Наверное, она ждет вас в другом месте.
16. Может быть, они пошли погулять.
17. Возможно, ему это не слишком удобно.
18. Вам ни к чему было просить его о помощи.
19. Может быть, они отложили встречу.
20. Должно быть, у него сейчас много свободного времени.
21. Не может быть, чтобы он долго изучал эту проблему.
22. Вероятно, он извинился.
23. Тебе не следовало выбрасывать эти бумаги.
24. Тебе следует бросить курить.

Упражнение 27

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ Переведите на английский.

1. He can't have already done this work.
2. You should have thought about the consequences.
3. He can't still be doing this work.
4. You needn't have come.
5. Can he be so indifferent to what is going on?
6. You should walk more.
7. Can he have been so impatient with the child?
8. He can't have failed to ask for permission.
9. You shouldn't be so nervous.
10. You must have mistaken Barbara for her sister.
11. They must have failed to accept his plan.
12. He can't have taken part in the competition.
13. They may know each other.
14. They should have left earlier.
15. She may be waiting for you elsewhere.
16. They may have gone for a walk.
17. It may not be convenient for him.
18. You needn't have asked him for help.
19. They may have put off the meeting.
20. He must have a lot of free time now.
21. He can't have been studying this problem long.
22. He must have apologised.
23. You shouldn't have thrown away these papers.
24. You should give up smoking.

25. По-видимому, он работает здесь уже много лет.
26. Эти люди, должно быть, ждут автобус.
27. Должно быть, здесь целый день шел дождь.
28. Не может быть, чтобы они разговаривали так долго.
29. Он читает уже, должно быть, три часа.
30. Мог бы и объяснить мне мою ошибку.
31. Вам следовало быть с ним вежливей.
32. Он, вероятно, собирается в отпуск.
33. Возможно, он все еще обдумывает ваши слова.
34. Не может быть, чтобы он написал три пьесы за месяц. Должно быть, он очень талантлив.
35. Могли бы и предостеречь его от этого абсурдного решения.
36. Неужели он уже ушел?
37. Я должен перевести эти письма, или вы поручите это кому-то еще?
38. Здесь нельзя оставлять машину. Вам придется заплатить штраф.
39. Нам не пришлось подниматься пешком, так как лифт починили.
40. Неужели он все еще ее ждет?

25. He must have been working here for many years.
26. These people must be waiting for a bus.
27. It must have been raining here the whole day today.
28. They can't have been speaking so long.
29. He must have been reading for three hours already.
30. You might have explained my mistake to me.
31. You should have been more polite to him.
32. He must be going on holiday.
33. He may be still thinking over your words.
34. He can't have written three plays within one month. He must be extremely talented.
35. You might have warned him against this absurd decision.
36. Can he have already left?
37. Am I to translate these letters or are you going to ask someone else to do it?
38. You can't park here. You will have to pay a fine.
39. We didn't have to climb the stairs as the lift had been repaired.
40. Can he be still waiting for her?

UNIT 18 INDIRECT SPEECH

18.1 The main verb is Present

18.2 The main verb is Past

18.3 Modal verbs in Indirect Speech

Revision

18.1 The main verb is Present

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
He **says**, "… a statement…"	He says **that + direct word order**
He **asks**, "… a general question…"	He asks **if/whether + direct word order**
He **asks**, "… a special question…"	He asks **what/why… + direct word order**
He **says**, "… a command/ a request.. ."	He says + **infinitive (positive or negative)**

Exercise 1

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. Mother says, "Children, it's time to get up."
2. Richard says, "Sally, it's your own fault."
3. My sister says, "I'll be ready at seven."
4. The teacher says, "You are not attentive enough."
5. Nick says, "My brother knows three foreign languages."
6. Mary says, "I've seen this film twice. I like it very much.
7. Dad says, "Mum and I are going to the theatre tonight."

УРОК 18 КОСВЕННАЯ РЕЧЬ

18.1 Слова автора в настоящем времени

18.2 Слова автора в прошедшем времени

18.3 Употребление модальных глаголов в косвенной речи

Повторение

18.1 Слова автора в настоящем времени

ПРЯМАЯ РЕЧЬ	КОСВЕННАЯ РЕЧЬ
Ann **says**, "I know it."	Ann says **that she knows it**.
Ann **asks**, "Did you sleep well?"	Ann asks **if/whether I slept** well.
Ann **asks**, "What are you doing?"	Ann asks **what I am doing**.
Ann **says**, "Close the door."	Ann tells me **to close** the door.
Ann **asks**, "Don't tell him."	Ann asks **not to tell** him.

Упражнение 1

Переведите в косвенную речь.

1. Mother tells the children that it's time to get up.
2. Richard tells Sally that it's her own fault.
3. My sister says that she'll be ready at seven.
4. The teacher says (tells me) that I am not attentive enough.
5. Nick says that his brother knows three foreign languages.
6. Mary says that she has seen this film twice and she likes it very much.
7. Dad says that he and Mum are going to the theatre tonight.

8. My brother says, “I can’t drive well enough yet though I’m practising a lot.”
9. The teacher says to the students, “You mustn’t be late for classes.”
10. Mum says, “We must hurry. Our train leaves at ten.”
11. Rachel says, “I didn’t go to the party because I had a bad headache.”
12. Alice says, “Mum, I can go shopping. I’ve done my homework.”
13. Tom says, “I think, it’s no use arguing. Neither of you is right.”
14. Jack says, “I don’t know which story to choose. Both are quite exciting.”
15. Kate says, “I am not going to tell you anything. That’s none of your business.”
16. Reporters say, “The storm caused a lot of damage.”
17. Doctors always promise, “It won’t hurt.”
18. Ted says, “I’m sorry. I didn’t mean to hurt you.”
19. Mum complains, “Whenever I ask you to help, you are busy.”
20. My friend says, “I’m awfully tired. I haven’t had a good rest for ages.”

Exercise 2

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. Tom asks, “Jane, will you marry me?”
2. Lucy asks, “Mum, may I invite my friends to my birthday party?”
3. Nick wonders, “Will Ann cope with this task?”
4. My friend asks, “Is your mother a good cook?”
5. Walter asks, “Have you ever been abroad?”
6. The teacher asks, “Did you pay attention to the way the word is used?”
7. The teacher asks, “Is everything clear? Do you have any questions?”

8. My brother says that he can’t drive well enough yet though he is practising a lot.
9. The teacher tells the students that they mustn’t be late for classes.
10. Mum says that we must hurry because our train leaves at ten.
11. Rachel says that she didn’t go to the party because she had a bad headache.
12. Alice tells her Mum that she can go shopping as she has done her homework.
13. Tom thinks that it’s no use arguing as neither of us is right.
14. Jack says he doesn’t know which story to choose because both are quite exciting.
15. Kate says that she is not going to tell me (us) anything because that’s none of my (our) business. (She thinks that’s none of my (our) business.)
16. Reporters say that the storm caused a lot of damage.
17. Doctors always promise that it won’t hurt.
18. Ted is sorry. He says that he didn’t mean to hurt me.
19. Mum complains that whenever she asks me (us) to help her, I am (we are) busy.
20. My friend says that he (she) is awfully tired as he (she) hasn’t had a good rest for ages.

Упражнение 2

Переведите в косвенную речь.

1. Tom asks Jane if she will marry him.
2. Lucy asks her Mum if she may invite her friends to her birthday party.
3. Nick wonders if Ann will cope with this task.
4. My friend asks me if my mother is a good cook.
5. Walter asks me if I have ever been abroad.
6. The teacher asks us if we paid attention to the way the word is used.
7. The teacher asks us if everything is clear and if we have any questions.

8. My friend wonders, “Can your husband swim fast?”
9. Mum asks, “Are you all right?”
10. The newcomer asks, “Have you been working here long?”
11. Dad asks, “Children, are you going out tonight?”
12. The doctor asks me, “Does it hurt?”
13. Kate asks, “Did you use to write poems in your childhood?”
14. Tom wonders, “Mary, have you come to any conclusion yet?”
15. My friend asks, “Do you like skating?”

Exercise 3

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. Mary wonders, “Why have you changed your mind about going to the cinema?”
2. Tom asks, “Jake, what do you have to do with it?”
3. Wendy asks Jerry, “When did you make this journey? What countries did you visit?”
4. My friend wonders, “How much does it cost to go there by plane?”
5. The teacher asks, “Who knows the answer?”
6. William asks, “Brenda, what’s your favourite colour?”
7. Ann asks, “Nell, where did you spend your holiday?”
8. My grandmother asks, “What’s the weather like today?”
9. Nick asks, “How old is your brother?”
10. Fred asks a passer-by, “How can I get to the city centre?”
11. Tim asks, “Al, how many times have you been to concerts of this group?”
12. The doctor asks, “Mrs. Smith, what do you take for your cough?”
13. Mr. Brown asks, “Sam, where will you work when you graduate from the University?”
14. The headmaster asks the teacher, “Who did you ask to make a speech at the meeting?”
15. Diana asks, “Kate, when are you going to have a date with Pete?”

8. My friend wonders whether my husband can swim fast.
9. Mum asks me if I am all right.
10. The newcomer asks whether I’ve been working here long.
11. Dad asks the children if they are going out tonight.
12. The doctor asks me if it hurts.
13. Kate asks if I used to write poems in my childhood.
14. Tom wonders if Mary has come to any conclusion.
15. My friend asks if I like skating.

Упражнение 3

Переведите в косвенную речь.

1. Mary wonders why I have changed my mind about going to the cinema.
2. Tom asks Jake what he has to do with it.
3. Wendy asks Jerry when he made this journey and what countries he visited.
4. My friend wonders how much it costs to go there by plane.
5. The teacher asks who knows the answer.
6. William asks Brenda what her favourite colour is.
7. Ann asks Nell where she spent her holiday.
8. My grandmother asks what the weather is like today.
9. Nick asks me how old my brother is.
10. Fred asks a passer-by how he can get to the city centre.
11. Tim asks Al how many times he has been to concerts of this group.
12. The doctor asks Mrs. Smith what she takes for her cough.
13. Mr. Brown asks Sam where he will work when he graduates from the University.
14. The headmaster asks the teacher who she (he) asked to make a speech at the meeting.
15. Diana asks Kate when she is going to have a date with Pete.

Exercise 4

Put the following into Indirect Speech. Use the introductory verbs in brackets.

1. My friends say, “Don’t believe everything he tells you.” (to warn)
2. My Mum says, “Make a timetable of your studies.” (to advise)
3. Kate says, “Tom, remember to write to me.” (to remind)
4. My elder brother says, “Switch off the TV set.” (to tell)
5. Mother says, “Children, don’t make so much noise.” (to ask)
6. The doctor says, “Don’t worry, Mrs. Pitt.” (to ask)
7. The police inspector says, “Search the house.” (to order)
8. The teacher says to the students, “Start writing your test.” (to tell)
9. Granny says, “Don’t argue with your parents.” (to advise)
10. Ann says, “Bill, don’t tell my parents anything about it, please.” (to beg)
11. The doctor says, “Take these pills twice a day, Mr. Robinson” (to recommend)
12. My sister says, “Lend me some money, please.” (to ask)
13. Dad says, “Arthur, behave yourself!” (to tell)
14. My boss says, “Don’t interfere!” (to warn)
15. Angela says, “Tim, hurry up! Don’t miss your train.” (to tell)

Exercise 5

Translate into English.

1. Преподаватель спрашивает, сколько студентов в его группе.
2. Мой друг интересуется, чем знаменит этот город.
3. Старший брат Ника советует ему не совать нос в чужие дела.
4. Сэм спрашивает, давно ли ты его ждешь.
5. Билл говорит, что он и Том дружат с детства.
6. Мама спрашивает сына, чего он боится.
7. Пит говорит, что ему знакомо твое лицо.

Упражнение 4

Переведите в косвенную речь. В словах автора используйте глаголы, данные в скобках.

1. My friends warn me not to believe everything he tells me.
2. My Mum advises me to make a timetable of my studies.
3. Kate reminds Tom to write to her.
4. My elder brother tells me to switch off the TV set.
5. Mother asks the children not to make so much noise.
6. The doctor asks Mrs. Pitt not to worry.
7. The police inspector orders to search the house.
8. The teacher tells the students to start writing their test.
9. Granny advises us not to argue with our parents.
10. Ann begs Bill not to tell her parents anything about it.
11. The doctor recommends Mr. Robinson to take these pills twice a day.
12. My sister asks me to lend her some money.
13. Dad tells Arthur to behave himself.
14. My boss warns me not to interfere.
15. Angela tells Tim to hurry and not to miss his train.

Упражнение 5

Переведите на английский.

1. The teacher asks how many students there are in his group.
2. My friend wonders what this city is famous for.
3. Nick’s elder brother advises him to mind his own business.
4. Sam asks if you have been waiting for him long.
5. Bill says that Tom and he have been friends since their childhood.
6. Mother asks her son what he is afraid of.
7. Pete says that your face is familiar to him.

8. Я прошу тебя сказать правду.
9. Энн спрашивает подругу, кем работает ее сестра.
10. Элис спрашивает, где мы с тобой познакомились.
11. Она спрашивает, кто из нас умеет танцевать .
12. Она говорит, что хорошо проводит время.
13. Он говорит, что его родители уже переехали на новую квартиру.
14. Доктор просит никого не заходить в комнату.
15. Джордж спрашивает, интересуется ли Кейт искусством.
16. Он спрашивает, кого они уже пригласили на свадьбу.
17. Миссис Ричарде интересуется, останавливается ли этот поезд в Глазго.
18. Они говорят, что не помирятся ни при каких обстоятельствах.
19. Она спрашивает, почему они с ней так разговаривают.
20. Я советую вам не звонить ей сейчас.
21. Он интересуется, почему этот певец так популярен среди молодежи.
22. Он спрашивает, должен ли он вдаваться в детали.
23. Он говорит, что вчера поссорился с сестрой.
24. Она спрашивает, чем вы гордитесь.
25. Я прошу, чтобы ты сделал мне одолжение.
26. Джон говорит, что не уверен, сможет ли он справиться с заданием.
27. М-р Смит говорит, что не знает, когда его соседи вернутся из отпуска.
28. Я умоляю тебя не спорить с ним.
29. Она говорит, что понятия не имеет, сколько надо времени, чтобы добраться туда.
30. Мисс Марпл интересуется, знает ли уже полиция, кто виноват.

8. I ask you to tell me the truth.
9. Ann asks her friend what her sister is.
10. Alice asks where we got acquainted.
11. She asks which of us can dance.
12. She says she is enjoying herself (is having a good time).
13. He says that his parents have already moved to their new flat.
14. The doctor asks not to come into the room.
15. George wonders if Kate is interested in art.
16. He asks who they have already invited to their wedding.
17. Mrs. Richards wonders if this train stops at Glasgow.
18. They say that they won't make it up under any circumstances.
19. She asks why they are speaking to her like that.
20. I advise you not to call her now.
21. He wonders why this singer is so popular with young people.
22. He asks if he must go into details.
23. He says that he quarrelled with his sister yesterday.
24. She asks what you are proud of.
25. I ask you to do me a favour.
26. John says he isn't sure if he'll be able to cope with the task.
27. Mr. Smith says he doesn't know when his neighbours will return from their holiday.
28. I beg you not to argue with him.
29. She says she has no idea how long it takes to get there.
30. Miss Marple wonders if the police already know who is guilty.

18.2 The main verb is past

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
The Present Indefinite Tense	The Past Indefinite Tense
The Present Continuous Tense	The Past Continuous Tense
The Present Perfect Tense	The Past Perfect Tense
The Present Perfect Continuous Tense	The Past Perfect Continuous Tense
The Past Indefinite Tense	The Past Perfect Tense
The Past Continuous Tense	The Past Perfect Continuous Tense
The Future Indefinite Tense	The Future-in-the Past Tense

REMEMBER

Tenses are not changed when you report statements which are always or still true.

Exercise 6

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. "What do you do for a living?" I asked him.
2. "I usually take my dog out for a walk when I return in the evening," he said.
3. "My brother is working in a restaurant, but he doesn't like his job," she said.

18.2 Слова автора в прошедшем времени

ПРЯМАЯ РЕЧЬ	КОСВЕННАЯ РЕЧЬ
Ann **said**, "I **want** to leave *now*."	Ann said that she **wanted** to leave *then* (*right away*).
Ann **said**, "I **am leaving** *tonight*."	Ann said that she **was leaving** *that night*.
Ann **said**, "I **have seen** him *today*."	Ann said that she **had seen** him *that day*.
Ann **said**, "I **have been working** hard *this week*."	Ann said that she **had been working** hard *that week*."
Ann **said**, "I **arrived** *yesterday* (*last week*)."	Ann said that **she had arrived** *the day before* (*the previous week*).
Ann **said**, "I **was cleaning** the flat at 3."	Ann said that she **had been cleaning** the flat at 3.
Ann **said**, "I'**ll do** it *tomorrow* (*next week*)."	Ann said that she **would do** it *the next/ the following day* (*the next/ the following week*).

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

The teacher **explained**, "Water **boils** at 100 degrees C."
The teacher **explained** that water **boils** at 100 degrees C.

Упражнение 6

Переведите в косвенную речь.

1. I asked him what he did for a living.
2. He said he usually took his dog out for a walk when he returned in the evening.
3. She said that her brother was working in a restaurant but he didn't like his job.

4. “Are you going to see her off at the station?” I wondered.
5. He explained, “I have no idea what you are talking about.”
6. “Why is that man looking through the keyhole?” I wondered.
7. “He likes working on Sundays because he gets double pay,” his wife explained.
8. He said, “I’m going away tomorrow, mother.”
9. The teacher said, “The earth is round.”
10. “How do you feel?” asked Sue.
11. “You are always making such stupid mistakes!” his friend complained.
12. The children explained, “We’re waiting for the school bus, it’s late again.”
13. “Is there a speed limit here?” the instructor asked.
14. “Why are you crying so bitterly?” Charlie asked.
15. Nick wondered, “Where does he come from?”

Exercise 7

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. Roger said to Mag, “I’m terribly sorry I forgot to phone you yesterday.”
2. “Have you done anything like that before?” she wondered.
3. “How did you manage to find it out?” I asked Phil.
4. “My daughter has had a baby,” she announced.
5. The police inspector asked, “Did your wife see the accident?” “Actually, she did,” I admitted.
6. “Grandma, is it true that you have seen a flying saucer?” I wondered.
7. The lecturer said, “Galileo proved that the Earth moves round the Sun.”
8. She said, “I haven’t seen my schoolmates for ages. I don’t know where they are now.”
9. “Have you heard that Tom had an operation last week?” he wondered.
10. “When did you see him last?” Sally asked. “About a month ago,” I answered.

4. I wondered if he was going to see her off at the station.
5. He explained that he had no idea what I was talking about.
6. I wondered why that man was looking through the keyhole.
7. His wife explained that he liked working on Sundays because he got double pay.
8. He told his mother that he was going away the next day.
9. The teacher said that the earth is round.
10. Sue asked how I felt.
11. His friend complained that he was always making stupid mistakes.
12. The children explained that they were waiting for the school bus and that it was late again.
13. The instructor asked if there was a speed limit there.
14. Charlie asked why I was crying so bitterly.
15. Nick wondered where he came from.

Упражнение 7

Переведите в косвенную речь.

1. Roger was sorry that he had forgotten to phone Mag the day before.
2. She wondered if I had done anything like that before.
3. I asked Phil how he had managed to find it out.
4. She announced that her daughter had had a baby.
5. The police inspector asked if my wife had seen the accident and I admitted that she had.
6. I asked Grandma if it was true that she had seen a flying saucer.
7. The lecturer said that Galileo proved that the Earth moves round the Sun.
8. She said that she hadn’t seen her schoolmates for ages and she didn’t know where they were at that time.
9. He wondered if I had heard that Tom had had an operation the previous week.
10. Sally asked when I had seen him last. I answered that I had seen him about a month before.

11. “I’m sorry I’m late. My car broke down,” he explained.
12. “I swear, I didn’t do it,” he said.
13. “Did you have a good rest? Was the weather fine?” he asked.
14. “I’m travelling quite a lot with my present job. I’ve been abroad five times only this year,” she boasted.
15. “Our company has opened a new office in Paris,” he said. “Are you going to work there?” I wondered. “I don’t know yet,” he answered.

Exercise 8

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. “Where have you been? I’ve been looking for you everywhere,” he said.
2. “Do you remember what the criminal was wearing?” the policeman asked.
3. “She has been practising a lot recently. The concert is in a week,” her mother said.
4. She said, “I’ve been cleaning the flat all morning.”
5. “Why haven’t you finished yet? What have you been doing all this time?” John exclaimed.
6. “I’ve been studying German just for two months, so I don’t know much so far,” she admitted.
7. “Were you doing anything special at that time?” the policeman asked. “No, actually, I was sleeping.”
8. “The company has been working for a year and nothing like that has ever happened here before,” the manager informed us.
9. I admitted, “I know that she was looking for a new job when I met her.”
10. “How long have you been staying here?” Aunt Mary wondered.
11. I asked Nick, “Have you been travelling long?”

11. He was sorry he was late (He apologized for being late) and explained that his car had broken down.
12. He swore that he hadn’t done it.
13. He asked if I had had a good rest and if the weather had been fine.
14. She boasted that she was travelling quite a lot with her present job and that she had been abroad five times only that year.
15. He said that their company had opened a new office in Paris. So I asked him if he was going to work there. But he said he didn’t know yet.

Упражнение 8

Переведите в косвенную речь.

1. He asked where I had been and added that he had been looking for me everywhere.
2. The policeman asked if I remembered what the criminal had been wearing.
3. Her mother said that she had been practising a lot recently because the concert was a week later.
4. She said she had been cleaning the flat all morning.
5. John asked in surprise why I hadn’t finished yet and what I had been doing all that time.
6. She admitted that she didn’t know much so far because she had been studying German just for two months.
7. The policeman asked if I had been doing anything special at that time. I answered that I hadn’t as I had been sleeping.
8. The manager informed us that the company had been working for a year and nothing like that had ever happened there before.
9. I admitted I knew that she had been looking for a new job when I met her.
10. Aunt Mary wondered how long I had been staying there.
11. I asked Nick if he had been travelling for a long time.

12. “My brother was just leaving the house when the burglars rushed in,” I said to the policeman.
13. “I saw you at the bus stop at lunchtime. What were you doing there?” my husband asked.
14. “Is the book so interesting? You’ve been reading for the last three hours!” Mum wondered.
15. My elder sister said, “You are dirty all over. Have you been playing football again?”

Exercise 9

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. Walter said, “I won’t tell you anything! It’s not my secret.”
2. Dad said, “I think, Mum will be very surprised when she learns about it.”
3. “I won’t be able to help you if you don’t trust me,” Bill said to Rachel.
4. Mike said, “I’m afraid we won’t cope with the task, unless someone gives us a hand.”
5. “Come at 8. I won’t be busy. I’ll be waiting for you,” she said.
6. “Do you think he will make a good husband?” I asked. “I’m sure, he will,” Mum answered.
7. “I won’t wait for you if you are late,” Lucy warned.
8. “My parents won’t mind if you all come with me,” Tim assured.
9. “As soon as I take this post, I’ll get a rise in my wages,” my brother said.
10. “If anyone calls, say that I’ll be back soon,” she said.
11. “You’ll never see your child again if you bring the police,” the criminals said.
12. “Will you join us if we start this business?” my friends asked.

12. I told the policeman that my brother had been leaving the house when the burglars rushed in.
13. My husband said that he had seen me at the bus stop at lunchtime and wondered what I had been doing there.
14. My Mum wondered if the book was interesting as I had been reading for the last three hours.
15. My elder sister noticed that I was dirty all over and asked if I had been playing football again.

Упражнение 9

Переведите в косвенную речь.

1. Walter said that he wouldn’t tell us anything and added that it wasn’t his secret.
2. Dad thought that Mum would be very surprised when she learnt about it.
3. Bill told Rachel that he wouldn’t be able to help her if she didn’t trust him.
4. Mike was afraid that they wouldn’t cope with the task unless someone gave them a hand.
5. She told me to come at 8. She added that she wouldn’t be busy and would be waiting for me.
6. I asked Mum if she thought that he would make a good husband and she answered that she was sure he would.
7. Lucy warned that she wouldn’t wait for me if I was late.
8. Tim assured us that his parents wouldn’t mind if we all came with him.
9. My brother said that as soon as he took that post, he would get a rise in his wages.
10. She asked me to say that she would soon be back if anyone called.
11. The criminals warned that we wouldn’t see our child again if we brought the police.
12. My friends asked me if I would join them if they started that business.

13. The nurse said, “I don’t know what your mother will say when she sees all this mess.” “I do,” answered the child.
14. “If it goes on raining, we’ll have to cancel the competition,” the coach said.
15. “How will you find May?” Richard asked. “I don’t know yet,” I answered.

18.3 Modal verbs in Indirect Speech

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
can	could, would be able to
must	had to (would have to)

REMEMBER

If **must** is used for commands or prohibitions, to express advice or deduction, it always remains unchanged.

I needn’t → *I didn’t have to (wouldn’t have to)*

you/he needn’t → usually remains unchanged

should → remains unchanged

may → *might*

13. The nurse said she didn’t know what the child’s mother would say when she saw all that mess, but the child said that he did.
14. The coach said that if it went on raining, they would have to cancel the competition.
15. Richard wondered how I would find May. I answered that I didn’t know yet.

18.3 Употребление модальных глаголов в косвенной речи

ПРЯМАЯ РЕЧЬ	КОСВЕННАЯ РЕЧЬ
“I **can** prove it to you,” he said.	He said that he **could** prove it to me.
He said,“I **must** stay with her.”	He said that he **had (would have) to** stay with her.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

“You **must** be very proud of your son,” she said.	She supposed that I **must** be very proud of my son.
“**I needn’t** go there now,” she said.	She said she **didn’t have to** go there right away.
“**You needn’t** come again,” he said.	He said that I **needn’t** come again.
“You **shouldn’t** say so,” she said.	She said that I **shouldn’t** say so.
“**May** I go for a walk?” he asked.	He asked if he **might** go for a walk.

Exercise 10

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. The policemen wondered, “Can he be the man we’re looking for?”
2. Angela said, “If what I’ve learnt is true, I must go to the police.”
3. “You needn’t come tomorrow,” my boss said. So I needn’t get up early.
4. “The boy looks too pale. He must feel dizzy,” my wife said.
5. “You may take my car if you like,” David said.
6. “You must have another photo for your passport. This one is very old,” the official said.
7. “You mustn’t take anything without asking,” Mum said.
8. “Must you do it all now?” she wondered.
9. “There was nobody to help me so I had to do it all alone,” he complained.
10. “I think I’ll be able to do everything by the time you return,” Polly said.
11. “You mustn’t tell anyone what I’ve just told you,” she said.
12. “It’s an official party so you are to wear a tie,” she warned.
13. Nick said, “My tooth is getting worse and worse. I must go to the dentist tomorrow.”
14. Mother said, “You mustn’t play with forks, children.”
15. “You should be more careful,” Mike warned.

Exercise 11

REVISION Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. “Call the doctor if she gets worse,” he advised.
2. “I have a message for you,” said the stranger.
3. “What are you going to do with your old car?” I asked Rick.
4. “Did Jack actually see the accident?” I wondered.

Упражнение 10

Переведите в косвенную речь.

1. The policemen wondered if he could be the man they were looking for.
2. Angela said that if what she had learnt was true she had (would have) to go to the police.
3. My boss said that I needn’t come the next day. So I needn’t get up early.
4. My wife noticed that the boy looked too pale and thought that he must feel dizzy.
5. David said that I might take his car if I liked.
6. The official said that I must have another photo for my passport because that one was very old.
7. Mum said that we (I) mustn’t take anything without asking.
8. She wondered if I had to do it all right away.
9. He complained that there had been nobody to help him so he had had to do it all alone.
10. Polly thought she would be able to do everything by the time I returned.
11. She said that I mustn’t tell anyone what she had just told me.
12. She warned me that I was to wear a tie as it was an official party.
13. Nick said that his tooth was getting worse and worse and he would have to go to the dentist the next day.
14. Mother told the children that they mustn’t play with forks.
15. Mike warned me that I should be more careful.

Упражнение 11

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ Переведите в косвенную речь.

1. He advised me to call the doctor if she got worse.
2. The stranger said that he had a message for me.
3. I asked Rick what he was going to do with his old car.
4. I wondered if Jack had actually seen the accident.

5. “How do you get on with your parents-in-law?” my friend asked.
6. “Don’t open the door or answer the phone,” her parents said.
7. “The Sun isn’t a planet, it’s a big star,” explained the teacher.
8. Mother asked her son, “Are you sorry for what you did?”
9. Tom said, “I wrote to Jane the day before yesterday but I’m not sure she has already got the letter.”
10. “I was talking on the phone during the interval,” she said to me.
11. “My son is getting married next week,” he said proudly.
12. “Did you have much time for sightseeing during your journey?” we asked her.
13. “You must be starving if you haven’t had anything to eat since breakfast,” the woman said.
14. The reporter asked the criminal, “What part did you play in the robbery?” “I drove the car for the getaway,” he said.
15. “What do you miss most about your motherland?” I asked Fred.
16. “I’ve just got the letter I’ve been looking forward to,” Alice announced.
17. Mary said to me, “None of us knows when Tom will come.”
18. “My father found an ancient coin in the garden yesterday and he is going to take it to the museum,” she said to us.
19. The employer asked, “When did you leave school?”
20. “I’ll come as soon as I’m ready,” promised Ed.
21. “Why haven’t you told me about it before?” she asked me angrily.
22. “If you don’t study harder, you’ll have trouble at the exam,” the teacher said to us.
23. “What does it all mean?” Brenda wondered.
24. “You should tell me the truth, Al,” I insisted.
25. Speaking about the history of Moscow the lecturer said, “Moscow was founded in 1147.”

5. My friend asked how I got on with my parents-in-law.
6. Her parents told her not to open the door and not to answer the phone. (Her parents told her neither to open the door nor to answer the phone.)
7. The teacher explained that the Sun isn’t a planet but a big star.
8. Mother asked her son if he was sorry for what he had done.
9. Tom said that he had written to Jane two days before but he wasn’t sure that she had already got the letter.
10. She told me that she had been talking on the phone during the interval.
11. He said proudly that his son was getting married the following week.
12. We asked her if she had had much time for sightseeing during her journey.
13. The woman supposed that I must be starving if I hadn’t had anything to eat since breakfast.
14. The reporter asked the criminal what part he had played in the robbery and he answered that he had driven the car for the getaway.
15. I wondered what Fred missed most about his motherland.
16. Alice announced that she had just got the letter she had been looking forward to.
17. Mary told me that none of them knew when Tom would come.
18. She told us that her father had found an ancient coin in the garden the day before and was going to take it to the museum.
19. The employer asked me when I had left school.
20. Ed promised he would come as soon as he was ready.
21. She asked me angrily why I hadn’t told her about it before.
22. The teacher warned us that if we didn’t study harder, we would have trouble at the exam.
23. Brenda wondered what it all meant.
24. I insisted that Al should tell me the truth.
25. Speaking about the history of Moscow the lecturer said that it was founded in 1147.

26. Diana said, “I’ve never met him before. I can’t imagine what he wants from me.”
27. “What platform does the train leave from?” we asked the porter.
28. “Are you leaving today or tomorrow morning?” I asked my husband.
29. “I must go at once and tell her about everything that has happened,” said Dave.
30. “We’ll wait for you if you’re late,” they promised.
31. “I’ll keep an eye on your house while you’re away,” our neighbour said.
32. “When can I see my baby?” she asked the doctor.
33. “May I look at the pictures on the wall?” he asked the hostess.
34. The guide said, “We’ll be able to get there in an hour.”
35. “What will you do when you leave school?” the teacher asked us.
36. “If you don’t like the programme, switch to another channel,” she said.
37. “I was having breakfast at 8,” she recalled.
38. “Why did you have to leave so early?” they wondered.
39. “I’ve been ill twice this month,” she complained to the doctors.
40. Mother asked, “Children, whose turn is it to wash the dishes?”

Exercise 12

Insert **SAY** or **TELL** in the correct form.

1. I … him all about our plans yesterday.
2. I’m sorry I didn’t quite get what you … .
3. They … he knows three foreign languages.
4. Jack … me he had never had such a grand time.

26. Diana couldn’t imagine what he wanted from her as she had never met him before.
27. We asked the porter what platform the train left from.
28. I asked my husband if he was leaving that day or the next morning.
29. Dave said that he had to (would have to) go at once and tell her about everything that had happened.
30. They promised that they would wait for me if I was late. (They promised to wait…)
31. Our neighbour assured us that he would keep an eye on our house while we were away.
32. She asked the doctor when she could see her baby.
33. He asked the hostess if he might look at the pictures on the wall.
34. The guide said that we would be able to get there an hour later.
35. The teacher asked us what we would do when we left school.
36. She allowed me to switch to another channel if I didn’t like the programme.
37. She recalled that she had been having breakfast at 8.
38. They wondered why I had had to leave so early.
39. She complained to the doctors that she had been ill twice that month.
40. Mother asked the children whose turn it was to wash the dishes.

Упражнение 12

Вставьте **SAY** или **TELL** в правильной форме.

1. I told him all about our plans yesterday.
2. I’m sorry I didn’t quite get what you said.
3. They say he knows three foreign languages.
4. Jack told me he had never had such a grand time.

5. He … to us he didn't think it was right.
6. Promise you … them anything.
7. He … us all the details.
8. I … I … (not) her anything.
9. She begged me … her the truth.
10. … it in English.
11. They couldn't help me and … to consult the head office.
12. I couldn't believe she … it.
13. I … I wasn't going to do it.
14. Why did you leave without … goodbye?
15. … me you won't be angry.
16. Whatever you … I won't believe you.
17. He … me what I was to do.
18. She … to the shop assistant what size she needed.
19. To … the truth, I don't like the newcomer at all.
20. I did … something, but that was yesterday.

Exercise 13

Translate into English.

1. Он сказал, что они бежали всю дорогу, чтобы успеть вовремя.
2. Мама спросила, над чем я смеюсь.
3. Они извинились и сказали, что просто не поняли, что я имел в виду.
4. Он заверил родителей, что пошлет телеграмму, как только приедет.
5. Секретарь велела нам не опаздывать.
6. Подруга поинтересовалась, сколько времени мне надо, чтобы доехать до школы.
7. Полицейский спросил меня, знаю ли я, где сейчас находится мой брат.
8. Я сказала им, что обязательно узнаю его, если увижу еще раз, так как мы знакомы много лет.
9. Я объяснила, что мы должны встретиться в 4, иначе мы опоздаем на поезд.

5. He said to us he didn't think it was right.
6. Promise you won't tell them anything.
7. He told us all the details.
8. I said I wouldn't tell (hadn't told) her anything.
9. She begged me to tell her the truth.
10. Say it in English.
11. They couldn't help me and said to consult the head office.
12. I couldn't believe she had said it.
13. I said I wasn't going to do it.
14. Why did you leave without saying goodbye?
15. Tell me you won't be angry.
16. Whatever you say I won't believe you.
17. He told me what I was to do.
18. She said to the shop assistant what size she needed.
19. To tell the truth, I don't like the newcomer at all.
20. I did say something but that was yesterday.

Упражнение 13

Переведите на английский.

1. He said they had been running all the way to be in time.
2. Mum asked what I was laughing at.
3. They apologized and said that they had just misunderstood what I (had) meant.
4. He assured his parents that he would send a telegramme as soon as he arrived.
5. The secretary told us not to be late.
6. My friend wondered how long (how much time) it took me to get to school.
7. The policeman asked me if I knew where my brother was at that time.
8. I told them that I would surely recognize him if I saw him once again as we had known each other for many years.
9. I explained that we were to meet at four, otherwise we would miss the train.

10. Ребята спросили Джимми, сколько лет он жил с мачехой и почему он, в конце концов, убежал из дома.
11. Учитель сказал, чтобы мы придумали свои примеры.
12. Он поклялся, что когда-нибудь отомстит за смерть брата.
13. Мама спросила, почему мы притихли и не случи лось ли чего-нибудь.
14. Они объявили, что профессор читает лекцию в 5-й аудитории.
15. Мы сказали, что пойдем осматривать достопримечательности завтра, если не будет дождя.
16. Мэри поинтересовалась, что я читаю в последнее время.
17. Профессор спросил, удалось ли нам достичь чего-нибудь с тех пор, как мы начали работать над этой проблемой.
18. Мама пообещала, что, если Вэл еще раз что-нибудь украдет, она сама отведет его в полицию.
19. Я сказал, что думаю, что Виктор должен знать новый адрес Смитов.
20. К моему большому удивлению, она сказала, что рада снова видеть меня и ни в чем меня не винит.
21. Директор музея заявил, что выставка открылась 2 дня назад и продлится месяц.
22. Дик сказал нам, что они звонили и спрашивали, когда мы переезжаем, и пообещали прийти на следующий день, чтобы помочь нам.
23. Все недоумевали, почему они еще не женаты, хотя уже очень давно встречаются.
24. Ник сказал, что хорошо знает свою сестру и посоветовал не обращать внимание на ее слова.
25. Джейн сказала Марку, что познакомит его с родителями на следующей неделе, когда они вернутся из путешествия.
26. Ученик ответил, что дважды два — четыре.
27. Он сообщил, что его сестра не сможет прийти из-за того, что их мама заболела.
28. Элис сказала, что едва его знает и понятия не имеет, почему он так себя ведет.
29. Спрашивая о ее муже, я поинтересовалась, любит ли он делать все заранее.

10. The children asked Jimmy how long he had been living with his step-mother and why he had finally run away from home.
11. The teacher told us to think of our own examples.
12. He swore that he would avenge his brother's death some day.
13. Mum asked why we were so quiet and if anything had happened.
14. They announced that the professor was giving a lecture in room five.
15. We said that we would go sightseeing the next day if it didn't rain.
16. Mary wondered what I had been reading lately.
17. The professor asked if we had managed to achieve anything since we began to work at that problem.
18. Mum promised that if Val stole anything again, she would take him to the police herself.
19. I said I thought that Victor must know the Smiths' new address.
20. To my great surprise she said that she was glad to see me again and didn't blame me for anything.
21. The manager of the museum announced that the exhibition had opened two days before and would last a month.
22. Dick told us that they had called and asked when we were moving and promised to come (promised they would come) the next day to help us.
23. Everybody wondered why they weren't married yet though they had been going out together (they had been dating) for a very long time.
24. Nick said that he knew his sister too well and advised me not to pay attention to her words.
25. Jane told Mark that she would introduce him to her parents the following week when they returned from their journey.
26. The pupil answered that two times two is four.
27. He said that his sister wouldn't be able to come as their mother had fallen ill.
28. Alice said that she hardly knew him and had no idea why he behaved like that.
29. Asking about her husband I wondered if he liked to do everything beforehand.

30. Няня ответила, что не знает, что напугало ребенка и почему он плачет.

31. Нам было интересно, как они собираются осуществит свою мечту.

32. Макс объяснил нам, что его жена расплакалась, так как очень волнуется за сына.

33. Ирен попросила подвезти ее.

34. Они спросили, советую ли я им посмотреть спектакль, который видела на прошлой неделе.

35. Дэвид сказал мне, что если я не полечу на самолете, мне придется провести 3 дня в поезде.

36. Рут пожаловалась мне, что ей до смерти надоели его глупые шутки.

37. Учительница объяснила детям, что вода состоит из двух газов.

38. Тим сказал, что только что встретил знакомого, о котором ничего не слышал уже много лет.

39. Я сказала мужу, что занималась обычной работой по дому, когда услышала сообщение об этом конкурсе по радио.

40. Преподаватель сказал, что нам не нужно делать все упражнения письменно.

41. Она сказала, что не уверена, следует ли ей помещать объявление в газету, так как ей никогда раньше не приходилось этого делать.

42. Никто не спросил, какова цель нашего визита.

43. Она призналась, что так долго ждала этого дня, что до сих пор не может поверить, что он в конце концов наступил.

44. Глава полицейского департамента сообщил, что из тюрьмы сбежал преступник. Журналисты спросили, очень ли он опасен. Он ответил утвердительно.

45. Ричард сказал мне, что приехал по делу. Я поинтересовался, где он остановился.

30. The nurse answered that she didn't know what had frightened the child and why he was crying.

31. We wondered how they were going to make their dream come true.

32. Max explained to us that his wife had burst into tears as she was worrying about their son very much (as she was very worried about…).

33. Irene asked to give her a lift.

34. They asked if I would advise (if I advised) them to see the performance I had seen the previous week.

35. David told me that if I didn't go by plane, I would have to spend three days on the train.

36. Ruth complained to me that she was sick and tired of his stupid jokes.

37. The teacher explained to the pupils that water consists of two gases.

38. Tim said that he had just met an acquaintance he hadn't heard anything about for many years.

39. I told my husband that I had been doing the usual housework when I heard the announcement about that competition on the radio.

40. The teacher said that we needn't do all the exercises in writing.

41. She said she wasn't sure if she should put an advertisement in a newspaper as she had never done it before.

42. Nobody asked what the purpose of our visit was.

43. She confessed that she had been waiting for that day so long that she still couldn't believe it had finally come.

44. The head of the police department announced that a criminal had escaped from prison. The journalists asked if he was very dangerous and he said he was.

45. Richard told me that he had come on business. I asked where he was staying.

UNIT 19 THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

19.1 The actions in the principal and the subordinate clauses are simultaneous

19.2 The action in the subordinate clause precedes that of the principal clause

19.3 The action in the subordinate clause follows that of the principal clause

19.1 The actions in the principal and the subordinate clauses are simultaneous

THE PRINCIPAL CLAUSE	THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE
one of the Past forms	The Past Indefinite or The Past Continuous

19.2 The action in the subordinate clause precedes that of the principal clause

THE PRINCIPAL CLAUSE	THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE
one of the Past forms	The Past Perfect or The Past Perfect Continuous

19.3 The action in the subordinate clause follows that of the principal clause

THE PRINCIPAL CLAUSE	THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE
one of the Past forms	The Future-in-the-Past

УРОК 19 СОГЛАСОВАНИЕ ВРЕМЕН

19.1 Действия в главном и придаточном предложениях одновременны

19.2 Действие в придаточном предложении предшествует действию в главном

19.3 Действие в придаточном предложении следует за действием в главном

19.1 Действия в главном и придаточном предложениях одновременны

ГЛАВНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ	ПРИДАТОЧНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ
I **realized** that	she **avoided** me.
Nobody **could** understand	what **was going** on.

19.2 Действие в придаточном предложении предшествует действию в главном

ГЛАВНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ	ПРИДАТОЧНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ
Everybody **thanked** the students	who **had invited** the professor.
It **turned out** that	he **had been writing** poems since his childhood.

19.3 Действие в придаточном предложении следует за действием в главном

ГЛАВНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ	ПРИДАТОЧНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ
I **was** afraid that	they **would find out** the truth.

REMEMBER

The rules of the sequence of tenses are not observed when you speak about facts that are always or still true.

Exercise 1

Put the verbs in the correct tense form.

1. It … (to be) obvious for most people that Tom … (to be) guilty, though he … (to deny) his fault.
2. He … (not/to know) yet what he … (to do) in America.
3. I … (to have) a feeling that he … (to be) there for a long time and … (to know) everything about the family.
4. I … (to agree), thinking that it … (to be) what she … (to need) at the moment.
5. She … (to make) it clear to us that it … (to be) she who … (to run) the asylum for the last several years.
6. Atticus still … (to hope) that the jury … (to consider) the case without prejudice.
7. To make sure that the children … (to understand) what they … (to be to) do, she … (to hold) several rehearsals.
8. People … (to know) that Atticus … (to be) fair and that they … (can) rely on him.
9. Both Scout and Jem … (to doubt) if Atticus … (can, to shoot) the mad dog.
10. From the place where the children … (to stand) they … (to have) a clear view of everything that … (to happen) near the house.
11. The girl … (to have) a feeling that if she … (to break) the promise she … (to give) to her father, she … (somehow/let down/him).
12. To the children's surprise, Arthur … (to be) quite different from the person they … (to imagine).
13. Scout … (to get) sad when she … (to realize) that she … (to have) nothing to give Arthur in return for his help. She realized that he … (to save) her and her brother's lives.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

Getting ready for the trip I **read** in a reference book that pyramids **were built** over the tombs of dead kings and queens.

Упражнение 1

Употребите правильную форму глаголов.

1. It was obvious for most people that Tom was guilty, though he denied his fault.
2. He didn't know yet what he would do in America.
3. I had a feeling that he had been there for a long time and knew everything about the family.
4. I agreed, thinking that it was what she needed at the moment.
5. She made it clear to us that it was she who had been running the asylum for the last several years.
6. Atticus still hoped that the jury would consider the case without prejudice.
7. To make sure that the children had understood what they were to do, she held several rehearsals.
8. People knew that Atticus was fair and that they could rely on him.
9. Both Scout and Jem doubted if Atticus would be able to shoot the mad dog.
10. From the place where the children were standing they had a clear view of everything that was happening near the house.
11. The girl had a feeling that if she broke the promise she had given to her father, she would somehow let him down.
12. To the children's surprise, Arthur was quite different from the person they had imagined.
13. Scout got sad when she realized that she had nothing to give Arthur in return for his help. She realized that he had saved her and her brother's lives.

14. Poirot's acquaintances … (to be) ready to bet that he (never/to retire).
15. She … (to realize) that she … (to shiver) all over but she … (can/not) pull herself together.
16. When it … (to become) clear that the detective … (to recognize) Mr. Hoggin, the latter … (to give up) his plan without hesitation.
17. The criminal … (to have) no doubt that if he … (to have) an operation made, It … (to be) impossible to establish his identity and he … (to get away) with another crime.
18. At first Poirot … (to be) reluctant to take the case as he (to come) to Switzerland to have a rest.
19. Harold … (to be) in despair as he … (to understand) that the incident … (to put) an end to his career.
20. He … (to find out) that she … (to study) to become a writer an … (to offer) his help.
21. She … (to be) grateful that her brother … (to try) to calm her down.
22. Both men … (to be) displeased with the fact that Diana … (to involve) a stranger in the family affair.
23. Hugh … (to be) sure that he … (to go) mad and that's why he … (can not) marry Diana as the disease … (to go) inevitably to their child.
24. … (it/to be) possible that what Julia … (to suspect) … (to be) true?
25. When she … (to look) at herself in the mirror, she … (to do) so with a critical eye, wondering how he … (to view) her.
26. She … (to think) it … (to please) him to meet some of the people he … (to know) only from their pictures. She … (to realize) already that he … (to be) a bit of a snob.
27. But she … (to prepare) already her course of conduct for the declaration which she … (to feel) he sooner or later … (to bring himself) to make.
28. I … (can) see she … gradually (to get) rid of the inferiority complex she always … (to suffer) from.
29. She … (to have) an impression that he … (to take) none of them very seriously.
30. When she … (to write) in the letter that she … (to die) rather than … (to return) there, she really … (to mean) that.

14. Poirot's acquaintances were ready to bet that he would never retire.
15. She realized that she was shivering all over but she couldn't pull herself together.
16. When it became clear that the detective had recognized Mr. Hoggin, the latter gave up his plan without hesitation.
17. The criminal had no doubt that if he had an operation made, it would be impossible to establish his identity and he would get away with another crime.
18. At first Poirot was reluctant to take the case as he had come to Switzerland to have a rest.
19. Harold was in despair as he understood that the incident would put an end to his career.
20. He found out that she was studying to become a writer and offered his help.
21. She was grateful that her brother was trying to calm her down.
22. Both men were displeased with the fact that Diana had involved a stranger in the family affair.
23. Hugh was sure that he was going mad (had gone mad) and that's why he couldn't marry Diana as the disease would inevitably go to their child.
24. Was it possible that what Julia suspected was true?
25. When she looked at herself in the mirror, she did so with a critical eye, wondering how he would view her.
26. She thought it would please him to meet some of the people he knew only from their pictures. She had realized already that he was a bit of a snob.
27. But she had already prepared her course of conduct for the declaration which she felt he would sooner or later bring himself to make.
28. I could see that she was gradually getting rid of the inferiority complex she had always been suffering from.
29. She had an impression that he took none of them very seriously.
30. When she wrote in the letter that she would rather die than return there, she really meant it.

Exercise 2

REVISION

Insert the required tense form of the verbs.
Read the whole text first.

1. The late Henry Ground's funeral … (**to b**e) a very jolly affair. Relatives who … (**not**, **to speak**) for years … (**to smile**) at each other and … (**to promise**) to stay in touch. <…> Lying in his coffin, Henry … (**probably**, **to enjoy**) himself too. Once more, and for the last time on this earth, he … (**to be**) the centre of attention. … Everyone … (**to have**) a favourite story to tell about Henry. <…>

" … (**you**, **to hear**) about the practical joke he … (**to play**) when he … (**to be**) a student, the one with the road-menders? Some workmen … (**to dig**) a hole in the road. First, Henry … (**to phone**) the police and … (**to tell**) them that some STUDENTS … (**to dig**) a hole in the road, and that he … (**not**, **to think**) it … (**to be**) a very funny thing to do. Then he … (**to go**) to the workmen, and … (**to tell**) them that some students … (**to dress up**) as policemen and … (**to come**) to tell them to stop digging the hole. Well, you can imagine what … (**to happen**)! Total confusion!" <…>

2. Skelton … (**to get**) an uncomfortable impression that she … (**to be**) terrified of Grange. It … (**to be**) odd, because to all appearances he … (**not**, **to be**) a bad sort. He … (**to be**) knowledgeable and far from stupid; and though you couldn't have said that his manner … (**to be**) cordial, it … (**to be**) plain that he … (**to be**) ready to be of what service he … (**can**). <…>

Skelton … (**to be**) startled. It … (**to be**) a strange house he … (**to come**) into in a strange manner. He … (**to go**) into the overcrowded sitting-room and there … (to **find**) his host. He … (**to be**) worried by the evident poverty of the establishment and he felt that the Granges … (**can**) ill afford even the small expense he … (**must**) be putting them to. But he … (**to form**) already the impression that Grange … (**to be**) a quick-tempered, susceptible man and he (**not**, **to know**) how he … (**to take**) an offer to help. He … (**to make**) up his mind to risk it.

Упражнение 2

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

Употребите правильную форму глаголов. Сначала прочитайте весь текст.

1. The late Henry Ground's funeral was a very jolly affair. Relatives who hadn't spoken for years smiled at each other and promised to stay in touch. <…> Lying in his coffin, Henry was probably enjoying himself too. Once more, and for the last time on this earth, he was the centre of attention. <…> Everyone had a favourite story to tell about Henry. <…>

"Did you hear about the practical joke he played when he was a student, the one with the road-menders? Some workmen were digging a hole in the road. First, Henry phoned the police and told them that some STUDENTS were digging a hole in the road, and that he didn't think it was a very funny thing to do. Then he went to the workmen, and told them that some students had dressed up as policemen and were coming to tell them to stop digging the hole. Well, you can imagine what happened! Total confusion!" <…>

From J. Allsop "The Joker"

2. Skelton got an uncomfortable impression that she was terrified of Grange. It was odd, because to all appearances he wasn't a bad sort. He was knowledgeable and far from stupid; and though you couldn't have said that his manner was cordial, it was plain that he was ready to be of what service he could. <…>

Skelton was startled. It was a strange house he had come into in a strange manner. He went into the overcrowded sitting-room and there found his host. He had been worried by the evident poverty of the establishment and he felt that the Granges could ill afford even the small expense he must be putting them to. But he had already formed the impression that Grange was a quick-tempered, susceptible man and he didn't know how he would take an offer to help. He made up his mind to risk it.

3. Skelton … (**to go**) to bed, but he … (**can**, **not**) sleep. Though the heat … (**to be**) oppressive, it … (**not**, **to be**) the heat that … (**to keep**) him awake. There … (**to be**) something horrible about that house and those two people who … (**to live**) in it. He … (**not**, **to know**) what it … (**to be)** that … (**to affect**) him with this peculiar uneasiness, but this he … (**to know**), that he … (**to be**) heartily thankful to be out of it and away from them. Grange … (**to talk**) a good deal about himself, but he … (**to know**) no more of him than he … (**to learn**) at the first glance. To all appearances he … (**to be**) just the commonplace planter who … (**to fall**) upon evil days.

4. Grange's bitterness … (**to be**) greater than … (**can**) be explained by his financial embarrassment. He … (**to have**) little good to say of any of the white men in the colony. He … (**to seem**) to think that they … (**to despise**) him because he … (**to be**) native-born. He … (**to be**) a sour, disappointed fellow, and a conceited one. He … (**to show**) Skelton his books. There … (**to be**) not many of them, but they … (**to be**) the best on the whole that English literature … (**can**) show. He … (**to read**) them over and over again; but it … (**to look**) as though he … (**to learn**) from them neither charity nor loving-kindness, it … (**to look**) as though their beauty … (**to leave**) him unmoved; and to know them so well only … (**to make**) him self-complacent. His exterior, which … (**to be**) so hearty and English, … (**to seem**) to have little relation to the man within; you … (**can**, **not**) resist the suspicion that it … (**to mask**) a very sinister being.

5. "I … (**not**, **to speak**) to a white person for two years. I … (**to long**) for a good old talk," Mrs. Grange said.

Skelton … (**to tell**) her who he … (**to be**) and what he … (**to do**), but he … (**to discover**) that she … (**to question**) his boy and already … (**to know**) all about him. <…>

"I … (**not**, **to be**) to England for sixteen years," she said.

"You don't mean that? Why, I … (**to think**) all you planters … (**to go**) home every five years at the longest."

3. Skelton went to bed, but he couldn't sleep. Though the heat was oppressive, it wasn't the heat that kept him awake. There was something horrible about that house and those two people who lived in it. He didn't know what it was that affected him with this peculiar uneasiness, but this he knew, that he would be heartily thankful to be out of it and away from them. Grange had talked a good deal about himself, but he knew no more of him than he had learned at the first glance. To all appearances he was just the commonplace planter who had fallen upon evil days.

4. Grange's bitterness was greater than could be explained by his financial embarrassment. He had little good to say of any of the white men in the colony. He seemed to think that they despised him because he was native-born. He was a sour, disappointed fellow, and a conceited one. He had shown Skelton his books. There were not many of them, but they were the best on the whole that English literature can show. He had read them over and over again; but it looked as though he had learnt from them neither charity nor loving-kindness, it looked as though their beauty had left him unmoved; and to know them so well had only made him self-complacent. His exterior, which was so hearty and English, seemed to have little relation to the man within; you couldn't resist the suspicion that it masked a very sinister being.

5. "I haven't spoken to a white person for two years. I've been longing for a good old talk," Mrs. Grange said.

Skelton told her who he was and what he did, but he discovered that she had questioned his boy and already knew all about him. <…>

"I haven't been to England for sixteen years," she said.

"You don't mean that? Why, I thought all you planters went home every five years at the longest."

6. Skelton … (**to have**) a notion that in the searching look that Grange … (**to give**) him … (**to be**) mistrust and animosity. It … (**to flash**) through his mind that somehow he … (**to discover**) that Mrs. Grange … (**to talk**) to him and perhaps … (**to say**) things that … (**should/to be**) left unsaid.

7. For long months before it … (**to be**) due, these people … (**to plan**) their leave, and when they … (**to get**) off the ship they … (**to be**) in such spirits they … (**can**) hardly contain themselves. London. Shops and clubs and theatres and restaurants. <…> It … (**to swallow**) them. A strange turbulent city, not hostile but indifferent, and they … (**to be**) lost in it. They … (**to have**) no friends. They … (**to have**) nothing in common with the acquaintances they … (**to make**). They … (**to be**) more lonely than in the jungle. It … (**to be**) a relief when at the theatre they … (**to run**) across someone they … (**to know**) in the East (and perhaps … (**to be**) bored stiff by or … (**to dislike**)) and they … (**can**) fix up an evening together and have a good laugh and tell one another what a grand time they … (**to have**) and talk of common friends and at last confide to one another a little shyly that they … (**not**, **to be**) sorry when their leave … (**to be**) up and they … (**to be**) once again in harness.

8. Morton … (**to wait**) for us when we … (**to reach**) Ciro's. He … (**to look**) very sunburned in his evening clothes. Perhaps it … (**to be**) because I … (**to know**) that they … (**to be**) wrapped away in a tin box with moth-balls for four years that I … (**to feel**) he … (**not/to look**) quite at home in them. He … (**to be**) certainly more at ease in khaki shorts. Charlie Bishop … (**to be**) a good talker and … (**to like**) to hear himself speak. Morton … (**to be**) shy. I … (**to give**) him a cocktail and … (**to order**) some champagne. I … (**to have**) a feeling that he … (**to be**) glad to dance, but I … (**not**, **to be**) quite sure whether it … (**to occur**) to him to ask Margery. I … (**to be**) acutely conscious that we all … (**to belong**) to another generation.

9. "I … (**not/to sleep**) for a fortnight," said Charlie.

I … (**to express**) regret but … (**not/to ask**) the reason and we … (**to walk**) for a little in silence. I … (**to presume**) that he … (**to come**) with me in order to talk to me of what … (**to happen**), but I … (**to feel**) that he … (**must**) take his own time.

6. Skelton had a notion that in the searching look that Grange gave him was mistrust and animosity. It flashed through his mind that somehow he had discovered that Mrs. Grange had been talking to him and perhaps had said things that should have been left unsaid.

From W.S. Maugham "Flotsam and Jetsam"

7. For long months before it was due, these people planned their leave, and when they got off the ship they were in such spirits they could hardly contain themselves. London. Shops and clubs and theatres and restaurants. <…> It swallowed them. A strange turbulent city, not hostile but indifferent, and they were lost in it. They had no friends. They had nothing in common with the acquaintances they made. They were more lonely than in the jungle. It was a relief when at the theatre they ran across someone they had known in the East (and perhaps been bored stiff by or disliked) and they could fix up an evening together and have a good laugh and tell one another what a grand time they were having and talk of common friends and at last confide to one another a little shyly that they wouldn't be sorry when their leave was up and they were once again in harness.

8. Morton was waiting for us when we reached Ciro's. He looked very sunburned in his evening clothes. Perhaps it was because I knew that they had been wrapped away in a tin box with moth-balls for four years that I felt he didn't look quite at home in them. He was certainly more at ease in khaki shorts. Charlie Bishop was a good talker and liked to hear himself speak. Morton was shy. I gave him a cocktail and ordered some champagne. I had a feeling that he would be glad to dance, but I wasn't quite sure whether it would occur to him to ask Margery. I was acutely conscious that we all belonged to another generation.

9. "I haven't slept for a fortnight," said Charlie.

I expressed regret but didn't ask the reason and we walked for a little in silence. I presumed that he had come with me in order to talk to me of what had happened, but I felt that he must take his own time.

I … (**to be**) anxious to show my sympathy, but afraid of saying the wrong things; I … (**not**, **to want**) to seem eager to extract confidences from him. I … (**not**, **to know**) how to give him a lead. I … (**to be**) sure he … (**not**, **to want**) one. <…> I … (**to imagine**) that he … (**to choose**) his words.

10. Two or three days after this, since it … (**to be**) Pritchard's night out and he … (**to have**) no engagement, Richard Harenger … (**to dine**) by himself at his club. A page-boy … (**to come**) to him and … (**to tell**) him that they just … (**to ring up**) from his flat to say that he … (**to go**) out without his keys and should they be brought along to him in a taxi? He … (**to put**) his hand to his pocket. It … (**to be**) a fact. By a singular chance he … (**to forget**) to replace them when he … (**to change**) into a blue serge suit before coming to dinner. His intention … (**to be**) to play bridge, but it … (**to be**) an off-night at the club and there … (**to seem**) little chance of a decent game; it … (**to occur**) to him that it … (**to be**) a good opportunity to see a picture that he … (**to hear**) talked about, so he … (**to send**) back the message by the page that he … (**to call**) for the keys himself half an hour later.

11. I … (**to look**) at him reflectively Suddenly he … (**to lean**) forwards and … (**to give**) me a stiff courtly bow. I … (**to have**) a ridiculous habit of flushing when I … (**to be**) taken aback and now I … (**to feel**) my cheeks redden. I … (**to be**) startled. I … (**to stare**) at him for several minutes as though he were a dummy. He … (**must**, **to think**) me extremely rude. I … (**to nod**) with a good deal of embarrassment and … (**to look**) away. Fortunately at that moment the waiter … (**to hand**) me a dish. To the best of my belief I never … (**to see**) the fellow before. I … (**to ask**) myself whether his bow … (**to be**) due to my insistent stare, which … (**to make**) him think that he … (**to meet**) me somewhere, or whether I really … (**to run**) across him and completely … (**to forget**). I … (**to have**) a bad memory for faces and I … (**to have**) in this case the excuse that he … (**to look**) exactly like a great many other people. <…>

I was anxious to show my sympathy, but afraid of saying the wrong things; I didn't want to seem eager to extract confidences from him. I didn't know how to give him a lead. I was sure he didn't want one. <…> I imagined that he was choosing his words.

From W. S. Maugham "Virtue"

10. Two or three days after this, since it was Pritchard's night out and he had no engagement, Richard Harenger was dining by himself at his club. A page-boy came to him and told him that they had just rung up from his flat to say that he had gone out without his keys and should they be brought along to him in a taxi? He put his hand to his pocket. It was a fact. By a singular chance he had forgotten to replace them when he had changed into a blue serge suit before coming to dinner. His intention had been to play bridge, but it was an off-night at the club and there seemed little chance of a decent game; it occurred to him that it would be a good opportunity to see a picture that he had heard talked about, so he sent back the message by the page that he would call for the keys himself half an hour later.

From W.S. Maugham "The Treasure"

11. I looked at him reflectively. Suddenly he leaned forwards and gave me a stiff courtly bow. I have a ridiculous habit of flushing when I am taken aback and now I felt my cheeks redden. I was startled. I had been staring at him for several minutes as though he were a dummy. He must have thought me extremely rude. I nodded with a good deal of embarrassment and looked away. Fortunately at that moment the waiter was handing (handed) me a dish. To the best of my belief I had never seen the fellow before. I asked myself whether his bow was due to my insistent stare, which made him think that he had met me somewhere, or whether I had really run across him and completely forgotten. I have a bad memory for faces and I had in this case the excuse that he looked exactly like a great many other people. <…>

He … (**to finish**) his dinner before me. He … (**to get**) up, but on his way out … (**to stop**) at my table. He … (**to stretch**) out his hand. “How do you do?” he … (**to say**). “I … (**not**, **to recognize**) you when you first … (**to come**) in.” <…>

It … (**to be**) evident that he … (**to know**) me and evident too that he … (**to have**) no notion that I also … (**not**, **to know**) him.

12. Presently I … (**to finish**) my dinner and … (**to go**) into the lounge. He … (**to sit**) in a large arm-chair and when he … (**to see**) me he … (**to call**) a waiter. I … (**to sit**) down. The waiter … (**to come**) up and he … (**to order**) coffee and liqueurs. He … (**to speak**) Italian very well. I … (**to wonder**) by what means I … (**can**) find out who he … (**to be**) without offending him. People … (**to be**) always a little disconcerted when you … (**not**, **to recognize**) them. <…> The excellence of his Italian … (**to recall**) him to me. I … (**to remember**) who he … (**to be**) and … (**to remember**) at the same time that I … (**not**, **to like**) him.

13. I … (**can/not**) surmise what … (**to induce**) him to invite me to have coffee with him. It … (**to be**) true he … (**to be**) alone, but I … (**should**, **to suppose**) he … (**to find**) his thoughts excellent company, and I … (**can**, **not**) believe he … (**to imagine**) that I … (**to have**) anything to say that … (**to interest**) him. Nevertheless I … (**can**, **not**) but see that he … (**to do**) his dreary best to be affable. He … (**to remind**) me of where we … (**to meet**) last and we … (**to talk**) for a moment of common friends in London. He … (**to ask**) me how I … (**to come**) to be in Rome at this season and I … (**to tell**) him. He … (**to volunteer**) the information that he … (**to arrive**) from Brindisi. Our conversation … (**not**, **to go**) easily and I … (**to make**) up my mind that as soon as I civilly … (**can**) I … (**to get**) up and leave him. But presently I … (**to have**) an odd sensation, I hardly … (**to know**) what … (**to cause**) it, that he … (**to be**) conscious of this and … (**to be**) desperately anxious not to give me the opportunity. I … (**to be**) surprised. I … (**to notice**) that whenever I … (**to pause**) he … (**to break**) in with a new topic. He … (**to try**) to find something to interest me so that I … (**to stay**). He … (**to strain**) every nerve to be agreeable. Surely he … (**can**, **not**) be lonely; with his diplomatic connections he … (**must**) know plenty of people with whom he … (**can**, **to spend**) the evening. I … (**to wonder**) indeed that he … (**not**, **to dine**) at the Embassy; even though it … (**to be**) summer there … (**must**) be someone that he … (**to know**). I … (to notice) also that he never … (**to smile**). <…>

He finished his dinner before me. He got up, but on his way out stopped at my table. He stretched out his hand. “How do you do?” he said. “I didn’t recognize you when you first came in.” <…>

It was evident that he knew me and evident too that he had no notion that I didn’t also know him.

12. Presently I finished my dinner and went into the lounge. He was sitting in a large arm-chair and when he saw me he called the waiter. I sat down. The waiter came up and he ordered coffee and liqueurs. He spoke Italian very well. I was wondering by what means I could find out who he was without offending him. People are always a little disconcerted when you don’t recognize them. <…> The excellence of his Italian recalled him to me. I remembered who he was and remembered at the same time that I didn’t like him.

13. I couldn’t surmise what had induced him to invite me to have coffee with him. It is true he was alone, but I should have supposed he found his thoughts excellent company, and I couldn’t believe he imagined that I had anything to say that would interest him. Nevertheless I couldn’t but see that he was doing his dreary best to be affable. He reminded me of where we had met last and we talked for a moment of common friends in London. He asked me how I came to be in Rome at this season and I told him. He volunteered the information that he had arrived from Brindisi. Our conversation didn’t go easily and I made up my mind that as soon as I civilly could I would get up and leave him. But presently I had an odd sensation, I hardly knew what caused it, that he was conscious of this and was desperately anxious not to give me the opportunity. I was surprised. I noticed that whenever I paused he broke in with a new topic. He was trying to find something to interest me so that I would stay. He was straining every nerve to be agreeable. Surely he couldn’t be lonely; with his diplomatic connexions he must know plenty of people with whom he could spend the evening. I wondered indeed that he was not dining at the Embassy; even though it was summer there must be someone that he knew. I noticed also that he never smiled. <…>

Though I … (**not**, **to like**) him, though he … (**to mean**) nothing to me and to be with him … (**to irk**) me somewhat, I … (**to be**) against my will a trifle interested. <…> I … (**to feel)** very tired, but now I … (**to grow**) alert. <…> I … (**to put**) aside the thought that … (**to come**) to me that he … (**to write**) a play and … (**to want**) my advice. <…> No, it … (**not**, **to be**) that. A single man in Rome, of aesthetic leanings, … (**to be**) liable to get into trouble, and I … (**to ask**) myself whether he … (**to get**) into some difficulty to extricate himself from which the Embassy … (**to be**) the last place he … (**can**) go to.

14. On getting home Elliot … (**to tell**) Mrs. Bradley that Larry … (**to refuse**) Henry Maturin's offer. Isabel … (**to lunch**) with girl friends and … (**to come**) in while they still … (**to talk**) about it. They … (**to tell**) her. I … (**to gather**) from Elliot's account of the conversation that … (**to follow**) that he … (**to express**) himself with considerable eloquence. <…>

I don't know what Isabel … (**to answer**) to all this, but she … (**to be**) sensible enough to see that her elders … (**to have**) reason on their side. All the young men of her acquaintance … (**to study**) to enter some profession or already busy in the office. Larry … (**can**) hardly expect to live the rest of his life on his distinguished record in the air corps. The war … (**to be**) over, everyone … (**to be**) sick of it and anxious only to forget about it as quickly as possible. The result of the discussion … (**to be**) that Isabel … (**to agree**) to have the matter out with Larry once and for all. Mrs. Bradley … (**to suggest**) that Isabel should ask him to drive her down to Marvin. She … (**to order**) new curtains for the living-room and … (**to mislay**) the measurements, so she … (**to want**) Isabel to take them again.

15. I … (**to know**) her too little to say anything directly about what Elliot … (**to tell**) me, but I … (**to have**) something to say that I … (**to think**) she … (**may**) be glad to hear.

Though I didn't like him, though he meant nothing to me and to be with him irked me somewhat, I was against my will a trifle interested. <…> I had been feeling very tired, but now I grew alert. <…> I put aside the thought that had come to me that he had written (was writing) a play and wanted my advice. <…> No, it wasn't that. A single man in Rome, of aesthetic leanings, is liable to get into trouble, and I asked myself whether he had got into some difficulty to extricate himself from which the Embassy was the last place he could go to.

From W.S. Maugham "The Human Element"

14. On getting home Elliot told Mrs. Bradley that Larry had refused Henry Maturin's offer. Isabel had been lunching with girl friends and came in while they were still talking about it. They told her. I gathered from Elliot's account of the conversation that followed that he had expressed himself with considerable eloquence. <…>

I don't know what Isabel answered to all this, but she was sensible enough to see that her elders had reason on their side. All the young men of her acquaintance were studying to enter some profession or already busy in the office. Larry could hardly expect to live the rest of his life on his distinguished record in the air corps. The war was over, everyone was sick of it and anxious only to forget about it as quickly as possible. The result of the discussion was that Isabel agreed to have the matter out with Larry once and for all. Mrs. Bradley suggested that Isabel should ask him to drive her down to Marvin. She was ordering new curtains for the living-room and had mislaid the measurements, so she wanted Isabel to take them again.

15. I knew her too little to say anything directly about what Elliot had told me, but I had something to say that I thought she might be glad to hear.

"I … (**to see**) your young man the other day in the club," I … (**to remark**) casually. "Oh, … you?"

She … (**to speak**) as casually as I but I … (**to perceive**) that she … (**to be**) instantly alert. Her eyes … (**to grow**) watchful and … (**to think**) I … (**to read**) in them something like apprehension.

"He … (**to read**) in the library. I … (**to be**) very much impress-by his power of concentration. He … (**to read**) when I … (**to go**) in soon after ten, he still … (**to read**) when I … (**to go**) back after lunch, and he … (**to read**) when I … (**to go**) in again on my way out to dinner. I … (**not**, **to believe**) he … (**to move**) from his chair for the best part of ten hours.

"What … (**he**, **to read**)?"

"William James's Principles of Psychology."

She … (**to look**) down so that I … (**to have**) no means of knowing how what I … (**to say**) … (**to affect**) her, but I … (**to have**) a notion that she … (**to be**) at once puzzled and relieved. I was a that moment fetched by my host who … (**to want**) me to play bridge and by the time the game … (**to break**) up Isabel and he mother … (**to go**).

16. I … (**not**, **to see**) Elliot till he … (**to come**) to London toward the end of June in the following year. I … (**to ask**) him whether Larry after all … (**to go**) to Paris. He … (**to have**). I … (**to be**) faintly amused at Elliot's exasperation with him.

"I had a kind of sneaking sympathy for the boy. I … (**can**, **not**) blame him for wanting to spend a couple of years in Paris and I … (**to be**) prepared to launch him. I … (**to tell**) him to let me know the moment he arrived, but it … (**to be**) only when Louisa … (**to write**) and … (**to tell**) me he … (**to be**) there that I … (**to know**) he … (**to come**). I … (**to write**) to him care of the American Express, which … (**to be**) the address she … (**to give**) me, and … (**to ask**) him to come and dine to meet some of the people I … (**to think**) he … (ought) to know; I … (**to think**) I … (**to try**) him out with the Franco-American set <…>, and … (**you**, **to know**) what he … (**to answer**)? He … (**to say**) he … (**to be**) sorry he … (**can**, **not**) come, but he … (**not**, **to bring**) any evening clothes with him."…

"He … (**to reply**) to my letter on a sheet of nasty paper with the heading of a cafe in the Latin Quarter and when I … (**to write**) back I … (**to ask**) him to let me know where he … (**to stay**).

"I saw your young man the other day in the club," I remarked casually. "Oh, did you?"

She spoke as casually as I had, but I perceived that she was instantly alert. Her eyes grew watchful and I thought I read in them something like apprehension.

"He was reading in the library. I was very much impressed by his power of concentration. He was reading when I went in soon after ten, he was still reading when I went back after lunch, and he was reading when I went in again on my way out to dinner. I don't believe he had moved from his chair for the best part of ten hours.

"What was he reading?"

"William James's Principles of Psychology."

She looked down so that I had no means of knowing how what I had said affected her, but I had a notion that she was at once puzzled and relieved. I was at that moment fetched by my host who wanted me to play bridge and by the time the game broke up Isabel and her mother had gone.

16. I didn't see Elliot till he came to London towards the end of June in the following year. I asked him whether Larry after all had gone to Paris. He had. I was faintly amused at Elliot's exasperation with him.

"I had a kind of sneaking sympathy for the boy. I couldn't blame him for wanting to spend a couple of years in Paris and I was prepared to launch him. I told him to let me know the moment he arrived, but it was only when Louisa wrote and told me he was there that I knew he had come. I wrote to him care of the American Express, which was the address she had given me, and asked him to come and dine to meet some of the people I thought he ought to know; I thought I would try him out with the Franco-American set <…>, and do you know what he answered? He said he was sorry he couldn't come, but he hadn't brought any evening clothes with him." …

"He replied to my letter on a sheet of nasty paper with the heading of a cafe in the Latin Quarter and when I wrote back I asked him to let me know where he was staying.

I … (**to feel**) I … (**must**) do something about him for Isabel's sake, and I … (**to think**) perhaps he … (**to be**) shy — I … (**to mean**) I … (**can**, **not**) believe that any young fellow in his senses … (**can**) come to Paris without evening clothes, and in any case there … (**to be**) tolerable tailors there, so I … (**to ask**) him to lunch and … (**to say**) it … (**to be**) quite a small party, and would you believe it, he … (**not**, **only**, **to ignore**) my request to give me some other address than the American Express, but he … (**to say**) he never … (**to eat**) luncheon.

17. He … (**to be**) curious to know about my journey in China and … (**to listen**) attentively to what I … (**to tell**) him; but when I … (**to try**) to get him to talk about himself, I … (**to fail**). He … (**to be**) so uncommunicative that I … (**to be**) forced to the conclusion that he … (**to ask**) me to lunch with him merely to enjoy my company. I … (**to be**) pleased, but baffled. We … (**no sooner/to finish**) our coffee than he … (**to call**) for the bill, … (**to pay**) it, and … (**to get**) up.

18. Mrs. Bradley … (**to tell**) him then why they … (**to come**) to Europe sooner than they at first … (**to intend**). She … (**to find**) herself in ill-health, and the doctors … (**to inform**) her that she … (**to suffer**) from diabetes. It … (**not**, **to be**) serious, and by attention to her diet and taking moderate doses of insulin there … (**to be**) no reason why she shouldn't live for a good many years, but the knowledge that she … (**to have**) an incurable disease … (**to make**) her anxious to see Isabel settled. They … (**to talk**) the matter over. Isabel … (**to be**) sensible. She … (**to agree**) that if Larry … (**to refuse**) to come back to Chicago at the end of the two years in Paris they … (**to agree**) upon and get a job, there … (**to be**) only one thing to do and that … (**to be**) to break with him. But it … (**to offend**) Mrs. Bradley's sense of personal dignity that they should wait till the appointed time and then come to fetch him, like a fugitive from justice, back to his own country. She … (**to feel**) that Isabel … (**to put**) herself in a humiliating position. But it … (**to be**) very natural that they should spend summer in Europe, where Isabel … (**not**, **to be**) since she … (**to be**) a child. After their visit to Paris they … (**can**) go to some watering-place suitable to Mrs. Bradley's complaint, then on to the Austrian Tyrol for a while and from there travel slowly through Italy.

I felt I must do something about him for Isabel's sake, and I thought perhaps he was shy — I mean I couldn't believe that any young fellow in his senses could come to Paris without evening clothes, and in any case there are tolerable tailors there, so I asked him to lunch and said it would be quite a small party, and would you believe it, he did not only ignore my request to give me some other address than the American Express, but he said he never ate luncheon.

17. He was curious to know about my journey in China and listened attentively to what I told him; but when I tried to get him to talk about himself, I failed. He was so uncommunicative that I was forced to the conclusion that he had asked me to lunch with him merely to enjoy my company. I was pleased, but baffled. We had no sooner finished our coffee than he called for the bill, paid it, and got up.

18. Mrs. Bradley told him then why they had come to Europe sooner than they had at first intended. She had found herself in ill-health, and the doctors had informed her that she was suffering from diabetes. It wasn't serious, and by attention to her diet and taking moderate doses of insulin there was no reason why she shouldn't live for a good many years, but the knowledge that she had an incurable disease made her anxious to see Isabel settled. They had talked the matter over. Isabel was sensible. She had agreed that if Larry refused to come back to Chicago at the end of the two years in Paris they had agreed upon and get a job, there was only one thing to do and that was to break with him. But it offended Mrs. Bradley's sense of personal dignity that they should wait till the appointed time and then come to fetch him, like a fugitive from justice, back to his own country. She felt that Isabel would put herself in a humiliating position. But it was very natural that they should spend summer in Europe, where Isabel hadn't been since she was a child. After their visit to Paris they could go to some watering-place suitable to Mrs. Bradley's complaint, then on to the Austrian Tyrol for a while and from there travel slowly through Italy.

Mrs. Bradley's intention … (**to be**) to ask Larry to accompany them, so that he and Isabel … (**can**) see whether the long separation … (**to leave**) their feelings unchanged.

19. "Do they know who … (**to do**) it?"

"No, but I do. I … (**to think**) you … (**to kill**) her."

She … (**to give**) me a stare of amazement."

What … (**you**, **to talk**) about?"…

"I … (**to run**) across her at Toulon last summer. I … (**to have**) a long talk with her."

"… (**she**, **to be**) sober?"

"Sufficiently. She … (**to tell**) me how it … (**to happen**) that she … (**to disappear**) so unaccountably just a few days before she was going to be married to Larry."

I … (**to notice**) Isabel's face stiffen. I … (**to proceed**) to tell her exactly what Sophie … (**to tell**) me. She … (**to listen**) warily.

"I … (**to think**) of her story a good deal since then and the more I … (**to think**) about it the more convinced I … (**to be**) that there … (**to be**) something fishy about it. I … (**to lunch**) here twenty times and you never … (**to have**) liqueurs for luncheon. You … (**to lunch**) alone. Why should there have been a bottle of zubrovka on the tray with the coffee cup?"

"Uncle Elliot just … (**to send**) it to me. I … (**to want**) to see if I … (**to like**) it as much as when I … (**to have**) it at the Ritz."

"Yes, I remember how you raved about it then. I … (**to be**) surprised, as you never … (**to drink**) liqueurs anyway; you … (**to be**) much too careful of your figure for that. I … (**to have**) at the time an impression that you … (**to try**) to tantalize Sophie. I … (**to think**) it … (**to be**) just malice."

"Thank you."

"On the whole you … (**to be**) very good at keeping appointments. Why should you have gone out when you … (**to expect**) Sophie for something so important to her and interesting to you as a fitting of her wedding dress?"

Mrs. Bradley's intention was to ask Larry to accompany them, so that he and Isabel could see whether the long separation had left their feelings unchanged.

19. "Do they know who did it?"

"No, but I do. I think you killed her."

She gave me a stare of amazement.

"What are you talking about?"…

"I ran across her at Toulon last summer. I had a long talk with her."

"Was she sober?"

"Sufficiently. She told me how it happened that she had disappeared so unaccountably just a few days before she was going to be married to Larry."

I noticed Isabel's face stiffen. I proceeded to tell her exactly what Sophie had told me. She was listening warily.

"I've thought of her story a good deal since then and the more I've thought about it the more convinced I am that there is something fishy about it. I have lunched here twenty times and you never have liqueurs for luncheon. You had been lunching alone. Why should there have been a bottle of zubrovka on the tray with the coffee cup?"

"Uncle Elliot had just sent it to me. I wanted to see if I liked it as much as when I had had it at the Ritz."

"Yes, I remember how you raved about it then. I was surprised, as you never drink liqueurs anyway; you are much too careful of your figure for that. I had at the time an impression that you were trying to tantalize Sophie. I thought it was just malice."

"Thank you."

"On the whole you are very good at keeping appointments. Why should you have gone out when you were expecting Sophie for something so important to her and interesting to you as a fitting of her wedding dress?"

"She … (**to tell**) you herself. I … (**not**, **to be**) happy about Joan's teeth. Our dentist … (**to be**) very busy and I just … (**must**) take the time he … (**can**) give me."

"… (**can**, **not**) the governess … (**to take**) Joan?

"She … (**to be**) scared, poor darling, I … (**to feel**) she … (**to be**) happier if I … (**to go**) with her."

"And when you … (**to come**) back and … (**to find**) the bottle of zubrovka three parts empty and Sophie gone, … (**you**, **not**, **to be**) surprised?

"I … (**to think**) she … (**to get**) tired of waiting and … (**to go**) on to Molyneux's by herself. I … (**can**, **not**) make it out when I … (**to go**) there and they … (**to tell**) me she … (**not**, **to be**)."

"And the zubrovka?"

"Well, I did notice that a good deal had been drunk. I … (**to think**) Antoine … (**to drink**) it. But… he … (**to be**) a very good servant and if he … (**to take**) a little nip now and then who … (**I**, **to be**) to blame him?"

20. "All right, if you … (**to want**) the truth you can have it and to hell with you. I … (**to do**) it and I would do it again. I … (**to tell**) you I … (**to stick**) at nothing to prevent her from marrying Larry. You wouldn't do a thing, either you or Gray. You just … (**to shrug**) your shoulders and … (**to say**) it … (**to be**) a terrible mistake. You … (**not**, **to care**) a damn. I…" <…>

"Larry … (**to think**) he … (**to make**) a new woman of her. What fools men … (**to be**)! I … (**to know**) that sooner or later she … (**to break**) down. It … (**to stick**) out a mile. You … (**to see**) yourself when we all … (**to lunch**) together at the Ritz how jittery she … (**to be**). I … (**to notice**) you looking at her when she … (**to drink**) her coffee; her hand … (**to shake**) so, she … (**to be**) afraid to take the cup with one hand, she … (**must**) put her both hands to it to get it up to her mouth. I … (**to notice**) her watching the wine when the waiter … (**to fill**) our glasses; <…> I … (**to know**) she … (**to give**) her soul for a drink." <…>

"The idea … (**to come**) to me when Uncle Elliot … (**to make**) all that fuss about that damned Polish Liqueur. I … (**to think**) it beastly, but I … (**to pretend**) it … (**to be**) the most wonderful stuff I ever … (**to taste**). I …

"She told you herself. I wasn't happy about Joan's teeth. Our dentist is very busy and I just had to take the time he could give me."

"Couldn't the governess have taken Joan?"

"She was scared, poor darling, I felt she would be happier if I went with her."

"And when you came back and found the bottle of zubrovka three parts empty and Sophie gone, weren't you surprised?"

"I thought she had got tired of waiting and gone on to Molyneux's by herself. I couldn't make it out when I went there and they told me she hadn't been."

"And the zubrovka?"

"Well, I did notice that a good deal had been drunk. I thought Antoine had drunk it. But… he is a very good servant and if he takes a little nip now and then who am I to blame him?"

20. "All right, if you want the truth you can have it and to hell with you. I did it and I would do it again. I told you I would stick at nothing to prevent her from marrying Larry. You wouldn't do a thing, either you or Gray. You just shrugged your shoulders and said it was a terrible mistake. You didn't care a damn. I did." <…>

"Larry thought he would make a new woman of her. What fools men are! I knew that sooner or later she would break down. It stuck out a mile. You saw yourself when we were all lunching together at the Ritz how jittery she was. I noticed you looking at her when she was drinking her coffee; her hand was shaking so, she was afraid to take the cup with one hand, she had to put her both hands to it to get it up to her mouth. I noticed her watching the wine when the waiter was filling our glasses; <…> I knew she would give her soul for a drink." <…>.

"The idea came to me when Uncle Elliot made all that fuss about that damned Polish Liqueur. I thought it beastly, but I pretended it was the most wonderful stuff I had ever tasted. I was certain that if she got a

(**to be**) certain that if she … (**to get**) a chance she never … (**to have**) the strength to resist. That's why I … (**to take**) her to the dress show. That's why I … (**to offer**) to make her a present of her wedding dress. That day when she was going to have the last fitting, I … (**to tell**) Antoine I … (**to have**) the zubrovka after lunch and then I … (**to tell**) him I … (**to expect**) a lady and to ask her to wait and offer her some coffee and to leave the liqueur in case she … (**to fancy**) a glass.

I did take Joan to the dentist's, but of course we … (**to have**) no appointment and he … (**can**, **not**) see us, so I … (**to take**) her to a newsreel. I … (**to make**) up my mind that if I … (**to find**) Sophie … (**not**, **to touch**) the stuff I … (**to make**) the best of things and try to be friends with her. That … (**to be**) true, I … (**to swear**) it. But when I … (**to get**) home and … (to see) the bottle I … (**to know**) I … (**to be**) right. She … (**to go**).”…

Isabel actually … (**to pant**) when she … (**to finish**).

“That … (**to be**) more or less what I … (**to imagine**) … (**to happen**),” I said.

chance she would never have the strength to resist. That's why I took her to the dress show. That's why I offered to make her a present of her wedding dress. That day when she was going to have the last fitting, I told Antoine I would have the zubrovka after lunch and then I told him I was expecting a lady and to ask her to wait and offer her some coffee and to leave the liqueur in case she fancied a glass.

I did take Joan to the dentist's, but of course we had no appointment and he couldn't see us, so I took her to a newsreel. I had made up my mind that if I found Sophie hadn't touched the stuff I would make the best of things and try to be friends with her. That is true, I swear it. But when I got home and saw the bottle I knew I had been right. She had gone.”…

Isabel was actually panting when she finished.

“That is more or less what I imagined had happened,” I said.

From W.S. Maugham “The Razor's Edge”

Exercise 3

Translate into English.

A.

1. Он боялся, что дети попадут в беду.
2. Дети понятия не имели, как выглядит Артур, так как у них никогда не было возможности его увидеть.
3. Она не сомневалась в успехе вечеринки, так как сделала все возможное, но все же волновалась.
4. Дети могли только удивляться, почему отец никогда не говорил об этом.
5. Сначала Аттикус подумал, что это Джем убил Боба Юэлла.
6. Он считал, что девочка просто старается привлечь таким образом внимание.
7. Ей казалось, что он издевается над ней, и она расплакалась.
8. Нам было ясно, что она выдумала эту историю, чтобы всех обмануть.

Упражнение 3

Переведите на английский.

A.

1. He was afraid that the children would get into trouble.
2. The children had no idea what Arthur looked like as they had never had a chance of seeing him.
3. She didn't doubt (had no doubt about) the success of the party as she had done her best, but she was still worried (was still worrying).
4. The children could only wonder why their father had never spoken about it.
5. At first Atticus thought that it was Jem who had killed Bob Ewell.
6. He was of the opinion that the girl was just trying to attract attention in such a way.
7. It seemed to her that he was just mocking her and she burst out crying.
8. It was clear to us that she had invented that story to deceive everybody.

9. Дилл пообещал Скаут, что когда он вырастет и у него будет состояние, он на ней женится.
10. Иногда он прерывал ее, чтобы уточнить, что именно она хотела сказать.
11. Казалось, не было сомнений, что он лжет и лгал раньше.
12. Всех впечатлили огромные усы незнакомца, и гости пытались угадать, откуда он.
13. «Когда я вернулся, сейф был открыт, а завещание исчезло», — повторил слуга. Все, что он только что рассказал, доказывало, что кто-то был заинтересован в смерти миссис Дейл. Было очевидно, что кто-то знал о его отсутствии в доме в то время и о том, где надо искать завещание.
14. Она боялась признаться в своем прошлом, потому что не знала, как он его воспримет.
15. Мэри рассказала ей, что Скиннеры, на которых работает ее кузина, обвинили ее в краже брошки и собираются ее уволить.
16. Глэдис клялась, что не имеет к краже никакого отношения.
17. Она боялась, что не сможет найти работу, так как весь город уже знал об истории с брошкой.
18. Она решила, что попытается убедить Скиннеров не увольнять девушку, а заодно разузнает, почему они так хотят избавиться от нее.
19. Всем было известно, что сестра Лавинии неизлечимо больна.
20. Весь городок считал, что Лавиния совершила ошибку, ей не следовало увольнять Глэдис, так как ей не удастся достаточно быстро найти сиделку. Естественно, все удивились, когда Скиннеры нашли ее практически сразу и были ею очень довольны.
21. Ее аргументы были настолько невероятны, что инспектору в голову пришла мысль, что она сошла с ума.
22. Полиция считала, что дело безнадежно, так как год назад нечто похожее произошло в Нортумберленде, и преступники остались безнаказанными.
23. Она посоветовала Лавинии быть осторожной, но та сделала вид, что не понимает, что мисс Марпл имеет в виду.
24. Мисс Марпл готова была держать пари, что это Скиннеры обокрали соседей.
25. Она пришла к выводу, что новая сиделка и сестра Лавинии — одно и то же лицо.

9. Dill promised Scout that when he grew up and had a fortune, he would marry her.
10. He sometimes interrupted her to make sure what exactly she had meant.
11. There seemed to be no doubt that he was lying and had been lying before.
12. Everybody was impressed by the stranger's enormous moustaches and the guests were trying to guess where he was from.
13. "When I returned, the safe was open and the will had disappeared," the servant repeated. Everything he had just said proved that somebody had been interested in Mrs. Dale's death. It was obvious that somebody had known about his absence from the house at that time and also about where they had to look for the will.
14. She was afraid to confess her past as she didn't know how he would take it.
15. Mary told her that the Skinners, her cousin was working for, had accused her of stealing a brooch and were going to fire her.
16. Gladys swore, that she had nothing to do with the robbery.
17. She was afraid that she wouldn't be able to find a job as the whole town already knew about the story with the brooch.
18. She decided that she would try to persuade the Skinners not to fire the girl and would find out why they were eager to get rid of her.
19. Everybody knew that Lavinia's sister was incurably ill.
20. The whole town believed that Lavinia had made a mistake, that she shouldn't have fired Gladys as she wouldn't manage to find a good nurse soon enough. Naturally everybody was surprised when the Skinners had found her almost at once and were quite content with her.
21. Her arguments were so incredible that it occurred to the inspector that she had gone mad.
22. The police thought that the case was hopeless as something like that had happened in Northumberland a year before and the criminals had got away with it.
23. She advised Lavinia to be careful but the latter pretended not to understand what Miss Marple meant.
24. Miss Marple was ready to bet that it was the Skinners who had robbed their neighbours.
25. She came to the conclusion that the new nurse and Lavinia's sister were one and the same person.

В.

1. Почтмейстер был явно раздражен, и Ватсон решил, что продолжать разговор бесполезно. Было ясно, что уловка Холмса ни к чему не привела, и они так и не узнают, приезжал ли Бэримор в Лондон или нет. Ватсон вышел на улицу, размышляя об обстоятельствах дела. Он снова вспомнил о странном письме, которое сэр Генри получил по прибытии в Лондон. Неужели это письмо послал Бэримор? А может быть, это сделал кто-то другой, кто пытается помочь сэру Генри? Непонятно. Правда, сэр Генри попытался дать объяснение всему этому: если Баскервилям придется уехать из поместья, Бэриморы смогут там жить до конца дней своих.

2. Несомненно, Бэриморы были очень странной парой. Их поведение, особенно мистера Бэримора, было подозрительно. Когда Ватсон поделился своими мыслями с сэром Генри, оказалось, что он тоже несколько раз видел, как Бэримор ходит по дому со свечой. Они решили выяснить, зачем он это делает. Той же ночью они просидели в комнате сэра Генри несколько часов и чуть не уснули, когда услышали шаги в коридоре. Они последовали за Бэримором. Он зашел в ту же комнату, где его уже видел Ватсон. Когда они заглянули туда, Бэримор стоял у окна. Ватсон и сэр Генри не договаривались, как будут действовать. Сэр Генри ворвался в комнату. Было совершенно очевидно, что Бэримор напуган: он весь дрожал и не мог сказать ни слова. Сэр Генри пригрозил, что, если Бэримор не объяснит ему, что он здесь делал, и почему он ходит сюда каждую ночь, он уволит и его и его жену.

3. Сначала Лора Лайенс отказывалась отвечать на вопросы Шерлока Холмса. «Я действительно написала сэру Чарльзу, так как он мне часто помогал, и я надеялась, что сможет помочь и в этот раз. Но я не была у калитки в назначенное время, так как получила помощь от другого человека. Вот и все».

Но Шерлок Холмс доказал ей, что мистер Стэплтон женат, и Лора Лайенс согласилась все рассказать, поняв, что Стэплтон обманывал ее все эти годы.

Б.

1. The postman was obviously annoyed and Watson decided that it was no use continuing the conversation. It was clear that Holmes' trick hadn't led to anything (had led to nothing) and they wouldn't find out whether Barrymore had gone to London or not. Watson went outside thinking over the circumstances of the case. He remembered again about the strange letter Sir Henry had received on his arrival in London. Could (Can) Barrymore have sent it? Or perhaps, someone else had done it, someone who was trying to help Sir Henry? It wasn't clear. But Sir Henry had tried to give an explanation of all that: if the Baskervilles had to leave the estate the Barrymores would be able to live there till their death.

2. It was no doubt that the Barrymores were a very strange couple. Their behaviour, especially that of Mr. Barrymore, was suspicious. When Watson shared his thoughts with Sir Henry, it turned out that the latter had also seen Barrymore walking about the house with a candle several times. They decided to find out why he did it. That very night they had been sitting in Sir Henry's room for several hours and had nearly fallen asleep when they heard steps in the hall. They followed Barrymore. He entered the room where Watson had already seen him. When they looked in, Barrymore was standing at the window. Watson and Sir Henry hadn't agreed how they would act. Sir Henry rushed into the room. It was quite obvious that Barrymore was frightened: he was trembling all over and couldn't say a word. Sir Henry threatened that if he didn't explain to him what he had been doing there and why he went there every night, he would fire both him and his wife.

3. At first Laura Lyons refused to answer Sherlock Holmes' questions. "I really wrote to Sir Charles as he had often helped me and I hoped he would be able to help me that time too. But I was not at the gate at the appointed time as I had got help from another person. That's all."

But Sherlock Holmes proved to her that Mr. Stapleton was married and Laura Lyons agreed to tell him everything seeing that Stapleton had been deceiving her all those years.

— Это Стэплтон сказал вам написать письмо сэру Чарльзу?

— Да, он его продиктовал.

— Как он убедил вас не ходить туда после того, как вы послали письмо?

— Он сказал, что не сможет уважать самого себя, если деньги даст кто-то другой. Он поклялся, что несмотря ни на что отдаст последнее пенни, чтобы помочь мне развестись с мужем.

— А как он повел себя после смерти сэра Чарльза?

— Он сказал, что сэр Чарльз умер при весьма загадочных обстоятельствах, и, если полиция узнает о письме, меня будут подозревать. Его слова напугали меня, и я решила ничего не говорить.

4. «Наконец-то, Ватсон! С тех пор как вы уехали, я сижу дома. Мне это до смерти наскучило. Пока вас не было, Стэплтон пригласил меня на обед, но я не пошел, так как пообещал вам не выходить из дома. Вы не должны были оставлять меня одного!»

Сэр Генри был также рад увидеть Шерлока Холмса. Он был уверен, что он обязательно приедет после того, как Ватсон написал ему обо всем, что случилось в поместье. Он очень удивился, что у Шерлока Холмса нет багажа и что он не собирается оставаться надолго.

Пока Ватсон рассказывал сэру Генри о том, как погиб Селден, Шерлок Холмс разглядывал портреты Баскервилей на стенах столовой.

5. Ватсон не обратил внимания на вопросы Шерлока Холмса о фамильных портретах, так как знал, что он интересуется искусством. Но когда сэр Генри ушел спать, Холмс взял свечу и попросил Ватсона внимательно посмотреть на портрет Хьюго Баскервиля. Ватсон не заметил ничего особенного, но когда Шерлок Холмс закрыл руками шляпу и длинные волосы, Ватсон вскрикнул от изумления: на него смотрел Стэплтон.

— Was it Stapleton who told you to write the letter?

— Yes, he dictated it.

— How did he persuade you not to go there after you had sent the letter?

— He said he wouldn't be able to respect himself if anybody else gave the money. He swore that in spite of anything he would give the last penny to help me to divorce my husband.

— And how did he behave after Sir Charles' death?

— He said that Sir Charles had died under quite mysterious circumstances and if the police learnt about the letter, they would suspect me. His words frightened me and I decided not to tell them anything.

4. "Oh, Watson, here you are at last! Since you left I've been staying at home. I'm bored to death. While you were out, Stapleton asked me to dinner but I didn't go as I had promised you not to leave the house. You shouldn't have left me alone!"

Sir Henry was also glad to see Sherlock Holmes. He had been sure that the latter would certainly come after Watson had written to him about everything that had happened in the estate. He was very surprised that Sherlock Holmes had no luggage and was not going to stay there long.

While Watson was telling Sir Henry how Selden had died, Sherlock Holmes studied the Baskervilles' portraits on the walls of the dining-room.

5. Watson didn't pay attention to Holmes' questions about the family portraits as he knew that Holmes was interested in art. But when Sir Henry went to sleep, Sherlock Holmes took a candle and asked Watson to look attentively at Hugo Baskerville's portrait. Watson didn't notice anything special but when Holmes covered the hat and the long hair with his hands, Watson cried out with amazement: Stapleton was looking at him.

«Теперь все понятно, — заявил Холмс. — Стэплтон — тоже Баскервиль и хочет убить сэра Генри, чтобы получить наследство. Клянусь, что завтра к полуночи мы его поймаем с поличным. Я уже продумал план».

Единственная загадка в этом деле, которую Шерлок Холмс так и не разгадал, — это как Стэплтон собирался доказать, что он тоже Баскервиль, после того как столько лет лгал.

“Now everything is clear,” said Holmes. “Stapleton is also a Baskerville and he wants to kill Sir Henry to get the inheritance. I swear, we’ll have caught him red-handed by tomorrow midnight. I’ve already thought of a plan.”

The only mystery that Sherlock Holmes hadn’t solved in that case was how Stapleton was going to prove that he was also a Baskerville after he had been lying for so many years.

UNIT 20 THE PASSIVE VOICE

20.1 Formation and forms

20.2 Constructions

- *The Direct Passive*
- *The Indirect Passive*
- *The Prepositional Passive*

20.1 Formation and forms

FORMATION

auxiliary **be** in the respective tense + Participle II

FORMS

The Present Indefinite Passive —	*is (am, are) done*
The Past Indefinite Passive —	*was (were) done*
The Future Indefinite Passive —	*will (shall) be done*
The Present Continuous Passive —	*is (are) being done*
The Past Continuous Passive —	*was (were) being done*
The Present Perfect Passive —	*have (has) been done*
The Past Perfect Passive —	*had been done*
The Future Perfect Passive —	*will (shall) have been done*

20.2 CONSTRUCTIONS: The Direct Passive

The direct object of the active construction *becomes the subject* of the passive construction. *After the following verbs only this construction is possible.*

to announce	**to buy**	**to repeat**	**to write**
to describe	**to devote**	**to report**	**to read**
to dictate	**to explain**	**to sell**	**to recommend**
to introduce	**to mention**	**to sing**	**to suggest**

УРОК 20 СТРАДАТЕЛЬНЫЙ ЗАЛОГ

20.1 Образование и формы

20.2 Конструкции

- *Прямая пассивная конструкция*
- *Косвенная пассивная конструкция*
- *Предложная пассивная конструкция*

20.1 Образование формы

ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ

be + done

ФОРМЫ

Such books **are discussed** every Friday.
This book **was discussed** last Friday
The book **will be discussed** next Friday.
The book **is being discussed** now.
The book **was being discussed** from 5 till 7 yesterday.
The book **has** just **been discussed**.
The book **had been discussed** by 5 o'clock.
The book **will have been discussed** by 5 o'clock tomorrow.

20.2 КОНСТРУКЦИИ: Прямая пассивная конструкция

Прямое дополнение конструкции в активном залоге с**тановится подлежащим** конструкции в страдательном залоге. **С указанными глаголами возможна только такая конструкция.**

The teacher *explained* **a new rule** to the students.
A new rule *was explained* to the students.

She *will introduce* **her husband** to us.
Her husband *will be introduced* to us.

The Indirect Passive

The direct or the indirect object of the active construction *become the subject* of the passive construction. *After the following verbs these two constructions are possible.*

to give
to offer
to pay
to promise
to send
to show
to tell

The Prepositional Passive

The prepositional object of the active construction **becomes the subject** of the passive construction. **The preposition retains its place after the verb. The most common verbs are the following.**

to agree on (to)
to invite to
to laugh at
to listen to
to look at (through)
to send for
to speak about (of)
to talk about (of)
to think about (of)
to wait for

Косвенная пассивная конструкция

Прямое или косвенное дополнение конструкции в активном залоге *становятся подлежащим* конструкции в страдательном залоге. *С перечисленными глаголами возможны эти две конструкции.*

They *have just offered* **me a new job**.
I'*ve* just *been offered* a new job.
A new job *has* just *been offered* to me.

They *gave* **him the letter** at once.
He *was given* the letter at once.
The letter *was given* to him at once.

They *'ll tell* **you the news**.
You *'ll be told* **the news**.
The news *will be told* to you.

Предложная пассивная конструкция

Предложное дополнение конструкции в активном залоге *становится подлежащим* конструкции в пассивном залоге. *Предлог сохраняет свое место после глагола. Наиболее часто употребляются перечисленные глаголы.*

They *are waiting* **for *us*** at the theatre.
We *are being waited* **for** at the theatre.

They always *speak* **of *him*** with great respect.
He *is* always *spoken* **of** with great respect.

Exercise 1

Turn the following active constructions into passive.
Give two passive constructions where possible.

1. She wears such clothes only on special occasions.
2. Someone has already told him about it.
3. People are spending so much money nowadays!
4. They will open the exhibition at the end of the month.
5. Who wrote it?
6. The idea didn't interest me.
7. They are still checking the data.
8. Will they look after the baby well enough?
9. They gave him the keys to his room.
10. I haven't prepared the necessary material yet.
11. They use computers widely nowadays.
12. Nick told me that his friend had cheated him.
13. What are they building in this street?
14. The guide showed us the sights of the town.
15. When I entered, they were discussing the latest news.
16. He will surely make you do your morning exercises.
17. They are looking for the missing children everywhere.
18. The police didn't arrest anybody during the demonstration.
19. What will they teach you at this college?
20. I'm sorry, he didn't leave you any message.
21. The shop owner told me that he had already called the police.
22. The secretary dictated the address to us and also explained how to get there.
23. I haven't sent for the doctor yet. I'm not sure if we'll need him.
24. They say it's dangerous.
25. The doctors are still operating on the injured man.
26. They didn't ask me many questions.
27. She had an uncomfortable feeling that they were laughing at her.

Упражнение 1

Поставьте глаголы в форме пассивного залога.
Дайте две конструкции, где это возможно.

1. Such clothes are worn only on special occasions.
2. He has already been told about it.
3. So much money is being spent nowadays!
4. The exhibition will be opened at the end of the month.
5. Who was it written by?
6. I wasn't interested in the idea.
7. The data are still being checked.
8. Will the baby be looked after well enough?
9. He was given the keys to his room. The keys to his room were given to him.
10. The necessary material hasn't been prepared yet.
11. Computers are widely used nowadays.
12. Nick told me that he had been cheated by his friend.
13. What is being built in this street?
14. We were shown the sights of the town. The sights of the town were shown to us.
15. When I entered, the latest news was being discussed.
16. You will surely be made to do your morning exercises.
17. The missing children are being looked for everywhere.
18. Nobody was arrested during the demonstration.
19. What will you be taught at this college?
20. No message was left for you.
21. I was told by the shop owner that the police had already been called.
22. The address was dictated to us by the secretary and it was also explained to us how to get there.
23. The doctor hasn't been sent for yet. I'm not sure if he will be needed.
24. It is said to be dangerous.
25. The injured man is still being operated on.
26. I wasn't asked many questions.
27. She had an uncomfortable feeling that she was being laughed at.

28. They promised the workers better conditions.
29. Why haven't you mentioned the fact before?
30. The travel agent recommended this Spanish resort to us.
31. Your parents won't let you watch TV so late.
32. They are considering this question again.
33. They said they had looked through my project and they would send me the answer a few days later.
34. It's so beautiful! What do they make it of?
35. The jury announced to us that they would inform us about their decision as soon as they took it.
36. Have you paid for the tickets yet?
37. I promise that they will have prepared everything by the time you arrive.
38. Who is organizing this expedition?
39. He explained the problem to me and asked for advice.
40. Nobody will pay attention to him if he comes without his wife.

Exercise 2

Turn the following active constructions into passive.

1. They should plant more trees along this road.
2. You might have done everything long ago.
3. I can do it quite easily.
4. We must look into the matter.
5. She'll have to repair the house.
6. They must have changed the timetable again.
7. The committee is going to discuss the problem tomorrow.
8. He should have warned us about it.
9. They can't build the theatre so quickly.
10. We had to take the child to hospital at once.
11. You may leave your hats and coats in the cloakroom.
12. The hairdresser is going to cut and style Ann's hair.

28. The workers were promised better conditions. Better conditions were promised to the workers.
29. Why hasn't the fact been mentioned before?
30. This Spanish resort was recommended to us by the travel agent.
31. You won't be let to watch TV so late.
32. This question is being considered again.
33. They said that my project had been looked through and the answer would be sent a few days later (and I would be sent the answer…)
34. What is it made of?
35. It was announced to us that we would be informed about the decision by the jury as soon as it was taken.
36. Have the tickets been paid for yet?
37. I promise that everything will have been prepared by the time you arrive.
38. Who is this expedition being organized by?
39. The problem was explained to me and I was asked for advice.
40. He won't be paid any attention to if he comes without his wife.

Упражнение 2

Поставьте глаголы в форме пассивного залога.

1. More trees should be planted along this road.
2. Everything might have been done long ago.
3. It can be done quite easily.
4. The matter must be looked into.
5. The house will have to be repaired.
6. The timetable must have been changed again.
7. The problem is going to be discussed by the committee tomorrow.
8. We should have been warned about it.
9. The theatre can't be built so quickly.
10. The child had to be taken to hospital at once.
11. Your hats and coats may be left in the cloakroom.
12. Ann's hair is going to be cut and styled.

13. All the staff must wear identity badges.
14. They can't have thrown away these papers!
15. We are going to arrange a farewell party.
16. You shouldn't have touched that switch. Don't do it again.
17. The members of this library may keep books for three weeks.
18. She must have mixed up the results by chance.
19. I can clear up this misunderstanding.
20. We have to solve similar problems every day.

Exercise 3

Use the required passive forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. As you probably know, the school sports pavilion … (to rebuild) after the fire last summer in which the changing-rooms … (to destroy) completely. This is going to cost over $6,000.
2. Conditions at 21 Gladstone Avenue were pretty miserable as central heating … (not, put in) yet.
3. Everybody discussed the robbery at the bank for two or three days but after a few weeks it … (to forget) more or less.
4. I see your car … (not, to clean) for ages, Arthur. • What's the point, in weather like this when the roads … (to cover) with snow?
5. I have never been quite successful since my very first one-man show when I … (to discover) by critics, … (to take up) — and very quickly … (to put down) again — and … (to sell out).
6. He whispered to the uniformed conductor, pointing to me and I understood I … (to talk about).
7. Mrs. Kearney asked him when her daughter … (to be going to, to pay).
8. Finally the prisoner … (to make) to understand that the bond … (to return) to him after his case … (to hear) in court.
9. If you publish this story, the old man … (to rob) of his life savings before morning.
10. "Are you frightfully busy, Miss Stevenson?" asked Mary graciously while cutlets … (to serve).

13. Identity badges must be worn by the staff.
14. These papers can't have been thrown away!
15. A farewell party is going to be arranged.
16. That switch shouldn't have been touched.
17. Books may be kept by the members of this library for three weeks.
18. The results must have been mixed up by chance.
19. This misunderstanding can be cleared up.
20. Similar problems have to be solved every day.

Упражнение 3

Употребите глаголы в правильной форме пассивного залога.

1. The school sports pavilion is being rebuilt after the fire last summer in which the changing-rooms were completely destroyed.
2. Conditions at 21 Gladstone Avenue were pretty miserable as central heating hadn't yet been put in.
3. Everybody discussed the robbery at the bank for two or three days but after a few weeks it was more or less forgotten.
4. I see your car hasn't been cleaned for ages, Arthur. • What's the point, in weather like this when the roads are covered with snow?
5. I have never been quite successful since my very first one-man show when I was discovered by critics, taken up — and very quickly put down again — and sold out.
6. He whispered to the uniformed conductor, pointing to me and I understood I was being talked about.
7. Mrs. Kearney asked him when her daughter was going to be paid.
8. Finally the prisoner was made to understand that the bond would be returned to him after his case had been heard in court.
9. If you publish this story, the old man will be robbed of his life savings before morning.
10. "Are you frightfully busy, Miss Stevenson?" asked Mary graciously while cutlets were being served.

11. For hours we talked over the great plan, and at last, when all the details … (to arrange) satisfactorily, we cast lots and Millet … (to elect) “to die”, as we called it.
12. Molly worked for her board and room. Money for clothes … (have to, to earn) by working in a store during the summer vacation.
13. She went on speaking about the terms of the agreement. “These letters … (to address) to Mr. John Smith and … (to send) in care of the secretary. The man prefers to remain unknown. To you he will never be anything but John Smith.”
14. There’s been a horrible accident. A man … (to kill). His horse got frightened and he … (to throw out) on the back of his head.
15. That Lottie had a doorstep the kids … (may, to leave on) was only because her boss offered Lottie his old house at a very low price.
16. “Well, what do you say now?” My companion didn’t answer. So I added, “Don’t you like the way you … (to serve)?”
17. The letter was something like this: “Dearest Mabel, I suddenly … (to call) away on business and don’t know when I shall be back.”
18. The nineteen-year-old girl used to throw open the door so quickly that it … (may, to do) by someone invisible.
19. “I bet a dollar our country friend … (not, to rob) last night.” “No, he … . Henry Tucker … (to murder) in front of his home.”
20. I knew the miracle had happened: she … (to cure) all right.
21. He has been ill for three days and I never … (to tell) or … (to send for).
22. My mother says that each kid … (to have to, to teach) differently.
23. He did it out of a plan, to make himself more popular. In the first and second grade he … (to like) pretty well, but somewhere since then he … (to drop).

11. For hours we talked over the great plan, and at last, when all the details had been arranged satisfactorily, we cast lots and Millet was elected “to die”, as we called it.
12. Money for clothes had to be earned by working in a store during summer vacation.
13. She went on speaking about the terms of the agreement. “These letters will be addressed to Mr. John Smith and will be sent in care of the secretary. The man prefers to remain unknown. To you he will never be anything but John Smith.”
14. There’s been a horrible accident. A man was killed. His horse got frightened and he was thrown out on the back of his head.
15. That Lottie had a doorstep the kids might have been left on was only because her boss offered Lottie his old house at a very low price
16. “Well, what do you say now?” My companion didn’t answer. So I added, “Don’t you like the way you are being served?”
17. The letter was something like this: “Dearest Mabel, I have been suddenly called away on business and don’t know when I shall be back.”
18. The nineteen-year-old girl used to throw open the door so quickly that it might have been done by someone invisible.
19. “I bet a dollar our country friend wasn’t robbed last night.” “No, he wasn’t. Henry Tucker was murdered in front of his home.”
20. I knew the miracle had happened: she had been cured all right.
21. He has been ill for three days and I was never told or sent for.
22. My mother says that each kid has to be taught differently.
23. He did it out of a plan, to make himself more popular. In the first and second grade he had been liked pretty well, but somewhere since then he had been dropped.

24. By his parents Jane … (to look upon) as a perfect wife.
25. They've just reported on TV that the man who … (to suspect) of this terrorist act … (to arrest) at last.
26. We shall live in permanent breathlessness until he comes — and if he doesn't hurry, the cleaning … (must, to do) all over again.
27. He couldn't meet Lucy at twenty to ten. She still … (to shout at) by her father at that time.
28. Sally … (to elect) class president and we had a torch parade with transparencies saying "McBride Forever."
29. He went over to Mrs. Kearney and told her that the other four guineas … (to pay) after the committee meeting on the following Tuesday.
30. Such a state of excitement as we are in! The whole house … (to clean) and all the curtains … (to wash)!

Exercise 4

Translate into English.

1. Ее не видели в университете на этой неделе. Она болеет?
2. Мне задали несколько вопросов, которые показались мне достаточно сложными.
3. Не понимаю, почему об этом художнике так много говорят.
4. Когда вам продиктовали это задание?
5. Нам не объяснили, как пройти к метро, поэтому мы заблудились.
6. Его спросили, когда будет получена посылка.
7. У него было такое чувство, что за ним кто-то идет.
8. Надо посмотреть правописание этого слова в словаре.
9. Школу построят к концу месяца?
10. Это письмо везде искали, но так нигде и не нашли.
11. Они не последовали совету, который им дали.
12. Больного пришлось немедленно оперировать.
13. Чью статью сейчас обсуждают?

24. By his parents Jane was looked upon as a perfect wife.
25. They've just reported on TV that the man who is suspected of this terrorist act has been arrested at last.
26. We shall live in permanent breathlessness until he comes -and if he doesn't hurry, the cleaning will have to be done all over again.
27. He couldn't meet Lucy at twenty to ten. She was still being shouted at by her father at that time.
28. Sally was elected class president and we had a torch parade with transparencies saying "McBride Forever."
29. He went over to Mrs. Kearney and told her that the other four guineas would be paid after the committee meeting on the following Tuesday.
30. Such a state of excitement as we are in! The whole house is being cleaned and all the curtains washed (are being washed)!

Упражнение 4

Переведите на английский.

1. She hasn't been seen at the University this week. Is she ill?
2. I was asked a few questions which seemed quite difficult to me.
3. I can't understand why this artist is so much spoken about.
4. When was this task dictated to you?
5. It wasn't explained to us how to get to the metro station, so we lost our way.
6. He was asked when the parcel would be received.
7. He had a feeling that he was being followed.
8. The spelling of this word should be looked up in a dictionary.
9. Will the school have been built by the end of the month?
10. This letter has been looked for everywhere but it hasn't been found anywhere.
11. They didn't follow the advice they had been given.
12. The patient had to be immediately operated on.
13. Whose article is being discussed now?

14. Ему сообщат эти новости, как только он вернется из командировки.
15. Боюсь, теперь ничего нельзя изменить.
16. Почему над ним всегда насмехаются?
17. Книги этого известного писателя переведены на многие языки.
18. Вопрос еще не решили, хотя он обсуждается с прошлого года.
19. Интересно, что здесь строят?
20. К сожалению, поездку придется отложить из-за его внезапной болезни.
21. Его слушали с таким вниманием, что никто не заметил, как я вошел.
22. Он сказал, что ему предложили другую должность.
23. Нам прочитали его новое стихотворение.
24. Не волнуйтесь, если вы задержитесь, о вашем ребенке позаботятся.
25. Вас когда-нибудь учили, как разговаривать со взрослыми?
26. Ее еще нет. Она еще на собеседовании.
27. Где собираются провести следующую олимпиаду?
28. За врачом надо было послать немедленно.
29. Нам очень подробно описали происшествие.
30. Мне надо идти. Меня ждут.
31. С тех пор о нем ничего не слышали, не так ли?
32. На уроке нам объяснили новое правило.
33. Он расстроился, что на его замечание не обратили внимания.
34. Нам покажут проект нового стадиона?
35. Я спросила, на кого из них можно положиться.
36. За билеты уже, должно быть, заплатили.
37. Раньше нам часто повторяли эти слова.
38. Мне показали человека, который был мне нужен.
39. Ему сказали, где экзаменуют этих студентов.
40. Она боялась, что над ней будут смеяться.

14. He'll be told the news as soon as he returns from his business trip.
15. I'm afraid nothing can be changed now.
16. Why is he always made fun of?
17. This famous writer's books are translated into many languages.
18. The question hasn't been settled yet though it has been discussed since last year.
19. I wonder what is being built here.
20. Unfortunately, the trip will have to be postponed because of his sudden illness.
21. He was being listened to with such great attention that nobody noticed me come in.
22. He said he had been offered another post. He said another post had been offered to him.
23. His new poem was read to us.
24. Don't worry. Your child will be taken care of if you are late.
25. Have you ever been taught how to speak to adults?
26. She hasn't come yet. She is still being interviewed.
27. Where are the next Olympic Games going to be held?
28. The doctor should have been sent for immediately.
29. The accident was described to us in detail.
30. I must be off. I am being waited for.
31. He hasn't been heard of ever since, has he?
32. A new rule was explained to us at the lesson.
33. He got disappointed as his remark hadn't been paid any attention to.
34. Will the project of the new stadium be shown to us?
35. I asked which of them could be relied on (upon).
36. The tickets must have been paid for.
37. These words used to be repeated to us quite often.
38. The person I needed was shown to me. I was shown the person I needed.
39. He was told where those students were being examined.
40. She was afraid that she would be laughed at.

Exercise 5

Use the required active or passive forms. Retell the texts.

1. *The Man who Took Notice of Notices*

My uncle Tom used to work on the railway. It was a little place called Lowton Cross. Only about two trains a day … (**to stop**) there, and Tom was station-master, chief porter and signal man all in one; in fact Tom did any work that … (**to come along**), and there wasn't a happier man in the whole of England. Lowton Cross was the pride of his heart; the waiting-room … (**to clean**) every day by the chief cleaner (Tom); the chairs … (**to polish**) by the chief polisher (Tom); and the tickets … (**to sell**) and … (**to collect**) by the chief ticket-collector (Tom), — sometimes there were as many as four tickets a day; — and the money … (**to count**) every evening by the chief clerk (Tom). One day, there was £13.1.8, the biggest amount that ever … (**to take**) in one day during the whole 50 years that Tom … (**to be**) there.

The station … (**to run**) well: Tom was very strict about "rules". He … (**to know**) what a passenger … (**to allow**) to do and what he … (**not**, **to allow**) to do, where he was allowed to smoke and where he was not allowed to smoke. And if any passenger dared to do anything that was against the rules, there was trouble at Lowton Cross.

He … (**to be)** there for 50 years and then he … (**must**) retire. There was no doubt that Tom … (**to do**) his job well; in all the 50 years he … (**to be**) there, he never … (**to miss**) a single day; every day he … (**to be**) on duty. Well, the Railway Company thought they ought to do something to recognize this, and so a little "farewell ceremony" … (**to arrange**), and a man from the head office, Sir Joseph Binks, … (**to ask**) to go to Lowton Cross for the ceremony.

Tom … (**to thank**) and … (**to give**) a small cheque as a present. He was very pleased, of course, but he said to Sir Joseph, "I … (**not/to need**) the money" (Tom always … (**to be**) careful and … (**to save**) quite a nice amount of money), "but can I have, instead, something that … (**to remind**) me of the happy days I … **(to spend)** here in Lowton Cross?"

Упражнение 5

Употребите необходимую форму активного или пассивного залогов. Перескажите тексты.

1. *The Man who Took Notice of Notices*

My uncle Tom used to work on the railway. It was a little place called Lowton Cross. Only about two trains a day stopped there, and Tom was station-master, chief porter and signal man all in one; in fact Tom did any work that came along, and there wasn't a happier man in the whole of England. Lowton Cross was the pride of his heart; the waiting-room was cleaned every day by the chief cleaner (Tom); the chairs were polished by the chief polisher (Tom); and the tickets were sold and collected by the chief ticket-collector (Tom), — sometimes there were as many as four tickets a day; — and the money was counted every evening by the chief clerk (Tom). One day, there was £13.1.8, the biggest amount that was ever taken in one day during the whole 50 years that Tom was there.

The station was run well: Tom was very strict about "rules". He knew what a passenger was allowed to do and what he wasn't allowed to do, where he was allowed to smoke and where he was not allowed to smoke. And if any passenger dared to do anything that was against the rules, there was trouble at Lowton Cross.

He was there for 50 years and then he had to retire. There was no doubt that Tom had done his job well; in all the 50 years he had been there, he had never missed a single day; every day he had been on duty. Well, the Railway Company thought they ought to do something to recognize this, and so a little "farewell ceremony" was arranged, and a man from the head office, Sir Joseph Binks, was asked to go to Lowton Cross for the ceremony.

Tom was thanked and was given a small cheque as a present. He was very pleased, of course, but he said to Sir Joseph, "I don't need the money" (Tom had always been careful and had saved quite a nice amount of money), "but can I have, instead, something that will remind me of the happy days I have spent here in Lowton Cross?"

Sir Joseph was rather surprised but he (**to say**) he … (**to think**) it … (**can**, **to arrange**); what kind of reminder Tom … (**to have**) in mind? So Tom said, “Well, sir, could the company … (**to let**) me have a part of an old railway carriage, just one compartment? It … (**not**, **to matter**) how old or broken it is; I can repair it and clean it — I … (**to have**) plenty of time now that I … (**to retire**). I want to put it in my back garden, and every day I can go and sit in it, and that … (**to remind**) me of Lowton Cross.”

Sir Joseph thought, “Poor old fellow, his mind … (**to fail**), but we have some old railway carriages that are only fit for breaking up,” so he said, “Well, Mr. Hobdell, if that’s what you want, you’ll have it.” And about a week later a carriage, or rather a compartment, … (**to send**) and … (**to take**) into Tom’s back garden. Tom … (**to work**) at it just as he … (to work) at Lowton Cross. It … (**to clean**) and … (**to paint**) and … (**to polish**), and in a week or so it… (**to look**) very nice.

One day, about a year after Tom … (**to retire**), I … (**to stay**) with Uncle Albert (that’s Tom’s brother) and he said, “Come on, Hob, let’s go and visit old Tom. I … (**not/to see**) him for a long time.” It was a bad day for a visit. It … (**to begin**) to rain as we … (**to get off**) the train, and by the time we … (**to get**) to Tom’s house it … (**to rain**) hard. We … (**to walk**) up the path to the front door and Uncle Albert … (**to knock**), but there … (**to be**) no answer. However, the door … (**not**, **to lock**) so Uncle Albert … (**to open**) it and we … (**to go in**). Tom was nowhere to be seen, and Albert said, “He’ll be in that old railway carriage of his; we’ll go out at the back.” Sure enough he … (**to be**) there, but he … (**not**, **to sit**) IN the carriage; he was outside, on the step of the carriage, smoking his pipe. His head … (**to cover**) with a sack and the rain … (**to run**) down his back.

“Hello, Tom,” said Uncle Albert, “why on earth … (you, **to sit**) there; why don’t you go INSIDE the carriage out of the rain?”

“Can’t you see?” said Tom, “the carriage they … (**to send**) me … (**to be**) a non-smoker!”

Sir Joseph was rather surprised but he said he thought it could be arranged; what kind of reminder did Tom have in mind? So Tom said, “Well, sir, could the company let me have a part of an old railway carriage, just one compartment? It doesn’t matter how old or broken it is; I can repair it and clean it — I shall have plenty of time now that I have retired. I want to put it in my back garden, and every day I can go and sit in it, and that will remind me of Lowton Cross.”

Sir Joseph thought, “Poor old fellow, his mind is failing, but we have some old railway carriages that are only fit for breaking up,” so he said, “Well, Mr. Hobdell, if that’s what you want, you’ll have it.” And about a week later a carriage, or rather a compartment, was sent and was taken into Tom’s back garden. Tom worked at it just as he had worked at Lowton Cross. It was cleaned and painted and polished, and in a week or so it looked very nice.

One day, about a year after Tom had retired, I was staying with Uncle Albert (that’s Tom’s brother) and he said, “Come on, Hob, let’s go and visit old Tom. I haven’t seen him for a long time.” It was a bad day for a visit. It began to rain as we got off the train, and by the time we got to Tom’s house it was raining hard. We walked up the path to the front door and Uncle Albert knocked, but there was no answer. However, the door wasn’t locked so Uncle Albert opened it and we went in. Tom was nowhere to be seen, and Albert said, “He’ll be in that old railway carriage of his; we’ll go out at the back.” Sure enough he was there, but he wasn’t sitting IN the carriage; he was outside, on the step of the carriage, smoking his pipe. His head was covered with a sack and the rain was running down his back.

“Hello, Tom,” said Uncle Albert, “why on earth are you sitting there; why don’t you go INSIDE the carriage out of the rain?”

“Can’t you see?” said Tom, “the carriage they sent me was a non-smoker!”

2. A fire in 1834 … (**to destroy**) the greater part of the old Palace of Westminster, which … (**to be**) the usual meeting place of Parliament since the 13th century.

The new palace, designed by Sir Charles Barry and Augustus W. N. Pugin, … (**to begin**) in 1840, and … (**to complete**) in 1860. The chamber … (**to use**) continuously by the House of Lords since 1847, except between 1941 and 1951, when the Lords … (**to give up**) it to the Commons (whose own chamber … (**to destroy**) by enemy action) and … (**to meet**) in the Queen's Robing Room, at the southern end of the building.

The present chamber of the House of Commons … (**to design**) by the late Sir Giles Gilbert Scott and … (**to open**) in 1950. It … (**to replace**) the Chamber designed by Sir Charles Barry, first used by the Commons in 1852, and destroyed by German bombing in 1941. The Commons … (**to acquire**) their first permanent home in 1547, when St Stephen's Chapel … (**to make**) available. It … (**to use**) by the House until 1834, when it … (**to destroy**) by the fire which … (**to ravage**) almost the whole Palace of Westminster. In its shape and size the present chamber … (**to be**) almost a replica of Barry's, though its decoration … (**to be**) less ornate, and larger galleries … (**to provide**) for visitors.

3. One evening after dinner my friend and I … (**to sit**) in his rooms. After being invalided out of the Army I … (**to give**) a recruiting job, and it … (**to become**) my custom to drop in on Poirot in the evenings after dinner and talk with him of any cases of interest that he might have on hand.

I … (**to attempt**) to discuss with him the sensational news of that day — no less than an attempted assassination of Mr. David MacAdam, England's Prime Minister. The account in the papers evidently … (**to censor**) carefully. No details … (**to give**), save that the Prime Minister … (**to have**) a marvellous escape, the bullet just grazing his cheek.

Poirot … (**to be**) about to say something when the landlady … (**to thrust**) her head round the door and … (**to inform**) him that there … (**to be**) two gentlemen who … (**to want**) to see him. "They … (**not**, **to give**) their names, sir, but they say it … (**to be**) very important."

2. A fire in 1834 destroyed the greater part of the old Palace of Westminster, which had been the usual meeting place of Parliament since the 13th century.

The new palace, designed by Sir Charles Barry and Augustus W. N. Pugin, was begun in 1840, and completed in 1860. The chamber has been used continuously by the House of Lords since 1847, except between 1941 and 1951, when the Lords gave it up to the Commons (whose own chamber had been destroyed by enemy action) and met in the Queen's Robing Room, at the southern end of the building.

The present chamber of the House of Commons was designed by the late Sir Giles Gilbert Scott and opened in 1950. It replaced the Chamber designed by Sir Charles Barry, first used by the Commons in 1852, and destroyed by German bombing in 1941. The Commons acquired their first permanent home in 1547, when St Stephen's Chapel was made available. It was used by the House until 1834, when it was destroyed by the fire which ravaged almost the whole Palace of Westminster. In its shape and size the present chamber is almost a replica of Barry's, though its decoration is less ornate, and larger galleries have been provided for visitors.

3. One evening after dinner my friend and I were sitting in his rooms. After being invalided out of the Army I had been given a recruiting job, and it had become my custom to drop in on Poirot in the evenings after dinner and talk with him of any cases of interest that he might have on hand.

I was attempting to discuss with him the sensational news of that day — no less than an attempted assassination of Mr. David MacAdam, England's Prime Minister. The account in the papers had evidently been carefully censored. No details were given, save that the Prime Minister had had a marvellous escape, the bullet just grazing his cheek.

Poirot was about to say something when the landlady thrust her head round the door and informed him that there were two gentlemen who wanted to see him. "They didn't give their names, sir, but they say it is very important."

In a few minutes the two visitors … (**to usher**) in, and my heart … (**to give**) a leap as I … (**to recognize**) Lord Estair, Leader of the House of Commons, and Mr. Bernard Dodge, who … (**to be**) also a member of the War Cabinet, and, as I … (**to know**) a close personal friend of the Prime Minister.

The former said, "Monsieur Poirot, I … (**to come**) to consult you upon a matter of the most vital urgency. I … (**must**) ask for absolute secrecy. It … (**to concern**) the Prime Minister. We … (**to be**) in grave trouble."

"The injury … (**to be**) serious, then?" I asked.

"What injury?"

"The bullet wound."

"That affair … (**to be**) over and done with. Luckily, it … (**to fail**). I wish I could say as much for the second attempt."

"There … (**to be**) a second attempt, then?"

"Yes, though not of the same nature. Monsieur Poirot, the Prime Minister … (**to disappear**)."

"What?"

"He … (**to kidnap**)!"…

Poirot … (**to look**) at Mr. Dodge. "You … (**to say**) just now that the matter … (**to be**) urgent and time … (**to be**) everything. What … (**you**, **to mean**) by that?"

The two men … (**to exchange**) glances, and then Lord Estair … (**to say**):

"… (**you**, **to hear**), Monsieur Poirot, of the approaching Allied Conference?"

My friend … (**to nod**).

"For obvious reasons, no details … (**to give**) of when and where it … (**must**) take place. But, although it … (**to keep**) out of the newspapers, the date of course … (**to know**) widely in diplomatic circles. The Conference … (**must**, **to hold**) tomorrow — Thursday-evening at Versailles. I … (**not**, **to conceal**) from you that the Prime Minister's presence at the Conference … (**to be**) of vital necessity. We … (**to have**) no one who … (**can**, **to send**) in his place." <…>

In a few minutes the two visitors were ushered in, and my heart gave a leap as I recognized Lord Estair, Leader of the House of Commons, and Mr. Bernard Dodge, who was also a member of the War Cabinet, and, as I knew a close personal friend of the Prime Minister.

The former said, "Monsieur Poirot, I have come to consult you upon a matter of the most vital urgency. I must ask for absolute secrecy. It concerns the Prime Minister. We are in grave trouble."

"The injury is serious, then?" I asked.

"What injury?"

"The bullet wound."

"Oh, that! That affair is over and done with. Luckily, it failed. I wish I could say as much for the second attempt."

"There has been a second attempt, then?"

"Yes, though not of the same nature. Monsieur Poirot, the Prime Minister has disappeared."

"What?"

"He has been kidnapped!"…

Poirot looked at Mr. Dodge. "You said just now that the matter was urgent and time was everything. What did you mean by that?"

The two men exchanged glances, and then Lord Estair said:

"Have you heard, Monsieur Poirot, of the approaching Allied Conference?"

My friend nodded.

"For obvious reasons, no details have been given of when and where it is to take place. But, although it has been kept out of the newspapers, the date is, of course, widely known in diplomatic circles. The Conference is to be held tomorrow — Thursday-evening at Versailles. I won't conceal from you that the Prime Minister's presence at the Conference is of vital necessity. We have no one who can be sent in his place." <…>

Poirot … (**to ask**) for the details of the abduction.

“It … (**to take place**) in France. Mr. MacAdam … (**to cross**) to France this morning. He … (**must**) stay tonight as the guest of the Commander-in-Chief, proceeding tomorrow to Paris. He … (**to convey**) across the Channel by destroyer. At Boulogne he … (**to meet**) by a car from General Headquarters and one of the Commander-in-Chiefs A.D.C.s.”

“Eh bien?”

“Well, they … (**to start**) from Boulogne — but they never … (**to arrive**). <…> It … (**to be**) a bogus car and a bogus A.D.C. The real car … (**to find**) in a side road, with the chauffeur and the A.D.C. neatly gagged and bound. <…> And the bogus car … (**to be**) still at large.”

Poirot … (**to make**) a gesture of impatience. “Incredible!”

“It … (**to be**), as you say, incredible — but nothing … (**to discover**) yet! <…> The Prime Minister … (**to hold**) somewhere secretly by the kidnappers!”

Exercise 6

REVISION

Find mistakes and correct them.

MODEL: This work will be done tomorrow.
St. Petersburg was found in 1703.

1. The restaurant we were invited was quite far away.
2. The problem has being studied for three years, but they haven’t got any results.
3. The book will have been published by the end of the year.
4. The house had to paint.
5. We were announced the results of the contest by the head of the jury.
6. I haven’t been said about the meeting.
7. His face was covered with scratches. He had been fighting again.

Poirot asked for the details of the abduction.

“It took place in France. Mr. MacAdam crossed to France this morning. He was to stay tonight as the guest of the Commander-in-Chief, proceeding tomorrow to Paris. He was conveyed across the Channel by destroyer. At Boulogne he was met by a car from General Headquarters and one of the Commander-in-Chief’s A.D.C.s.”

“Eh bien?”

“Well, they started from Boulogne — but they never arrived. <…> It was a bogus car and a bogus A.D.C. The real car was found in a side road, with the chauffeur and the A.D.C. neatly gagged and bound. <…> And the bogus car is still at large.”

Poirot made a gesture of impatience. “Incredible!”

“It is, as you say, incredible — but nothing has been discovered yet! <…> The Prime Minister is being held somewhere secretly by the kidnappers!”

From Agatha Christie “The Kidnapped Prime Minister”

Упражнение 6

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

Найдите и исправьте ошибки.

RIGHT
WRONG — was founded

1. WRONG — The restaurant we were invited to was quite far away.
2. WRONG — has been studied
3. RIGHT
4. WRONG — had to be painted
5. WRONG — The results of the contest were announced to us …
6. WRONG — I haven’t been told about the meeting.
7. RIGHT

8. The letter has to be signed immediately.
9. She was looked with interest when she said it.
10. Don't come in. The room is been aired.
11. Children mustn't be let play with matches.
12. We weren't dictated the home task, it was written on the blackboard.
13. What is the ring made of?
14. You'll have to wait. Your article is editing.
15. Were you offered the new book by the librarian?
16. Has the accident been told you about?
17. A very important problem is touched in the book.
18. These windows haven't been cleaning for years.
19. Who will the house been built by?
20. He is often taken for his brother.
21. This note is written by a very bad pen, it's impossible to read it.
22. I'm afraid this plan will never be realized.
23. It wasn't explained to them what they were to do.
24. This event has been much spoken lately.
25. The film was quite different from the one we had been showed before.
26. What did you feel when this tune was played?
27. I was promised that you would be consulted on that problem.
28. It can't take that long! It must have already repaired.
29. The child was covered with a blanket by his mother.
30. What was the group being explained when you joined them?

8. RIGHT
9. WRONG — She was looked at with interest.
10. WRONG — is being aired
11. WRONG — mustn't be let to play
12. WRONG — The home task wasn't dictated to us.
13. RIGHT
14. WRONG — is being edited
15. RIGHT
16. WRONG — Have you been told about the accident?
17. WRONG — A very important problem is touched upon in the book.
18. WRONG — These windows haven't been cleaned for ages.
19. WRONG — Who will the house be built by?
20. RIGHT
21. WRONG — This note is written with a very bad pen.
22. RIGHT
23. RIGHT
24. WRONG — This event has been much spoken about lately.
25. WRONG –The film was quite different from the one we had been shown.
26. WRONG — What did you feel when this tune was being played?
27. RIGHT
28. WRONG — It must have already been repaired.
29. RIGHT
30. WRONG — What was being explained to the group when you joined them?

UNIT 21 THE SUNJUNCTIVE MOOD

21.1 Clauses of unreal condition

- *The construction **If I were you***
- *The construction **But for***

21.2 Object clauses after wish

21.1 Clauses of Unreal Condition

Study the following examples:

1. If he **drove** us to the station, we **would (could) catch** the 7 o'clock train. (the whole situation is in the present)
2. If he **had driven** us to the station yesterday, we **would (could) have caught** the 7 o'clock train. (the whole situation is in the past)
3. If he **were** a true friend, he **would have helped** you long ago. (the first part of the sentence refers to the present; the second part refers to the past)
4. If he **had phoned** you, you **wouldn't worry** now. (the first part of the sentence refers to the past and the second one refers to the present.)

NOTE:

If he had driven us to the station, we would have caught the 7-o'clock train. = We would have caught the 7-o'clock train if he had driven us to the station.

УРОК 21 СОСЛАГАТЕЛЬНОЕ НАКЛОНЕНИЕ

21.1 Придаточные нереального условия

- *Конструкция **If I were you***
- *Конструкция **But for***

21.2 Придаточные дополнительные после глагола **wish**

21.1 Придаточные нереального условия

Изучите следующие примеры:

1. *Если бы он отвез* нас на станцию, *мы бы успели* на семичасовой поезд,. (вся ситуация в настоящем времени)
2. *Если бы он отвез* нас на станцию (тогда), *мы бы успели* на семичасовой поезд. (вся ситуация в прошлом)
3. *Если бы он был* настоящим другом, *он бы* давно тебе *помог*. (первая часть предложения относится к настоящему, а вторая — к прошедшему времени.
4. *Если бы он* тебе *позвонил*, *ты бы* сейчас *не волновалась*. (первая часть предложения относится к прошедшему времени, а вторая — к настоящему.)

Части предложения возможно менять местами без потери смысла.

Compare the following examples:

1. If he were a polite person, he would always ask permission before taking other people's things. (He is not polite and never asks permission before taking other people's things.)
2. If he weren't a polite person, he wouldn't always ask permission before taking other people's things. (He is polite and always asks permission before taking other people's things.)

The construction IF I WERE YOU

If I **were** you (him, …), I **would go** there.

If I **were** you (him, …), I **would have gone** there long ago.

If I **were** you, I **wouldn't go** there.

If I **were** you, I **wouldn't have gone** there yesterday.

The construction BUT FOR

1. **But for the rain**, we **would (could) go** for a walk. (in the present or future)
2. **But for the rain**, we **would have gone** for a walk yesterday.

REMEMBER

1. He says he would do it if I helped him.
   (in the present or future).
   He said he would do it if I helped him.
   (the action is also referred to the present or future)
2. He says he would have done it if I had helped him.
   (in the past)
   He said he would have done it if I had helped him.
   (in the past)

Сравните следующие примеры:

1. Если бы он был вежливым человеком, он бы спрашивал разрешение прежде, чем брать чужие вещи. (Он невежливый человек и не спрашивает разрешения прежде, чем брать чужие вещи.)
2. Если бы он не был вежливым, он бы никогда не спрашивал разрешение прежде, чем брать чужие вещи. (Он вежливый и всегда спрашивает разрешение, прежде чем брать чужие вещи.)

Конструкция IF I WERE YOU

1. *На вашем месте* я бы сходил туда. (сейчас или в будущем)
2. *На вашем месте* я бы давно туда сходил.
3. *На вашем месте* я бы туда не ходил. (сейчас или в будущем)
4. *На вашем месте* я бы не ходил туда вчера.

Конструкция BUT FOR

1. *Если бы не* дождь, мы бы пошли гулять. (в настоящем или будущем)
2. *Если бы не* дождь, мы бы вчера сходили погулять.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

В предложениях с придаточными нереального условия правила согласования времен не соблюдаются.

Exercise 1

Change the sentences according to the model.

MODEL: He isn't polite that's why he behaves like that.

1. Barbara won't come to my birthday party. I'm upset.
2. Jack never keeps his word. I don't believe him.
3. They think that swimming is useful that's why they go to the swimming pool three times a week.
4. I'm tired. I can't join you.
5. Henry has got work to do. He refuses to go for a walk.
6. He doesn't go in for sports, which is why he falls ill often.
7. I can't afford a holiday this summer. I won't go to the seaside.
8. You aren't ready. I'll go without you.
9. He is selfish, and that is the reason why he has no friends.
10. You don't walk much that's why you feel bad.
11. I can't afford a new car that's why I use the old one.
12. He is cross with you because you can't behave properly.

Exercise 2

Translate into English.

1. Если бы погода была хорошая, мы бы пошли гулять.
2. Если бы я знал его номер, я бы ему сейчас позвонил.
3. Если бы у меня было время, я бы покатался на велосипеде.
4. Если бы я не так устал, я бы пошел с тобой.
5. Если бы дом не был таким большим, он бы не продавался.
6. Если бы не шел дождь, мы бы поехали загород.
7. Я бы поговорил с ними, если бы знал английский.
8. Я бы принял участие в соревновании, если бы чувствовал себя лучше.
9. Если бы у меня сейчас были с собой деньги, я бы купил эту книгу.
10. Если бы ты представила меня ему, я была бы тебе благодарна.

Упражнение 1

Преобразуйте предложение, как показано в модели.

If he were polite he wouldn't behave like that.

1. If Barbara came to my birthday party, I wouldn't be upset.
2. If he kept his word, I would believe him.
3. If they didn't think swimming is useful, they wouldn't go to the swimming pool three times a week.
4. If I weren't tired, I would join you.
5. If Henry hadn't got work to do, he wouldn't refuse to go for a walk.
6. If he went in for sports, he wouldn't fall ill often.
7. If I could afford a holiday this summer, I would go to the seaside.
8. If you were ready, I wouldn't go without you.
9. If he weren't so selfish, he would have friends.
10. If you walked much, you wouldn't feel bad.
11. If I could afford a new car, I wouldn't use the old one.
12. He wouldn't be cross with you, if you could behave properly.

Упражнение 2

Переведите на английский.

1. If the weather were/was good, we would go for a walk.
2. If I knew his telephone number, I would ring him up now.
3. If I had time, I would ride my bicycle.
4. If I weren't so tired, I would go with you.
5. If the house weren't/wasn't so large, it wouldn't be for sale.
6. If it weren't raining, we would go to the country.
7. I would speak with them, if I knew English.
8. I would take part in the competition, if I felt better.
9. If I had the money now, I would buy this book.
10. If you introduced me to him, I would be grateful to you.

Exercise 3

Make sentences using subjunctive mood.

MODEL: He was rude to her yesterday that's why they quarrelled.

1. I couldn't get him on the phone that was why I didn't tell him the news.
2. As so many years had passed I couldn't recognise him.
3. The team had a lot of practice, as a result they won.
4. He advised me to take an umbrella.
5. She didn't have time yesterday that was why she didn't stay to dinner.
6. She threw away some important papers which made me angry.
7. As we had a lot of luggage we took a taxi.
8. It was your carelessness that led to an accident.
9. You should have explained to him how to get here. I think he has lost his way.
10. As we had left the camera at home we didn't take pictures.

Exercise 4

Translate into English.

1. Если бы ты сразу сказал правду, они бы тебе помогли.
2. Я бы присоединилась к вам тогда, если бы не заболела.
3. Если бы ты его встретил, он бы не заблудился.
4. Если бы он не одолжил мне денег, я бы не смог купить машину.
5. Если бы ты зашла ко мне в прошлую пятницу, я бы познакомила тебя с ним.

Упражнение 3

Составьте предложения с придаточными нереального условия.

If he hadn't been rude to her yesterday they wouldn't have quarrelled.

1. If I had got him on the phone, I would have told him the news.
2. If so many years hadn't passed, I would have recognised him.
3. If the team hadn't had much practice, they wouldn't have won.
4. If he hadn't advised me to do so, I wouldn't have taken an umbrella.
5. If she had had time yesterday she would have stayed to dinner.
6. If she hadn't thrown away some important papers, I wouldn't have been angry.
7. If we hadn't had much luggage, we wouldn't have taken a taxi.
8. If you hadn't been so careless, there would have been no accident.
9. If you had explained to him how to get here, he wouldn't have lost his way.
10. If we hadn't left the camera at home, we would have taken pictures.

Упражнение 4

Переведите на английский.

1. If you had told the truth at once they would have helped you.
2. I would have joined you then if I hadn't fallen ill.
3. If you had met him, he wouldn't have lost his way.
4. If he hadn't lent me money, I wouldn't have been able to by a car.
5. If you had called on me last Friday, I would have introduced him to you.

6. Они могли бы добиться успеха, если бы постарались.
7. Если бы Тим не отобрал игрушку у Вилли, они бы не подрались.
8. Он бы не отказался отвезти тебя на станцию вчера, если бы не торопился.
9. Если бы ты вызвал полицию, она бы его арестовали.
10. Я бы не пришла, если бы он меня не попросил.

Exercise 5

Change the sentences according to the model.

MODEL: He is absent-minded. He missed the train again yesterday.

1. He is selfish, that's why he said it.
2. He is very busy that's why he didn't help you yesterday.
3. I know him very well that's why I stopped all relations with him long ago.
4. He studies hard and has achieved great results.
5. The book is interesting. I've read it twice.
6. He is a good doctor. He has helped a lot of people.
7. He has a lot of practice. He has set a new record.
8. You are lazy, that's why you didn't go there yourself.
9. The summer is cold, that's why we haven't gone to the country.
10. I don't like going by plane, that's why I went there by train.

6. They could have achieved success if they had tried harder.
7. If Tim hadn't taken the toy away from Willy, they wouldn't have had a fight.
8. He wouldn't have refused to drive you to the station yesterday if he hadn't been in a hurry.
9. If you had called the police, they would have arrested him.
10. I wouldn't have come if he hadn't asked me.

Упражнение 5

Преобразуйте предложения, как показано в модели.

If he weren't absent-minded he wouldn't have missed the train again yesterday.

1. If he weren't selfish, he wouldn't have said it.
2. If he weren't so busy, he would have helped you yesterday.
3. If I didn't know him very well, I wouldn't have stopped all relations with him long ago.
4. If he didn't study hard, he wouldn't have achieved great results.
5. If the book weren't interesting, I wouldn't have read it twice.
6. If he weren't a good doctor, he wouldn't have helped many people.
7. If he didn't have much practice, he wouldn't have set a new record.
8. If you weren't so lazy, you would have gone there yourself.
9. If the summer weren't so cold, we would have gone to the country.
10. If I liked going by plane, I wouldn't have gone there by train.

Exercise 6

Translate into English.

1. Если бы он был ответственным человеком, он бы давно все сделал.
2. Если бы эта лампа работала, я бы ее давно включил.
3. Если бы эта река была чистая, мы бы давно в ней искупались.
4. Если бы я любил такое мороженое, я бы давно его съел.
5. Он бы давно все сделал, если бы знал, как это делать.
6. Я бы надела вчера это платье, если бы у меня были к нему туфли.
7. Если бы все не критиковали этот фильм, я бы его давно посмотрел.
8. Если бы лето не было таким жарким, я бы вчера не стал здесь купаться.
9. Если бы я умел водить, я бы давно купил себе машину.
10. Если бы она умела играть в теннис, она бы присоединилась к нам.

Exercise 7

Change the sentences according to the model.

MODEL: You didn't learn the rule, that's why you can't translate the sentence.

1. You haven't prepared anything and we have to wait for you now.
2. You didn't book a room beforehand that's why you have problems now.
3. As you haven't seen the film we can't discuss it now.
4. You didn't warn us beforehand and we are in trouble now.
5. You haven't taken the medicine that's why you feel bad now.

Упражнение 6

Переведите на английский.

1. If he were a responsible person, he would have done everything long ago.
2. If this lamp worked, I would have switched it on long ago.
3. If the river were clean, we would have bathed in it long ago.
4. If I liked such ice-cream, I would have eaten it long ago.
5. He would have done everything long ago if he knew how to do it.
6. I would have put on this dress yesterday if I had shoes to match.
7. If everybody didn't criticise this film, I would have seen it long ago.
8. If the summer weren't so hot, I wouldn't have bathed here yesterday.
9. If I could drive, I would have bought a car long ago.
10. If she could play tennis, she would have joined us.

Упражнение 7

Преобразуйте предложения, как показано в модели.

If you had learned the rule you would be able to translate the sentence.

1. If you had prepared everything, we wouldn't have to wait for you now.
2. If you had booked a room beforehand, you wouldn't have problems now.
3. If you had seen the film, we could discuss it now.
4. If you had warned us beforehand, we wouldn't be in trouble now.
5. If you had taken the medicine, you wouldn't feel bad now.

6. You didn't clean the room yesterday, so you have to do it now.
7. I didn't learn English at school that's why I can't speak with them now.
8. You didn't buy a piano for him when he was a child that's why he can't play the piano now.
9. He hasn't given up smoking yet, that's why he feels worse and worse.
10. You were too demanding when he was a child that's why he lacks self-confidence now.

Exercise 8

Translate into English.

1. Если бы ты зашел в магазин по дороге домой, ты бы мог сейчас поужинать и не был бы голодным.
2. Если бы ты позвонил ему заранее, мы бы сейчас знали, когда он придет.
3. Если бы он взял такси, он бы уже был здесь.
4. Тебе не пришлось бы теперь занимать денег, если бы ты не потратил все на цветы.
5. Если бы ты окончил университет, у тебя была бы сейчас хорошая работа.
6. Тебе не было бы сейчас плохо, если бы ты не ел так много на обед.
7. Если бы ты последовал совету врача, ты бы сейчас был здоров.
8. Если бы вы посмотрели это слово в словаре, вы бы знали, как оно пишется.
9. Если бы самолет не опоздал, мы бы сейчас были дома.
10. Если бы ты купила то платье, то могла бы его сейчас надеть.

6. If you had cleaned the room yesterday, you wouldn't have to do it now.
7. If I had learned English at school, I would be able to speak with them now.
8. If you had bought a piano for him when he was a child, he would be able to play the piano now.
9. If he had given up smoking, he wouldn't feel worse and worse.
10. If you hadn't been too demanding when he was a child, he wouldn't lack self-confidence now.

Упражнение 8

Переведите на английский.

1. If you had done the shopping on your way home, you could have supper now and wouldn't be hungry.
2. If you had rung him up beforehand, we would know now when he will come.
3. If he had taken a taxi, he would be here now.
4. You wouldn't have to borrow money now if you hadn't spent everything on flowers.
5. If you had graduated from the university, you would have a good job now.
6. You wouldn't feel sick now if you hadn't eaten that much for lunch.
7. If you had taken the doctor's advice, you would be well now.
8. If you had looked up the word in a dictionary you would know how to spell it.
9. If the plane hadn't been delayed, we would be at home now.
10. If you had bought that dress, you could put it on now.

Exercise 9

Translate into English.

1. Он сказал, что если бы погода сейчас была хорошая, мы бы пошли погулять.
2. Мать полагала, что если бы Тим не отобрал игрушку у Вилли, они бы не подрались.
3. Она сказала, что если бы самолет не опоздал, мы бы уже были дома.
4. Ребенок объяснил, что если бы он любил такое мороженое, он бы его уже съел.
5. Пол сказал, что если бы Тед был ответственным человеком, он бы уже закончил работу.
6. Он сказал, что если бы он понимал суть проблемы, он бы нам помог.
7. Джорж сказал, что если бы у него был ее адрес, он послал бы ей приглашение.
8. Она считала, что если бы на него можно было положиться, она могла бы обратиться к нему за помощью.

Exercise 10

Change the following sentences using **IF I WERE YOU**.

MODEL: I don't want to go there.
I didn't take his advice.

1. I didn't take part in the conference.
2. I don't learn English.
3. I eat a lot of sweets and biscuits.
4. I took a taxi to get there.
5. I don't grow flowers in the garden.
6. I didn't swim much in the sea during the vacation.
7. I smoke.
8. I didn't tell him the news.
9. I didn't buy that bag.
10. I always rely on him.

Упражнение 9

Переведите на английский.

1. He said that if the weather were good now, we would go for a walk.
2. The mother believed that if Tim hadn't taken the toy away from Willy, they wouldn't have had a fight.
3. She said that if the plane hadn't been delayed, we would already be at home.
4. The child explained that if he liked such ice-cream, he would have already eaten it.
5. Paul said that if Ted were a responsible person, he would have already completed the work.
6. He said that if he understood the point of the problem, he would help us.
7. George said that if he had her address, he would send her an invitation.
8. She believed that if he could be relied on, she could turn to him for help.

Упражнение 10

Составьте предложения, используя IF I WERE YOU.

If I were you I would go there.
If I were you I would have taken his advice.

1. If I were you, I would have taken part in the conference.
2. If I were you, I would learn English.
3. If I were you, I wouldn't eat many sweets and biscuits.
4. If I were you, I wouldn't have taken a taxi to get there.
5. If I were you, I would grow flowers in the garden.
6. If I were you, I would have swum in the sea a lot during the vacation.
7. If I were you, I wouldn't smoke.
8. If I were you, I would have told him the news.
9. If I were you, I would have bought that bag.
10. If I were you, I wouldn't always rely on him.

Exercise 11

Read the text below and explain why Billy is glad that his teacher doesn't ask him difficult questions at the lesson.

a)

— You know, Mother, my teacher never asks me difficult questions.

— But why?

— Well, if he (**to ask**) me difficult questions, I (**to be nervous**). And if I (**to be nervous**), I (**to make**) mistakes. And if I (**to make**) mistakes the other children (**to laugh**) at me. And if the other children (**to laugh**) at me, I (**to feel**) ashamed. And if I (**to feel**) ashamed, I (**to cry**).

b) Now explain why Billy is glad that his teacher didn't ask him difficult questions at the last lesson.

Billy is glad that his teacher didn't ask him difficult questions at the last lesson because if he (**to ask**) him difficult questions, he (**to be nervous**). And if he (**to be nervous**), he (**to make**) mistakes. And If he (**to make**) mistakes the other children (**to laugh**) at him. And if the other children (**to laugh**) at him, he (**to feel**) ashamed. And if he (**to feel**) ashamed, he (**to cry**).

Exercise 12

Change the following sentences according to the model.

MODEL:

1. **The weather is bad, that's why we have to stay at home.**
2. **The weather was good and we didn't stay at home.**

1. Because of the snow the flight was delayed.
2. Only his manners gave him away. We understood he was a foreigner.
3. There is a good film on TV today. I won't go with you.
4. He has given us good advice. Now we know what to do.

Упражнение 11

Прочтите текст и объясните, почему Билли рад, что его учитель не задает ему трудных вопросов на уроке.

а)

Billy is glad that his teacher doesn't ask him difficult questions at the lesson because if he asked him difficult questions, he would be nervous. And if he were nervous, he would make mistakes. And if he made mistakes, the other children would laugh at him. And if the other children laughed at him, he would feel ashamed. And if he felt ashamed, he would cry.

б) Теперь объясните, почему Билли рад, что учитель не задавал ему трудных вопросов на последнем уроке.

Billy is glad that his teacher didn't ask him difficult questions at the last lesson because if he had asked him difficult questions, he would have been nervous. And if he had been nervous, he would have made mistakes. And if he had made mistakes, the other children would have laughed at him. And if the other children had laughed at him, he would have felt ashamed. And if he had felt ashamed, he would have cried.

Упражнение 12

Измените предложения, как показано в модели.

1. **But for the bad weather we wouldn't stay at home.**
2. **But for the good weather we would have stayed at home.**

1. But for the snow, the flight wouldn't have been delayed.
2. But for his manners, we wouldn't have understood he was a foreigner.
3. But for the film, I would go with you.
4. But for his advice, we wouldn't know what to do.

5. His leg was injured that was why he didn't take part in the match yesterday.
6. Unfortunately you made this bad mistake, so your paper is not very good.
7. I've got some problems, that's why I can't go on holiday now.
8. I liked the car but the price was very high, so I didn't buy it.
9. Because of his awful behaviour the party was spoiled.
10. The accident happened because of the driver's carelessness.
11. The frost is too strong. We won't go skating.
12. She is so upset because of your words.
13. He lost the game because of his impatience.
14. Only he noticed the strange man.
15. I had a photo of her. It helped me to recognize her.

Exercise 13

Translate into English.

1. Если бы не изменения в расписании, я пришел бы вовремя.
2. Если бы не она, мы не знали бы правду.
3. Если бы не его рассеянность, он был бы хорошим специалистом.
4. Если бы не статья, я бы не знал об этом открытии.
5. Если бы не болезнь, она бы поехала отдыхать в прошлом месяце.
6. Если бы не этот случай, они бы не встретились и не поженились.
7. Если бы не жара, я бы чувствовал себя лучше.
8. Если бы не идея его друга, он бы не написал этот роман.
9. Если бы не мой учитель, я бы не говорил по-английски свободно.
10. Если бы не он, она бы не нашла работу.
11. Если бы не мои друзья, я не был бы счастлив.
12. Если бы не это открытие, много людей умерло бы от разных болезней.

5. But for his leg he would have taken part in the match yesterday.
6. But for this bad mistake, your paper would be very good.
7. But for some problems, I would go on holiday now.
8. But for the high price, I would have bought the car.
9. But for his behaviour, the party wouldn't have been spoiled.
10. But for the driver's carelessness, the accident wouldn't have happened.
11. But for the strong frost, we would go skating.
12. But for your words, she wouldn't be so upset.
13. But for his impatience, he wouldn't have lost the game.
14. But for him, nobody would have noticed the strange man.
15. But for the photo, I wouldn't have recognized her.

Упражнение 13

Переведите на английский.

1. But for the changes in the timetable, I would have come on time.
2. But for her, we wouldn't know the truth.
3. But for his absent-mindedness, he would be a good specialist.
4. But for the article, I wouldn't know about this discovery.
5. But for her illness, she would have gone on holiday last month.
6. But for this incident, they wouldn't have met and got married.
7. But for the hot weather, I would feel better.
8. But for his friend's idea, he wouldn't have written this novel.
9. But for my teacher, I wouldn't speak English fluently.
10. But for him, she wouldn't have found a job.
11. But for my friends, I wouldn't be happy.
12. But for this discovery, many people would have died of different diseases.

21.2 Object clauses after WISH

Study the following examples:

1. I wish he **came** earlier. (the situation refers to the present or to the future)
2. I wish he **had come** in time. (the situation refers to the past)
3. I wish he **didn't know** about it. (the situation refers to the present)
4. I wish he **hadn't learnt** the truth. (the situation refers to the past)

Exercise 14

Make sentences using **I WISH**.

MODEL: He can't drive a car.

1. He isn't at home now.
2. They are not on good terms.
3. She often misses classes.
4. They don't often go to the theatre.
5. This is not my car.
6. She often loses things.
7. The weather is bad.
8. I don't know his name.
9. I can't afford a holiday two times a year.
10. I don't have a house in the country.
11. I'm not with them now.
12. This video-set costs a lot.
13. The food here is rather bad.

21.2 Придаточные дополнительные после глагола WISH

Изучите следующие примеры:

1. Хорошо бы он пришел пораньше. (ситуация относится к настоящему или будущему)
2. Жаль, что он не пришел вовремя. Мне хотелось, чтобы он пришел вовремя. (ситуация относится к прошлому)
3. Жаль, что он знает об этом. Мне бы не хотелось, чтобы он знал об этом. (ситуация относится к настоящему)
4. Жаль, что он узнал правду. Мне бы не хотелось, чтобы он узнал правду. (ситуация относится к прошлому)

Упражнение 14

Составьте предложения, используя **I WISH**.

I wish he could drive a car.

1. I wish he were at home now.
2. I wish they were on good terms.
3. I wish she didn't miss classes.
4. I wish they went to the theatre more often.
5. I wish it were my car.
6. I wish she didn't lose thing so often.
7. I wish the weather weren't bad.
8. I wish I knew his name.
9. I wish I could afford a holiday two times a year.
10. I wish I had a house in the country.
11. I wish I were with them now.
12. I wish it didn't cost that much.
13. I wish the food here weren't that bad.

14. Summers are very hot here.
15. My wife can't cook.
16. My boss shouts at me every day.
17. I don't speak French.
18. We don't travel much.
19. The telephone connection is poor.

Exercise 15

Translate into English.

1. Жаль, что я не знаю, как его зовут.
2. Жаль, что она живет далеко от меня.
3. Жаль, что сейчас не июль.
4. Жаль, что мы не можем с ним связаться.
5. Жаль, что я не понимаю его.
6. Жаль, что в комнате нет компьютера.
7. Жаль, что я не умею плавать.
8. Жаль, что у него нет велосипеда.
9. Жаль, что вы не интересуетесь искусством.
10. Жаль, что он такой ленивый.
11. Был бы он более ответственным.
12. Был бы у меня дом на Багамах!
13. Было бы сегодня солнечно!
14. Знал бы я номер его телефона!
15. Умел бы я хорошо танцевать!
16. Мог бы я присоединиться к вам!
17. Жил бы я в центре города!
18. Жаль, что никто не может мне помочь.
19. Жаль, что я не умею петь.
20. Были бы у меня длинные волосы.

14. I wish summers weren't hot here.
15. I wish my wife could cook.
16. I wish my boss didn't shout at me every day.
17. I wish I spoke French.
18. I wish we travelled more
19. I wish the telephone connection weren't poor.

Упражнение 15

Переведите на английский.

1. I wish I knew his name.
2. I wish she didn't live far from my place.
3. I wish it were July now.
4. I wish we could get in touch with him.
5. I wish I understood him.
6. I wish there were a computer in the room.
7. I wish I could swim.
8. I wish he had a bicycle.
9. I wish you were interested in art.
10. I wish he weren't so lazy.
11. I wish he were more responsible.
12. I wish I had a house on the Bahamas.
13. I wish it were sunny today.
14. I wish I knew his telephone number.
15. I wish I could dance well.
16. I wish I could join you.
17. I wish I lived in the city centre.
18. I wish somebody could help me.
19. I wish I could sing.
20. I wish I had long hair.

Exercise 16

Make sentences using **I WISH**.

MODEL: I met Paul yesterday.

1. 1. I bought a new car last month.
2. 2. I didn't recognize her.
3. 3. I didn't go to the seaside last year.
4. 4. I asked him for help.
5. 5. My child didn't sleep well at night.
6. 6. Dinner wasn't ready when I came home.
7. 7. It rained the whole day yesterday.
8. 8. He told me the truth.
9. 9. My wife didn't wake me up and I overslept.
10. 10. There were many people in the park yesterday.
11. 11. My telephone didn't work yesterday.
12. 12. I saw the accident happen.
13. 13. I didn't catch the 9 o'clock train.
14. 14. They have put off the meeting.
15. 15. The flight was delayed.
16. 16. My uncle came to see me on Friday.
17. 17. I smoked quite much when I was young.
18. 18. A policeman fined me for bad driving yesterday.
19. 19. I was too tired yesterday.
20. 20. I have drunk too much coffee today. I feel sick.

Exercise 17

Translate into English.

1. Жаль, что вы все перепутали.
2. Жаль, что он потратил так много времени.
3. Жаль, что я не купил тот диван.
4. Жаль, что я не взял машину напрокат.
5. Жаль, что вас не было дома.
6. Жаль, что он не сделал все как следует.

Упражнение 16

Составьте предложения, используя **I WISH**.

I wish I hadn't met him.

1. Now I wish I hadn't bought it.
2. I wish I had recognized her.
3. I wish I had gone to the seaside last year.
4. I wish I hadn't asked him for help.
5. I wish my child had slept well at night.
6. I wish dinner had been ready when I came home.
7. I wish it hadn't rained the whole day yesterday.
8. I wish he hadn't told me the truth.
9. I wish my wife had woken me up.
10. I wish there hadn't been many people in the park yesterday.
11. I wish my telephone had worked yesterday.
12. I wish I hadn't seen the accident happen.
13. I wish I had caught the 9 o'clock train.
14. I wish they hadn't put off the meeting.
15. I wish the flight hadn't been delayed.
16. I wish he hadn't come to see me.
17. I wish I hadn't smoked much.
18. I wish the policeman hadn't fined me for bad driving yesterday.
19. I wish I hadn't been so tired yesterday.
20. I wish I hadn't drunk much coffee today.

Упражнение 17

Переведите на английский.

1. I wish you hadn't mixed up everything.
2. I wish he hadn't wasted so much time.
3. I wish I had bought that sofa.
4. I wish I had rented a car.
5. I wish you had been at home.
6. I wish he had done everything properly.

7. Жаль, что ты не заказал номер в этой гостинице.
8. Жаль, что они проиграли.
9. Жаль, что она в то время болела.
10. Жаль, что они отсутствовали.
11. Жаль, что эта чашка разбилась.
12. Жаль, что ты выбросил эту газету.
13. Жаль, что мы не встретились на прошлой неделе.
14. Жаль, что тебе потребовалось много времени, чтобы прочитать эту книгу.
15. Жаль, что ты не сделал еще одну попытку.
16. Жаль, что она нам солгала.
17. Жаль, что я мало читал в юности.
18. Жаль, что я женился в двадцать лет.
19. Она жалеет, что бросила учебу.
20. Мне жаль, что я был так груб.

Exercise 18

Here is a situation when a wife is displeased with her husband because he didn't warn her that his parents were coming to dinner.

a) Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs in the correct form.

to tell, to buy (2), to be (2), to go, to spend

Why didn't you tell me your parents were coming to dinner? If you … me your parents were coming to dinner, I … more food. If I … more food, there … enough for everybody to eat. And if there … enough for everybody to eat, we … to an expensive restaurant. And if we … to an expensive restaurant, we … so much money. And if we … so much money, we … in the red now.

7. I wish you had booked a room at this hotel.
8. I wish they hadn't lost.
9. I wish she hadn't been ill at that time.
10. I wish they hadn't been absent.
11. I wish this cup hadn't broken.
12. I wish you hadn't thrown away this newspaper.
13. I wish we had met last week.
14. I wish it hadn't taken you long to read this book.
15. I wish you had made another attempt.
16. I wish she hadn't lied to us.
17. I wish I had read more when I was young.
18. I wish I hadn't got married at twenty.
19. She wishes she hadn't given up her studies.
20. I wish I hadn't been so rude.

Упражнение 18

Вам предложена ситуация, когда жена недовольна мужем, потому что он не предупредил ее, что к обеду придут его родители.

a) Заполните пропуски словами, подходящими по смыслу.

Why didn't you tell me your parents were coming to dinner? If you had told me your parents were coming to dinner, I would have bought more food. And if I had bought more food, there would have been enough for everybody to eat. And if there had been enough for everybody to eat, we wouldn't have gone to an expensive restaurant. And if we hadn't gone to an expensive restaurant, we wouldn't have spent so much money. And if we hadn't spent so much money, we wouldn't be in the red now.

b) Why is the wife so much upset?
Make up sentences starting with **She wishes**.

1. She wishes he (**to tell**) her his parents were coming to dinner.
2. She wishes she (**to buy**) more food.
3. She wishes there (**to be**) enough food for everybody to eat.
4. She wishes they (**not to go**) to an expensive restaurant.
5. She wishes they (**not to spend**) so much money.
6. She wishes they (**to be in the red**) now.

c) What does she expect?
Make sentences starting with **She wishes**.

1. She wishes he always (**to tell**) her his parents are coming.
2. She wishes she always (**to buy**) more food when his parents come.
3. She wishes there always (**to be**) enough food for everybody to eat.
4. She wishes they (**not to go**) to expensive restaurants very often.
5. She wishes they (**to spend**) less money.
6. She wishes they (**to have**) more money.

Exercise 19

REVISION

Translate into English.

1. Если бы он всегда говорил правду, я бы не сомневался в его словах.
2. Если бы я был голодным, я бы что-нибудь поел.
3. Он сказал, что если бы знал эту песню, то присоединился бы к нам сейчас.
4. Если бы не твоя просьба, я бы не стал завтра с ним встречаться.
5. Если бы ты не одолжил мне денег, мне бы сейчас было не на что жить.
6. Если бы не он, я бы упал.
7. Если бы он тебе не доверял, он бы не обратился к тебе за помощью.

б) Почему она так расстроена?
Составьте предложения с **She wishes**.

1. She wishes he had told her his parents were coming to dinner.
2. She wishes she had bought more food.
3. She wishes there had been enough food for everybody to eat.
4. She wishes they hadn't gone to an expensive restaurant.
5. She wishes they hadn't spent so much money.
6. She wishes they weren't in the red now.

в) Чего она ожидает?
Составьте предложения с **She wishes**.

1. She wishes he always told her his parents are coming.
2. She wishes she bought more food when his parents come.
3. She wishes there were enough food for everybody to eat.
4. She wishes they didn't go to expensive restaurants often.
5. She wishes they spent less money.
6. She wishes they had more money.

Упражнение 19

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

Переведите на английский.

1. If he always told the truth, I wouldn't doubt his words.
2. If I were hungry, I would eat something.
3. He said that if he knew that song, he would join us.
4. But for your request, I wouldn't meet him tomorrow.
5. If you hadn't lent me money, I would have nothing to live on now.
6. But for him, I would have fallen down.
7. If he didn't trust you, he wouldn't have turned to you for help.

8. Если бы не будильник, я бы не проснулся вовремя.
9. Хотелось бы, чтобы вы говорили по теме.
10. Если бы не таксист, я бы оставила перчатки в такси.
11. Если бы она получила эту работу, она была бы счастлива. Но она боится, что не получит ее.
12. Хотелось бы, чтобы вы тут не курили.
13. Жаль, что вы не видели этого своими глазами.
14. Если бы не его характер, у него было бы больше друзей.
15. Если бы не его усилия, ничто не изменилось бы.
16. Жаль, что ты не запер дверь.
17. Жаль, что у меня нет карты.
18. Если бы она тогда не придерживалась диеты, она бы не похудела.
19. Жаль, что она так сильно изменилась.
20. Я бы уже давно закончил говорить, если бы ты меня все время не перебивал. Перестань меня перебивать.

8. But for the alarm clock, I wouldn't have woken up in time.
9. I wish you spoke to the point.
10. But for the taxi driver, I would have left my gloves in the taxi.
11. If she got this job, she would be happy. But she is afraid she won't get it.
12. I wish you didn't smoke here.
13. I wish you had seen it with your own eyes.
14. But for his temper, he would have more friends.
15. But for his efforts, nothing would have changed.
16. I wish you had locked the door.
17. I wish I had a map.
18. If she hadn't been on a diet, she wouldn't have lost weight.
19. I wish she hadn't changed so much.
20. I would have finished speaking long ago, if you didn't interrupt me all the time. Please, stop interrupting me.

UNIT 22 VERBALS

22.1 The Gerund
- *The Gerund as Subject*
- *The forms of the Gerund*
- *The Gerund in Use*

22.2 The Gerund and the Infinitive
- *The forms of the Infinitive*

22.3 The Participle

22.1 The Gerund

The Gerund as the Subject

Study the following examples:

1. It's very convenient to go there by bus.
   Going there by bus is convenient.
2. It's sometimes boring to listen to him.
   Listening to him is sometimes boring.

Exercise 1

Change the following sentences according to the model.

MODEL: It's very convenient to go there by car.

1. It' so uncomfortable to sleep on the floor.
2. It's great to meet old friends.
3. It's impolite to speak in a loud voice.
4. It's always useful to think.

УРОК 22 НЕЛИЧНЫЕ ФОРМЫ ГЛАГОЛА

22.1 Герундий
- *Герундий в функции подлежащего*
- *Формы герундия*
- *Употребление герундия*

22.2 Герундий и инфинитив
- *Формы инфинитива*

22.3 Причастие

22.1 Герундий

Герундий в функции подлежащего

Изучите следующие примеры:

1. Туда удобно ехать на автобусе.
2. Слушать его иногда утомительно.

Упражнение 1

Измените следующие предложения, как показано в модели.

Going there by car is convenient.

1. Sleeping on the floor is uncomfortable.
2. Meeting old friends is great.
3. Speaking in a loud voice is impolite.
4. Thinking is always useful.

5. It's boring to clean the flat.
6. It's interesting to teach.
7. It's exciting to travel to other countries.
8. It's simple to give advice.
9. It's not always clever to take other people's advice.
10. It's inconvenient to have much luggage.
11. It wasn't easy to follow the man.
12. It made him nervous to speak before a large audience.

The Forms of the Gerund

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
INDEFINITE	doing	being done
PERFECT	having done	having been done

NOTE:

The difference between **doing / having done** and **being done / having been done** is quite vague. It is possible to use Indefinite forms instead of Perfect forms.

Exercise 2

Change the sentences using Passive forms of the Gerund.

MODEL: I like visiting other people.

1. He always prefers telling the truth.
2. I don't mind sending him there.
3. I avoid visiting strangers.
4. I remember asking him for help.
5. I'm tired of asking questions.

5. Cleaning the flat is boring.
6. Teaching is interesting.
7. Travelling to other countries is exciting.
8. Giving advice is simple.
9. Taking other people's advice isn't always clever.
10. Having much luggage is inconvenient.
11. Following the man wasn't easy.
12. Speaking before a large audience made him nervous.

Формы герундия

I remember *telling* him about it. • Я помню, что говорил ему об этом.

I remember *being told* about it. • Я помню, что мне об этом говорили.

I remember *having told* him about it. • Я помню, что говорил ему об этом.

I remember *having been told* about it. • Я помню, что мне об этом говорили.

ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ:

Смысловая разница между **doing / having done** и **being done / having been done** весьма размыта. Допустимо употреблять формы Indefinite вместо Perfect.

Упражнение 2

Измените предложения, используя пассивную форму герундия.

I like being visited by other people.

1. He prefers being told the truth.
2. I don't mind being sent there.
3. I avoid being visited by strangers.
4. I remember being asked for help.
5. I'm tired of being asked questions.

6. I'm looking forward to showing them the place.
7. I object to doing this work now.
8. They insist on letting him in.
9. I avoid promising a lot.
10. Do you mind telling us how to do it?
11. Why are you afraid of asking him questions?
12. Why do you object to showing them the letter?
13. I don't mind leaving him alone.
14. I object to forcing him to do it.

The Gerund in Use

Study the following examples:

1. I don't mind opening the window.
   I don't mind his opening the window.
2. Do you mind opening the window?
   Do you mind my opening the window?
3. Why do you insist on leaving?
   Why do you insist on her leaving?

Exercise 3

Make sentences using the Gerund.

a) **MODEL: I can phone him. I don't mind it.**
You can phone him. I don't mind.

1. She can come later. We don't mind.
2. I will help him. I don't mind.
3. They can visit me. I don't mind.
4. You can turn up the volume. I don't mind.

6. I'm looking forward to being shown the place.
7. I object to the work being done now.
8. They insist on being let in.
9. I avoid being promised a lot.
10. Do you mind being told how to do it?
11. Why are you afraid of being asked questions?
12. Why do you object to being shown the letter?
13. I don't mind being left alone.
14. I object to being forced to do it.

Употребление герундия

Изучите следующие примеры:

1. Я не возражаю против того, чтобы открыть окно.
   Я не возражаю против того, чтобы он открыл окно.
2. Вы не возражаете против того, чтобы открыть окно?
   Вы не возражаете, если я открою окно?
3. Почему вы настаиваете на отъезде?
   Почему вы настаиваете на ее отъезде (на том, чтобы она уехала)?

Упражнение 3

Составьте предложения, используя герундий.

a) **I don't mind phoning him.**
I don't mind your phoning him.

1. We don't mind her coming later.
2. I don't mind helping him.
3. I don't mind their visiting me.
4. I don't mind your turning up the volume.

5. Can I turn on the TV set? Do you mind?
6. Can you switch off the light? Do you mind?
7. Can she talk to him? Do you mind?
8. Can I tell them about the plan? Do you mind?
9. She can take the papers. I don't mind.
10. They can play together. I don't mind.

b) **MODEL: I like it when they discuss a new project.**
I'm tired. They are making too much noise.

1. I like it when he plays the piano.
2. Aren't you tired? Stop telling lies.
3. He is always telling lies. Aren't you tired of it?
4. I like it when she sings old English songs.
5. I like it when he recites poetry.
6. They've been arguing with each other for two hours already. I'm tired of it.
7. The children asked a lot of questions and the nurse got tired.
8. I like to stay with them in summer.
9. I like it when she stays with us in summer.
10. Don't say the same thing again and again. I'm tired of it.

c) **MODEL: You shouldn't go there.**
You should apologise.

1. He shouldn't call the police.
2. He should get in touch with them at once.
3. You shouldn't operate on him now.
4. They should do the work themselves.
5. She should practise every day.
6. I don't want him to treat me.
7. You should answer their questions.
8. He shouldn't see this film. It's awful.
9. You can't shout at him.
10. He says you must join us.
11. You should book tickets in advance.
12. You shouldn't be so late.
13. He must give up smoking.
14. You can't interfere into their life.
15. You should look up all the new words in a dictionary.

5. Do you mind my turning on the TV set?
6. Do you mind switching off the light?
7. Do you mind her talking to him?
8. Do you mind my telling them about the plan?
9. I don't mind her taking the papers.
10. I don't mind their playing together.

б) **I enjoy their discussing a new project.**
I'm tired of their making too much noise.

1. I enjoy his playing the piano.
2. Aren't you tired of telling lies?
3. Aren't you tired of his telling lies?
4. I enjoy her singing old English songs.
5. I enjoy his reciting poetry.
6. I'm tired of their arguing with each other.
7. The nurse got tired of their asking a lot of questions.
8. I enjoy staying with them in summer.
9. I enjoy her staying with us in summer.
10. I'm tired of your saying the same thing again and again.

в) **I object to your going there.**
I insist on your apologising.

1. I object to his calling the police.
2. I insist on his getting in touch with them at once.
3. I object to your operating on him now.
4. I insist on their doing the work themselves.
5. I insist on her practising every day.
6. I object to his treating me.
7. I insist on your answering their questions.
8. I object to his seeing this film. It's awful.
9. I object to your shouting at him.
10. He insists on your joining us.
11. I insist on your booking tickets in advance.
12. I object to your being so late.
13. I insist on his giving up smoking.
14. I object to your interfering into their life.
15. I insist on your looking up all the new words in a dictionary.

Study the following examples:

1. **It's no use** *speaking* about it.
2. **What's the use of** *talking* about it?
3. His speech is **worth** *listening* to.
4. He **gave up** *smoking* long ago.
5. He **is busy** *cleaning* the flat.
6. The furniture **needs** *dusting*.
7. I **feel like** *walking*.
8. I **enjoy** *walking* in the park.
9. I **can't help** *smiling* when I see him.
10. **Before** *going* there ring me up.
11. **After** *swimming* I usually feel fit.
12. He went home **instead of** *helping* us.
13. He woke me **by** *making* too much noise.
14. He left **without** *talking* to me.
15. **On** *arriving* in London I went straight to the hotel.

Exercise 4

Choose between:

a) **It's no use doing / What's the use of doing?**

MODEL: You shouldn't go there.
Why should you go there?

1. You shouldn't be in a hurry.
2. Why do you think you must interfere?
3. Tell him not to buy this device.
4. Why do you want to take a taxi?
5. Don't even try to convince him.
6. Why are you quarrelling about it?
7. Don't explain it to him.
8. Why should I follow him?
9. Why do you want to ask him all these questions?
10. I don't want to promise anything.

Изучите следующие примеры:

1. *Нет смысла* об этом *говорить*.
2. *Какой смысл* об этом *говорить*?
3. Его речь *стоит послушать*.
4. Он давно *бросил курить*.
5. *Он занят. Он убирает квартиру*.
6. С мебели *надо стереть пыль*.
7. Мне *хочется прогуляться*.
8. Мне *нравится гулять* в парке.
9. Я *не могу не улыбаться*, когда вижу его.
10. *Прежде чем идти* туда, позвони мне.
11. Я чувствую себя бодрым *после того, как поплаваю*.
12. Он отправился домой *вместо того, чтобы* нам *помочь*.
13. Он разбудил меня, *так как сильно шумел* (*сильным шумом*).
14. Он ушел, *не поговорив* со мной.
15. *Приехав* в Лондон, я сразу же отправился в гостиницу.

Упражнение 4

Выберите правильный вариант.

a)

It's no use going there.
What's the use of going there?

1. It's no use being in a hurry.
2. What's the use of interfering?
3. It's no use buying this device.
4. What's the use of taking a taxi?
5. It's no use trying to convince him.
6. What's the use of quarrelling about it?
7. It's no use explaining it to him.
8. What's the use of (my) following them?
9. What's the use of asking him all these questions?
10. It's no use promising anything.

11. Why are you telling lies?
12. Don't get in touch with her.

b) **It's worth doing smth / to give up doing smth**

MODEL: Why don't you jog in the morning anymore?
His words make sense. You'd better pay attention to them.

1. I know John doesn't smoke anymore.
2. Why doesn't she play tennis anymore?
3. Why not visit the exhibition? They say it is good.
4. I know she doesn't teach now. She has found another job.
5. This TV programme is good. I always see it.
6. She knows she has put on weight and that's why she doesn't eat sweet now.
7. These shoes are beautiful and comfortable. Why not buy them?
8. They say the job is highly paid. I'll try to get it.
9. She says these pills don't help. She doesn't want to take them.
10. The advice seems useful. Why not take it?

c) **to be busy doing / it needs doing**

MODEL: The children are in their room. They are doing homework.
The jacket is torn. Let me mend it.

1. You can't see the manager now. He is looking through some papers.
2. The tank of the car is almost empty. I've got to fill it.
3. Mrs. Gray is in the kitchen. She is cooking dinner.
4. The roof of the house is old. I want to change it.
5. The flowers in your garden look miserable. You should water them.
6. Tim has bought a new shelf and now he is fixing it.
7. I'm leaving tomorrow morning. I'm packing my things now.
8. Your suit looks shabby. You haven't cleaned it long.
9. I intend to whitewash the fence next week.
10. We can't talk to you now. We are doing the translation.

11. What's the use of telling lies?
12. It's no use getting in touch with her.

б)

Why have you given up jogging in the morning?
His words are worth paying attention to.

1. John has given up smoking.
2. Why has she given up playing tennis?
3. They say the exhibition is worth visiting.
4. She has given up teaching.
5. This TV programme is worth seeing.
6. She has given up eating sweet.
7. The shoes are worth buying.
8. It's worth trying.
9. She has given up taking these pills.
10. The advice is worth taking.

в)

The children are busy doing homework.
The jacket needs mending.

1. The manager is busy looking through some papers.
2. The tank of the car needs filling.
3. Mrs. Gray is busy cooking dinner.
4. The roof of the house needs changing.
5. The flowers need watering.
6. Tim is busy fixing a new shelf.
7. I'm busy packing my things.
8. The suit needs cleaning.
9. The fence needs whitewashing.
10. We are busy doing the translation.

d) **(not) to feel like doing / enjoy doing**

MODEL: I've had a hard day today. I don't want to go out.
I don't want to stay at home tonight. Let's go out.
I always go out on Saturday.

1. I'm not in the right mood to have a drink.
2. I need a rest.
3. I'm always glad to have a chat with old friends.
4. He is a clever man. It's a pleasure to talk to him.
5. I have problems. I wish I could talk to Pete.
6. It's a waste of time to talk to him. You can do it but I won't.
7. The day is rather cold to bathe.
8. I always go to the swimming pool and bathe on a hot day.
9. The day is hot. Let's go to the swimming pool and bathe.
10. I think it's great to drive a car.
11. I'm too nervous to drive today.
12. Let me drive your car, please. I'd like to have a ride.
13. I've got a headache. Go dancing without me.
14. I go to the disco every weekend. Dancing is wonderful.
15. Though I'm not a good dancer I'd like to go to the disco today.

Exercise 5

a) Fill in the blanks with the gerund of one of the verbs **to cry, to taste, to laugh, to tell, to support, to take, to buy, to open, to leave, to smile**

1. The picture was so funny that I couldn't help … .
2. The man smiled at me and I couldn't help … back.
3. The story was so sad that I couldn't help … .
4. Though I can keep a secret I just couldn't help … him about it.

г)

I don't feel like going out.
I feel like going out.
I enjoy going out on Saturday.

1. I don't feel like having a drink.
2. I feel like having a rest.
3. I enjoy having a chat with old friends.
4. I enjoy talking to him.
5. I feel like talking to Pete.
6. I don't feel like talking to him.
7. I don't feel like bathing.
8. I enjoy bathing on a hot day.
9. I feel like bathing. (I feel like going to the swimming pool.)
10. I enjoy driving a car.
11. I don't feel like driving today.
12. I feel like having a ride.
13. I don't feel like dancing.
14. I enjoy dancing.
15. I feel like dancing. (I feel like going to the disco.)

Упражнение 5

а) Заполните пропуски глаголами в форме герундия.

1. The picture was so funny that I couldn't help laughing.
2. The man smiled at me and I couldn't help smiling back.
3. The story was so sad that I couldn't help crying.
4. Though I can keep a secret I just couldn't help telling him about it.

5. The dress was so delightful that I couldn't help … it.
6. The pie smelt so wonderful that I couldn't help … it.
7. The dog looked so miserable that I couldn't help … it home.
8. I knew the letter was intended for you but I couldn't help … it.
9. The party was so boring that I couldn't help … it early.
10. His idea seemed reasonable. I couldn't help … him.

b) Choose the right preposition and use the gerund of the verb in brackets.

1. Think … (to say) things like that.
2. … (to graduate) from the university he found a good job.
3. I'll drop in on you … (to leave).
4. He solved the problem … (to call) the police.
5. You should have solved the problem yourself … (to call) the police.
6. You can turn on the set … (to push) this button.
7. You might have already done something … (to give) promises.
8. … (to take) the course he could speak the language rather well.
9. You can improve the results … (to work) hard.
10. … (to apply) for this job think twice.
11. I'd better stay here … (to join) you.
12. You can hurt him … (to say) it.
13. … (to pack) the things make up a list of everything necessary.
14. I always fall ill … (to drink) cold water.
15. He managed to change his appearance … (to put) on glasses and a hat.

5. The dress was so delightful that I couldn't help buying it.
6. The pie smelt so wonderful that I couldn't help tasting it.
7. The dog looked so miserable that I couldn't help taking it home.
8. I knew the letter was intended for you but I couldn't help opening it.
9. The party was so boring that I couldn't help leaving it early.
10. His idea seemed reasonable. I couldn't help supporting him.

б) Выберите правильный предлог и употребите глагол в скобках в форме герундия.

1. Think before saying things like that.
2. After graduating from the university he found a good job.
3. I'll drop in on you before leaving.
4. He solved the problem by calling the police.
5. You should have solved the problem yourself instead of calling the police.
6. You can turn on the set by pushing this button.
7. You might have already done something instead of giving promises.
8. After taking the course he could speak the language rather well.
9. You can improve the results by working hard.
10. Before applying for this job think twice.
11. I'd better stay here instead of joining you.
12. You can hurt him by saying it.
13. Before packing the things make up a list of everything necessary.
14. I always fall ill after drinking cold water.
15. He managed to change his appearance by putting on glasses and a hat.

Exercise 6

Make sentences with **ON/WITHOUT**.

MODEL: When he arrived in London he went to the hotel.
He left the party early and didn't say "good-bye"
to anybody.

1. When he learned what had happened he told his friend about it at once.
2. He moved very quickly but didn't make any noise.
3. He left the restaurant and took a taxi.
4. She understood him though she didn't even listen to him.
5. He didn't ask permission to take the book.
6. When I got to the right place I saw him waiting for me.
7. He is fond of playing football. He can't live without it.
8. When he said it he understood at once he had made a mistake.
9. When the child saw the dog he burst out crying.
10. When he entered the room he didn't even say "Good morning".
11. When she opened the box she cried out in surprise.
12. They danced but didn't talk to each other.

Exercise 7

Translate into English.

1. Что еще нужно починить?
2. Дом нужно покрасить.
3. Она играла на пианино, не глядя на меня.
4. Он вышел, не надев шляпу.
5. Мне очень нравится гулять в хорошую погоду.
6. Он занят. Он просматривает последний статьи.
7. Как она могла уйти, не оставив записки?
8. Она хотела ехать на поезде, вместо того чтобы лететь на самолете.
9. Какой смысл учить его играть на пианино? У него нет слуха.

Упражнение 6

Составьте предложения, используя **ON/WITHOUT**.

On arriving in London he went to the hotel.
He left the party without saying "good-bye" to anybody.

1. On learning what had happened he told his friend about it at once.
2. He moved quickly without making any noise.
3. On leaving the restaurant he took a taxi.
4. She understood him without even listening to him.
5. He took the book without asking permission.
6. On getting to the right place I saw him waiting for me.
7. He can't live without playing football.
8. On saying it he understood he had made a mistake.
9. On seeing the dog the child burst out crying.
10. He entered the room without saying "Good morning".
11. On opening the box she cried out in surprise.
12. They danced without talking to each other.

Упражнение 7

Переведите на английский.

1. What else needs mending?
2. The house needs painting.
3. She played the piano without looking at me.
4. He left without putting on his hat.
5. I enjoy walking in good weather.
6. He is busy looking through the latest articles.
7. How could she leave without leaving a note?
8. She wanted to go by train instead of going by plane.
9. What's the use of teaching him to play the piano? He has a bad ear for music.

10. Блюдо пахнет хорошо. Его стоит попробовать.
11. Нет смысла начинать все сначала.
12. Мне не хочется здесь оставаться.
13. Мне хочется петь.
14. Она всегда принимает ванну, прежде чем лечь спать.
15. Он попал в дом, выбив окно.
16. Так приятно приступить к работе, после того как отдохнул.
17. После аварии он бросил заниматься спортом.
18. Я не могу не сердиться на него.
19. Она всегда кладет одежду на стул, вместо того чтобы вешать ее в шкаф.
20. Узнав его адрес, Джейн тут же отправилась к нему.

Study the following examples:

Excuse my (me) bothering you but…
Excuse my bothering you but somebody is asking for you.

Exercise 8

Change the following sentences using **Excuse me (my)… but…**

MODEL: I must leave early. My child is ill.

1. I'm late because the traffic is heavy.
2. I wouldn't like to bother you, but the matter is important.
3. I know it's late but I've rung you up as I can't wait until tomorrow.
4. I'm using your computer because there is something wrong with mine.
5. I must interrupt you. You should keep to the point.
6. I'm asking you so many questions because I'm curious.
7. I can't help you because I'm busy.
8. I know I'm impolite but it's difficult to keep one's temper in a situation like that.

10. The dish smells good. It's worth tasting.
11. It's no use starting from the very beginning.
12. I don't feel like staying here.
13. I feel like singing.
14. She always takes a bath before going to bed.
15. He got into the house by breaking the window.
16. It's so nice to get down to work after having a rest.
17. He gave up going in for sports after the accident.
18. I can't help being angry with him.
19. She always puts her clothes on the chair instead of putting them in the closet.
20. On finding out his address Jane went to his place at once.

Изучите следующие примеры:

Простите, что беспокою вас, но…
Простите, что беспокою вас, но вас кто-то спрашивает.

Упражнение 8

Измените следующие предложения, используя **Excuse me (my)… but…**

Excuse my leaving early but my child is ill.

1. Excuse my being late but the traffic is heavy.
2. Excuse my bothering you but the matter is important.
3. Excuse my ringing you up so late but I can't wait until tomorrow.
4. Excuse my using your computer but there is something wrong with mine.
5. Excuse my interrupting you but you should keep to the point.
6. Excuse my asking so many questions but I'm curious.
7. Excuse my not helping you but I'm busy.
8. Excuse my being impolite but it is difficult to keep one's temper in a situation like that.

Use the Gerund after the following verbs and expressions:

to be tired of	to insist on
to be fond of	to be good at
to be capable of	to have experience in
to think of	to have reasons for
to have no chance of	to thank for
there are many ways of	to blame for
to dream of	to apologise for
to object to	to avoid
to be used to	to go on
to look forward to	to keep

Exercise 9

Translate into English.

1. Мы поблагодарили их за то, что они ответили на письмо.
2. Я не возражаю против того, чтобы вы обсудили все еще раз.
3. Я устал от того, что они все время кричат.
4. Мы с нетерпением ждем, когда поедем на море.
5. Я с нетерпением жду момента, когда познакомлюсь с ним.
6. Он устал повторять, что это опасно.
7. Спасибо за то, что одолжил мне книгу.
8. Я очень люблю читать.

После следующих глаголов и выражений следует употреблять герундий:

1. I'**m tired of** *staying* at home.
2. He **is fond of** *fishing.*
3. He **isn't capable of** *lying.*
4. I'**m thinking of** *having* a rest.
5. We **have no chance of** *winning.*
6. There are **many ways of** *learning* a foreign language.
7. I'**m dreaming of** *visiting* this country.
8. I **object to** *inviting* him.
9. He **is used to** *getting* up late.
10. I'**m looking forward to** *meeting* them.
11. He **insists on** *inviting* her.
12. She **is good at** *making* pies.
13. He has **experience in** *teaching.*
14. I **have reasons for** *saying* "No".
15. We **thanked** them **for** *coming.*
16. He **was blamed for** *being* so rude.
17. I **apologise for** *being* late.
18. Why do you **avoid** *meeting* him?
19. **Go on** *telling* your story.
20. Why do you **keep** *smiling?*

Упражнение 9

Переведите на английский.

1. We thanked them for answering the letter.
2. I don't object to your discussing everything again.
3. I'm tired of their shouting all the time.
4. We are looking forward to going to the sea.
5. I'm looking forward to meeting him.
6. He is tired of repeating that it is dangerous.
7. Thank you for lending me the book.
8. I'm very fond of reading.

9. Какие у тебя причины отложить встречу?
10. Почему ты настаиваешь на том, чтобы твой сын приходил домой рано? Он уже достаточно взрослый.
11. Существует много способов объяснить ему, что он неправ.
12. Присоединяйся к нам. Ты получишь удовольствие от игры.
13. Тебе следует извиниться за то, что ты был груб.
14. Его обвинили в том, что он не помог своим друзьям.
15. Дети с нетерпением ждали, когда их возьмут в театр.
16. Он привык жить один.
17. Он хорошо умеет критиковать других.
18. Она мечтает стать актрисой.
19. У нас нет шансов успеть на этот поезд.
20. Он вполне способен тебя подвести. (*to let smb down*)
21. Он избегает останавливаться в гостиницах.
22. Он продолжал читать, даже не взглянув на нее.
23. Он все время повторял, что это была не его вина.
24. По той или иной причине он избегает обсуждать эту тему.
25. На твоем месте я бы извинился за то, что это сказал.

22.2 The Gerund and the Infinitive

Study the following examples:

1. He **stopped** *talking.*
   He **stopped** *to talk* to us.
2. He **is used** *to getting* up early.
   I've got used *to jogging* in the morning.
   He **used** *to get up* early when he worked.
3. I **remember** *talking* to him about it.
   Remember *to talk* to him about it.
4. I **tried** *to be* polite but failed.
   Try **being** *polite* to her. It may help.

9. What are your reasons for putting off the meeting?
10. Why do you insist on your son coming home early? He is old enough.
11. There are many ways of explaining to him that he is wrong.
12. Join us. You'll enjoy playing the game.
13. You should apologize for being rude.
14. He was blamed for not helping his friends.
15. The children were looking forward to being taken to the theatre.
16. He is used to living alone.
17. He is good at criticising other people.
18. She dreams of becoming an actress.
19. We have no chance of catching this train.
20. He is quite capable of letting you down.
21. He avoids staying at hotels.
22. He went on reading without even looking at her.
23. He kept repeating it wasn't his fault.
24. He avoids discussing this topic for some reason or other.
25. If I were you I would apologise for saying it.

22.2 Герундий и инфинитив

Сравните следующие примеры:

1. Он **перестал** *разговаривать.*
   Он **остановился**, **чтобы** *поговорить* с нами.
2. Он **привык** *вставать* рано.
   Я **привык** *бегать* по утрам.
   Он **раньше** (**бывало**) *вставал* рано, когда работал.
3. Я, **помнится,** *говорил* ему об этом. (Я **помню**, что…)
   Не забудь *поговорить* с ним об этом.
4. Я **пытался** (**старался**) *быть вежливым*, но не смог.
   Попробуй *быть* с ней *вежливым*. Это может помочь.

Exercise 10

Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

1. Please stop … (ask) silly questions.
2. He stopped … (pick up) the glove an old man had dropped.
3. I used … (do) the shopping in this shop when I lived here.
4. I haven't yet got used to … (live) in this house.
5. I remember … (meet) him somewhere. But I can't remember where it was.
6. Remember … (meet) him at 5. He will be waiting for you.
7. It takes too long to get there by bus. • Have you tried … (get) there by train?
8. I'm trying … (explain) the point. But you don't seem to be listening.
9. Stop … (shout). I can hear you very well.
10. On his way to the office he often stops … (talk) to this man or that.
11. I remember … (have) a rest there. It's really a wonderful place.
12. Please, remember … (send) them an invitation card.
13. Living in the suburbs, he is used to … (take) a train to go to work and back.
14. When I lived in the suburbs I used … (take) a train to go to work and back.
15. I tried … (not, pay) attention to what he was saying but it was impossible.
16. I can't stand his presence any more. • Try … (ignore) all his, remarks.
17. Please, stop … (criticise) me. I did my best.
18. She is used to … (drink) coffee in the morning.
19. I remember … (switch off) the light when I was leaving.
20. I tried … (speak) Italian with him but I failed. My Italian is too bad.
21. Try … (speak) French with him. Your French is good, isn't it?
22. He stopped … (show) a stranger the way to the nearest bank.
23. While living in England I used … (read) this newspaper in the morning.

Упражнение 10

Употребите правильную форму глагола.

1. Please stop asking silly questions.
2. He stopped to pick up the glove an old man had dropped.
3. I used to do the shopping in this shop when I lived here.
4. I haven't yet got used to living in this house.
5. I remember meeting him somewhere. But I can't remember where it was.
6. Remember to meet him at 5. He will be waiting for you.
7. It takes too long to get there by bus. • Have you tried getting there by train?
8. I'm trying to explain the point. But you don't seem to be listening.
9. Stop shouting. I can hear you very well.
10. On his way to the office he often stops to talk to this man or that.
11. I remember having a rest there. It's really a wonderful place.
12. Please, remember to send them an invitation card.
13. Living in the suburbs, he is used to taking a train to go to work and back.
14. When I lived in the suburbs I used to take a train to go to work and back.
15. I tried not to pay attention to what he was saying but it was impossible.
16. Try ignoring all his remarks.
17. Please, stop criticising me. I did my best.
18. She is used to drinking coffee in the morning.
19. I remember switching off the light when I was leaving.
20. I tried to speak Italian with him but I failed.
21. Try speaking French with him. Your French is good, isn't it?
22. He stopped to show a stranger the way to the nearest bank.
23. While living in England I used to read this newspaper in the morning.

24. Some years ago I used … (drink) a lot of coffee but now I don't drink any.
25. Remember … (switch off) the light when you are leaving.
26. I remember … (pay) this bill. I'm not going to pay it twice.
27. Remember … (pay) the bill before you have problems.
28. I tried … (get) him on the phone yesterday but failed.
29. If you can't get him on the phone during the day, try … (do) it in the evening.
30. The newspaper is interesting. I've got used to … (read) it in the morning.

Exercise 11

Translate into English.

1. Почему ты перестал играть? Ты так хорошо играл на пианино!
2. Я остановился, чтобы пожать ему руку.
3. Она перестала плакать.
4. Ты действительно привык обедать так поздно?
5. Раньше я всегда ел в этом ресторане.
6. Я думаю, он уже привык просыпаться несколько раз за ночь, чтобы ответить на звонки.
7. Когда дети были маленькими, мы, бывало, просыпались по нескольку раз за ночь.
8. Я, помнится, останавливался в этой гостинице.
9. Не забудь спросить их, в какой гостинице лучше остановиться.
10. Он перестал петь, чтобы выпить немного воды.
11. Я помню, что он записал мой адрес.
12. Не забудь записать его адрес.
13. Если ты не можешь запомнить это слово, попробуй придумать с ним примеры.
14. Я пытался придумать примеры с новыми словами, но не мог сосредоточиться.
15. Я пробовал попросить у него помощи, но он сказал, что не сможет помочь.
16. Я пытался задать ему несколько вопросов, но не смог произнести ни слова.

24. Some years ago I used to drink a lot of coffee but now I don't drink any.
25. Remember to switch off the light when you are leaving.
26. I remember paying this bill.
27. Remember to pay the bill before you have problems.
28. I tried to get him on the phone yesterday but failed.
29. If you can't get him on the phone during the day, try doing it in the evening.
30. The newspaper is interesting. I've got used to reading it in the morning.

Упражнение 11

Переведите на английский.

1. Why did you stop playing? You've been playing the piano so well.
2. I stopped to shake hands with him.
3. She stopped crying.
4. Have you really got used to having your lunch so late?
5. I used to eat at this restaurant.
6. I believe he has got used to waking up several times during the night to answer the telephone.
7. When the children were little we used to wake up several times a night.
8. I remember staying at this hotel.
9. Don't forget to ask them at which hotel it is better to stay.
10. He stopped singing to drink some water.
11. I remember his/him putting down my address.
12. Don't forget to put down his address.
13. If you can't remember this word, try making up examples with it.
14. I tried to think of examples with the new words but I couldn't concentrate.
15. I tried asking him for help but he said he wouldn't be able to help.
16. I tried to ask him a few questions but I couldn't say a word.

Remember to use the Infinitive after the following verbs

to advise
to allow
to tell
to teach
to want
to expect
to ask
to help
to forbid
to agree
to refuse
to decide
to hope
to afford
to manage
to fail
to promise

Exercise 12

Fill in the blanks with the following verbs.

a) **to refuse, to decide, to advise, to manage, to afford, to fail**

1. I'm afraid I can't help you. I can only … you not to jump at conclusions.
2. Didn't they invite you to join them? • They did. • Why did you … to go then?
3. I did my best but still … to achieve the necessary results.
4. Why didn't you buy that car? Didn't you like it? • I can't … to buy it.
5. He is a lucky person. He can … to have a vacation twice a year.
6. Why does he … to sign these papers? • He says he doesn't agree with what is written.
7. She was on a diet last month, but, somehow, she … to lose weight.
8. After considering the idea for some time he … to stay at home.
9. If you like this man you can meet him. I for one wouldn't … you to see much of him.

Помните, что после следующих глаголов употребляется только инфинитив

I **don't advise** you *to go* there. • **Don't allow** the child *to play* with matches. • **Tell** him *to buy* some bread. • Who **taught** you *to skate*? • I **wanted** him *to help* me. • I **expect** you *to learn* these words. • Who **asked** him *to come*? • **Did** she **help** you *(to) cook* dinner? • I **forbid** you *to smoke* here. • He **agreed** *to invite* them. • She **refused** *to see* him. • We **decided** *to wait*. • He **hoped** *to complete* it quickly. • **Can** you **afford** *to buy* a new house? • **Will** you **manage** *to do* it alone? • I **failed** *to repair* the bicycle. • He **promised** *not to punish* the child.

Упражнение 12

Заполните пропуски соответствующими глаголами.

a)

1. I can only advise you not to jump at conclusions.
2. Why did you refuse to go then?
3. I did my best but still failed to achieve the necessary results.
4. I can't afford to buy it.
5. He can afford to have a vacation twice a year.
6. Why does he refuse to sign these papers?
7. She was on a diet last month but, somehow, she failed to lose weight.
8. After considering the idea for some time he decided to stay at home.
9. I for one wouldn't advise you to see much of him.

10. Will you … to do it alone or do you need help?
11. I don't think I'll … to get tickets for this concert. They say all tickets have been sold out.
12. Why did you finally … to take part in the competition?
    • I just couldn't miss it.

b) to tell, to teach, to help, to agree, to allow, to promise, to forbid

1. You needn't hurry. Richard … to drive you to the station. He'll come soon.
2. I asked the host to have a look at his collection and he … me to do it.
3. What are you doing here? Didn't I … you to enter this room? Get out!
4. It's already 6 o'clock. Where is Mary? She … to come before 6.
5. I can't … you to use my car. I know you are a bad driver.
6. The mother absolutely … the child to use that word.
7. Did he … to come?
   • He did, though it took us long to convince him it was important.
8. I … him many times not to argue with the boss. Now he is in trouble.
9. You speak Italian so well! Who … you to speak it?
   • My grandmother. She is Italian.
10. Did anyone … you to translate the text or did you complete it yourself?
11. I told him you were busy and he … to wait.
12. My father … me to swim when I was 7. I'm not a bad swimmer now.
13. The driver opened the door of the car and … the old lady to get out.
14. Please … him to bring the article tomorrow. I'll look it through.

10. Will you manage to do it alone or do you need help?
11. I don't think I'll manage to get tickets for the concert.
12. Why did you finally decide to take part in the competition?

б)

1. Richard has promised to drive you to the station.
2. I asked the host to have a look at his collection and he allowed me to do it.
3. Didn't I forbid you to enter this room?
4. She promised to come before 6.
5. I can't allow you to use my car.
6. The mother absolutely forbade the child to use the word.
7. Did he agree to come?
8. I told him many times not to argue with the boss.
9. Who taught you to speak it?
10. Did anyone help you to translate the text or did you complete it yourself?
11. I told him you were busy and he agreed to wait.
12. My father taught me to swim when I was seven.
13. The driver opened the door of the car and helped the old lady (to) get out.
14. Please tell him to bring the article tomorrow.

The Forms of the Infinitive

Passive

to want
to expect
to ask
to hope
to agree

Perfect and Continuous

The verbs **to seem** and **to pretend** can be followed by the Continuous Infinitive and the Perfect Infinitive as well as by the Simple Infinitive.

He *seemed to understand*.
He *seemed to be reading*.
He *seemed to have understood*.

He *pretended to understand*.
He *pretended to be listening*.
He *pretended to have done* the work.

Exercise 13

Translate into English.

1. Я хотел, чтобы мне разрешили отдохнуть.
2. Я хотел, чтобы меня попросили к ним присоединиться.
3. Я ожидал, что мне покажут дорогу.
4. Я ожидал, что меня подвезут. (*to give a lift*)
5. Я попросил, чтобы меня встретили на станции.
6. Он попросил, чтобы его снабдили всем необходимым.
7. Я надеялся, что меня примут вовремя.
8. Она надеялась, что ее простят.

Формы инфинитива

Пассивные

1. I *wanted to be given* that job.
2. I *expected to be invited* to stay.
3. I *asked to be met* at the airport.
4. I *hoped to be given* his address.
5. I *agreed to be left* at home alone.

Продолженные и перфектные

После глаголов *to seem* и *to pretend* наряду с простым инфинитивом может употребляться продолженный инфинитив и перфектный инфинитив.

Казалось, он понимает.
Казалось, что он читает.
Казалось, что он понял.

Он лишь притворялся, что понимает.
Он притворялся, что слушает.
Он притворился, что сделал работу.

Упражнение 13

Переведите на английский.

1. I wanted to be allowed to have a rest.
2. I wanted to be asked to join them.
3. I expected to be shown the way.
4. I expected to be given a lift.
5. I asked to be met at the station.
6. He asked to be provided with everything necessary.
7. I hoped to be received on time.
8. She hoped to be forgiven.

9. Я согласился с тем, чтобы меня отправили в командировку.
10. Он не соглашался с тем, чтобы его отправили в больницу.
11. Казалось, он спит.
12. Казалось, он знает, что делает.
13. Казалось, что он не удивился.
14. Казалось, он не понимает, что происходит.
15. Казалось, он получил хорошее образование.
16. Казалось, он приехал по делу.
17. Казалось, он говорит правду.
18. Он притворился, что читает.
19. Он притворялся, что ему нравится дом.
20. Мальчик притворялся, что готовится к экзамену.
21. Он притворился, что уже получил необходимую информацию.
22. Она притворилась, что забыла отправить письмо.

Exercise 14

Use either the infinitive or the gerund.

1. I'm tired of (travel). I'm looking forward to (return) home.
2. I don't object to your (meet) him. But I forbid you (be frank) with him.
3. The book is worth (read). I promise (lend) it to you when I am through with it.
4. What's the use of (ask) him again? He has refused (help) us twice.
5. I can't afford (waste) time. Besides I don't feel like (go) anywhere.
6. I understand that you enjoy (ski). But remember that the doctor has forbidden you (ski).
7. He took the money without even (say) "thank you". Somebody should teach him (behave) properly.
8. On (arrive) at the hotel Ellen went straight to her room. She didn't feel like (speak) to anybody.

9. I agreed to be sent on a business trip.
10. He didn't agree to be sent to hospital.
11. He seemed to be sleeping.
12. He seemed to know what he was doing.
13. He didn't seem to be surprised.
14. He didn't seem to understand what was going on.
15. He seemed to have got a good education.
16. He seemed to have come on business.
17. He seemed to be telling the truth.
18. He pretended to be reading.
19. He pretended to like the house.
20. The boy pretended to be revising for his exam.
21. He pretended to have got the necessary information.
22. She pretended to have forgotten to mail the letter.

Упражнение 14

Употребите инфинитив или герундий.

1. I'm tired of travelling. I'm looking forward to returning home.
2. I don't object to your meeting him. But I forbid you to be frank with him.
3. The book is worth reading. I promise to lend it to you when I am through with it.
4. What's the use of asking him again? He has refused to help us twice.
5. I can't afford to waste time. Besides I don't feel like going anywhere.
6. I understand that you enjoy skiing. But remember that the doctor has forbidden you to ski.
7. He took the money without even saying "thank you". Somebody should teach him to behave properly.
8. On arriving at the hotel Ellen went straight to her room. She didn't feel like speaking to anybody.

9. Pete pretended (not, see) Mr. Brown. He didn't want (talk) to the man.
10. Kevin was used to (carry) heavy bags. But he didn't expect the man's bag (be) that heavy. He doubted whether he would manage (carry) it upstairs.
11. There are many ways of (get) there. This way seems (be) the shortest.
12. I insist on your (give up) smoking. In fact I forbid you (smoke).
13. He is busy (edit) the article. We expect him (be ready) soon.
14. I know the suit needs (clean). I failed (take) it to the dry cleaner's yesterday.
15. I just couldn't help (ask) that question though I knew he would refuse (answer) it.
16. I advise you (be honest) with this man. It's no use (conceal) the truth.
17. We used (be friends) but we stopped (see) each other long ago.
18. I know you are good at (cook). Can you teach me (cook)?
19. Be quick! • I'm trying (be) quick.
20. She knew that he avoided (eat) at restaurants and decided (make dinner) by herself.
21. I remember (discuss) it with him. He was polite and promised (help).
22. Though the athlete was exhausted he kept (run).
23. She kept (ask) questions though she knew she had no chance of (get) a reply.
24. He went on (speak) though he understood that they only pretended (listen).
25. When she was little she used (play) with her mother's jewels in spite of the fact that her mother didn't allow her (do) it.

9. Pete pretended not to see Mr. Brown. He didn't want to talk to the man.
10. Kevin was used to carrying heavy bags. But he didn't expect the man's bag to be that heavy. He doubted whether he would manage to carry it upstairs.
11. There are many ways of getting there. This way seems to be the shortest.
12. I insist on your giving up smoking. In fact I forbid you to smoke.
13. He is busy editing the article. We expect him to be ready soon.
14. I know the suit needs cleaning. I failed to take it to the dry cleaner's yesterday.
15. I just couldn't help asking that question though I knew he would refuse to answer it.
16. I advise you to be honest with this man. It's no use concealing the truth.
17. We used to be friends but we stopped seeing each other long ago.
18. I know you are good at cooking. Can you teach me to cook?
19. Be quick! • I'm trying to be quick.
20. She knew that he avoided eating at restaurants and decided to make dinner by herself.
21. I remember discussing it with him. He was polite and promised to help.
22. Though the athlete was exhausted he kept running.
23. She kept asking questions though she knew she had no chance of getting a reply.
24. He went on speaking though he understood that they only pretended to be listening.
25. When she was little she used to play with her mother's jewels in spite of the fact that her mother didn't allow her to do it.

22.3 The Participle

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	doing	being done
PAST	—	done
PERFECT	having done	having been done

NOTE:

1. Человек, звонивший вчера, скоро будет здесь.
   — The man who rang you up yesterday will soon be here.
2. Дети, отъезжающие на экскурсию, собрались у здания школы. — The children who were going on an exursion gathered near the school building.

Exercise 15

Change the following sentences using the participle.

MODEL: As he was giving me the letter he smiled.

1. She was sitting and watching the sunset.
2. The man who is sitting at the window is waiting for you.

22.3 Причастие

The boy **playing** in the garden is my son's friend.
Мальчик, *играющий* во дворе, — друг моего сына.
The question **being discussed** now is important.
Вопрос, *который сейчас обсуждается*, важный.
(*Обсуждаемый сейчас* вопрос — важный.)
He put the **typed** texts on the table.
Он положил на стол *напечатанные* тексты.
Having taken the necessary papers he left the room.
Взяв необходимые бумаги, он вышел из комнаты.
Having been told to come later he didn't know what to do.
Так как ему сказали прийти позже, он не знал, что делать.
Not knowing the truth he felt unworried.
Так как он не знал правды, он не беспокоился.
Not having found the book he rang up his friend.
Не найдя книгу (так как он не нашел книгу), он позвонил другу.
Saying this he left the room.
Thinking it was Smith she opened the door.
Having talked to Steve he went home. — **After talking** to Steve he went home.
Having arrived in London he went to the hotel. — **On arriving** in London he went to the hotel.

Упражнение 15

Измените предложения, используя причастия.

Giving me the letter he smiled.

1. She sat watching the sunset.
2. The man sitting at the window is waiting for you.

3. As he was a rich man he could afford a lot of things.
4. As she was ill she had to stay at home.
5. As she was proud of her son she always spoke about him.
6. What is the name of the man who is talking to Jack?
7. As he was late he took a taxi.
8. The child who was crying looked unhappy.
9. At last I found the page which was missing.
10. As he was interested in the subject he read all books about it.
11. As he felt bad he refused to come.
12. As he was walking down the street he remembered he had left his watch at home.
13. As he was walking in the park he met a friend of his.
14. She looked at the child who was sleeping.
15. She was standing and listening to him.
16. As he was bored he left the party early

Exercise 16

Change the sentences using the participle.

MODEL: The clothes they sell here are expensive.

1. The newspapers we received in the morning are on the table.
2. He took some photos of a church which was built in the 15th century.
3. He suddenly found the glove that he had lost a few months before.
4. He took the camera which was broken and threw it away.
5. He didn't approve of work which was done in a hurry.
6. He was looking at the pictures which had been drawn by the children.
7. The thing which she had forgotten was fresh in her memory again.
8. They are looking for some treasure which is hidden here.
9. The lanterns which were lit showed them the way.
10. The bird which had been shot fell down.
11. It's a subject they teach at any school.
12. He likes to wear clothes which have worn out.

3. Being a rich man he could afford a lot of things.
4. Being ill she had to stay at home.
5. Being proud of her son she always spoke about him.
6. What is the name of the man talking to Jack?
7. Being late he took a taxi.
8. The crying child looked unhappy.
9. At last I found the missing page.
10. Being interested in the subject he read all books about it.
11. Feeling bad he refused to come.
12. Walking down the street he remembered he had left his watch at home.
13. Walking in the park he met a friend of his.
14. She looked at the sleeping child.
15. She stood listening to him.
16. Being bored he left the party early.

Упражнение 16

Измените предложения, используя причастия.

The clothes sold here are expensive.

1. The newspapers received in the morning are on the table.
2. He took some photos of a church built in the 15th century.
3. He suddenly found the glove lost a few months before.
4. He took the broken camera and threw it away.
5. He didn't approve of work done in a hurry.
6. He was looking at the pictures drawn by the children.
7. The forgotten thing was fresh in her memory again.
8. They are looking for some hidden treasure.
9. The lit lanterns showed them the way.
10. The shot bird fell down.
11. It's a subject taught at any school.
12. He likes to wear worn out clothes.

13. He saw a note which had been written in a hurry.
14. He was an actor whom everybody admired.
15. It was a man the police wanted.

Exercise 17

Change the sentences using the participle.

MODEL: As he had finished his business in town, he took a train back home.

1. After he had knocked twice he understood there was nobody at home.
2. As I hadn't called him back I had to apologise.
3. I had been staying with them for about three weeks and I thought I knew them well.
4. I left the luggage at the airport and went to the restaurant.
5. As I had got to know him better I could tell them a lot about him.
6. As he hadn't found the necessary papers he felt angry.
7. As he hadn't read the book he couldn't discuss it.
8. As they hadn't taken a decision they turned to him for help.
9. She made dinner and decided to have a rest.
10. As he hadn't bought tickets he couldn't join them.
11. She had missed a lot of classes that was why couldn't answer the question.
12. As I had lent the dictionary to my friend I couldn't do the translation.
13. As he had lent his car to his son he had to go by bus.
14. He finished the article and went to bed.
15. As he had given up smoking he felt better.
16. I have been waiting for him for half an hour before I left.
17. She bought new shoes and put them on at once.
18. As he had left his notes at home he was afraid he wouldn't know what to say.
19. She walked the dog, fed it and went to work.

13. He saw a note written in a hurry.
14. He was an actor admired by everybody.
15. It was a man wanted by the police.

Упражнение 17

Измените предложения, используя причастия.

Having finished his business in town he took a train back home.

1. Having knocked twice he understood there was nobody at home.
2. Not having called him back I had to apologise.
3. Having stayed with them for about three weeks I thought I knew them well.
4. Having left the luggage at the airport I went to the restaurant.
5. Having got to know him better I could tell them a lot about him.
6. Not having found the necessary papers he felt angry.
7. Not having read the book he couldn't discuss it.
8. Not having taken a decision they turned to him for help.
9. Having made dinner she decided to have a rest.
10. Not having bought tickets he couldn't join them.
11. Having missed a lot of classes she couldn't answer the question.
12. Having lent the dictionary to my friend I couldn't do the translation.
13. Having lent his car to his son he had to go by bus.
14. Having finished the article he went to bed.
15. Having given up smoking he felt better.
16. Having waited for him for half an hour I left.
17. Having bought new shoes she put them on at once.
18. Having left his notes at home he was afraid he wouldn't know what to say.
19. Having walked the dog and fed it she went to work.

Exercise 18

Change the following sentences using the participle.

MODEL: He was supported by the others and hoped to achieve success.
As the boots hadn't been cleaned they looked old.

1. He was being followed and felt uneasy.
2. As he hadn't been introduced to the other guests he felt a stranger.
3. As she was being looked at she felt confused.
4. He had been taught good manners and that was why he was admired by everybody.
5. The clothes which are being sold here are expensive.
6. As the cup was broken it was of no use.
7. He hadn't been asked to come and felt hurt.
8. As the flowers had been kept without water for a long time they faded.
9. As the house was being reconstructed it was empty.
10. He was being told what to do and listened attentively.
11. As he had been told the truth he didn't know how to act.
12. As she was being listened to attentively she felt encouraged.
13. The child had been left alone and was frightened.
14. As he was being kept waiting he felt nervous.
15. As the book had been translated into many languages it became known all over the world.
16. As the criminal was kept in prison he couldn't do them any harm.

Exercise 19

Change the following sentences using the participle.

1. The child had been punished and now felt sorry for himself.
2. When he died he was unknown to anybody.
3. He thought that the letter was intended for him and opened it.

Упражнение 18

Измените предложения, используя причастия.

Being supported by the others he hoped to achieve success.
Not having been cleaned the boots looked old.

1. Being followed he felt uneasy.
2. Not having been introduced to the other guests he felt a stranger.
3. Being looked at she felt confused.
4. Having been taught good manners he was admired by everybody.
5. The clothes (being) sold here are expensive.
6. Being broken the cup was of no use.
7. Not having been asked to come he felt hurt.
8. Having been kept without water for a long time the flowers faded.
9. Being reconstructed the house was empty.
10. Being told what to do he listened attentively.
11. Having been told the truth he didn't know how to act.
12. Being listened to attentively she felt encouraged.
13. Having been left alone the child was frightened.
14. Being kept waiting he felt nervous.
15. Having been translated into many languages the book became known all over the world.
16. Being kept in prison the criminal couldn't do them any harm.

Упражнение 19

Измените предложения, используя причастия.

1. Having been punished the child felt sorry for himself.
2. He died unknown to anybody.
3. Thinking that the letter was intended for him he opened it.

4. As he hadn't been met at the airport he hardly knew where to go.
5. She was pleased to see people who were smiling.
6. For her birthday he gave her a picture which he had painted by himself.
7. He was forced to confess and felt ashamed.
8. They have covered ten miles when they decided to have a rest.
9. He saw Richard who was waving to him.
10. The questions which are being discussed now are important.
11. The parcel was undone and was lying on the floor.
12. He had hired a lawyer and felt safe.
13. He was greeted by a lot of people and felt like a film star.
14. After he had made several attempts he decided to give up.
15. Please be careful when you do your homework.

Exercise 20

Translate into English.

1. Наконец она встретилась с человеком, звонившим ей.
2. Женщина, открывшая дверь, была служанкой.
3. Кэтрин не хотела разговаривать с человеком, сделавшим ее несчастной.
4. Журналист, написавший эту статью, хочет поговорить с вами.
5. Человек, совершивший это преступление, арестован.
6. Я не знаю почтальона, принесшего посылку.
7. Художник, написавший эту картину, давно умер.
8. Спортсмен, выигравший соревнование, сейчас отвечает на вопросы журналистов.
9. Книга, лежавшая на столе минуту назад, исчезла.
10. Я не могу назвать человека, рассказавшего мне об этом.
11. Я хочу видеть человека, сказавшего это.
12. Режиссер, снявший этот фильм, не очень известен.
13. Вы знаете врача, лечившего его от этой болезни?
14. Человек, купивший этот телевизор, получил еще и подарок.

4. Not having been met at the airport he hardly knew where to go.
5. She was pleased to see smiling people.
6. For her birthday he gave her a picture painted by himself.
7. Having been forced to confess he felt ashamed.
8. Having covered ten miles they decided to have a rest.
9. He saw Richard waving to him.
10. The questions being discussed now are important.
11. The undone parcel was lying on the floor.
12. Having hired a lawyer he felt safe.
13. Being greeted by a lot of people he felt like a film star.
14. Having made several attempts he decided to give up.
15. Please be careful doing your homework.

Упражнение 20

Переведите на английский.

1. At last she met the man who had rung her up.
2. The woman who opened the door was a servant.
3. Katherine didn't want to talk to the man who had made her unhappy.
4. The journalist who wrote this article wants to talk with you.
5. The man who committed this crime has been arrested.
6. I don't know the postman who brought the parcel.
7. The artist who painted this picture died long ago.
8. The sportsman who won in the competition is now answering the reporters' questions.
9. The book that was on the table a minute ago has disappeared.
10. I can't name the man who told me about it.
11. I want to see the man who said it.
12. The director who made this film isn't widely known.
13. Do you know the doctor who treated him for this disease?
14. The man who bought this TV-set also got a present.

Exercise 21

Translate into English.

1. Дерево, посаженное им пять лет назад, уже высокое.
2. Я был благодарен людям, помогавшим мне.
3. Будучи опытным летчиком, он сумел посадить самолет.
4. Она сидела дома и ждала звонка.
5. Так как его заставляли делать то, чего он делать не хотел, он рассердился.
6. Так как пьеса была написана для молодых людей, она не была популярна среди людей пожилых.
7. Вот бумаги, подписанные мистером Боулером.
8. Полиция ищет таксиста, отвезшего ее на станцию.
9. Ты знаешь человека, сидящего за тем столом?
10. Я не могу пока говорить о фильме, который сейчас снимают.
11. Так как его просили не опаздывать, он очень торопился.
12. Вы исправили ошибки, сделанные в контрольной работе?
13. Он отскочил, спасаясь от удара.
14. Она велела ребенку, залезшему на высокое дерево, слезть вниз.
15. Я знал, что лишь трачу время, делая эту работу.
16. Прочитав эту статью, он решил бросить курить.
17. Так как его не простили, он чувствовал себя подавленным.
18. Не выяснив точно, куда идти, мы заблудились.
19. Полученное утром письмо лежало на столе.
20. Услышав крики о помощи, он тут же позвонил в полицию.
21. Машина уехала, издавая ужасные звуки.
22. Надеясь найти завещание, она обыскала весь дом.
23. Изнуренный работой, он отправился спать.
24. Так как она уже однажды слышала эту историю, она больше не хотела ее слушать.
25. Спящие люди были разбужены страшным шумом.

Упражнение 21

Переведите на английский.

1. The tree planted by him five years ago is tall now.
2. I was grateful to the people who (had) helped me.
3. Being an experienced pilot he managed to land the plane.
4. She stayed at home waiting for a call.
5. Being forced to do what he didn't want to he got angry.
6. Having been written for young people the play wasn't popular with old people.
7. Here are the papers signed by Mr. Bowler.
8. The police are looking for the taxi driver who took her to the station.
9. Do you know the man sitting at that table?
10. I can't yet speak about the film being made now.
11. Having been asked not to be late he was in a hurry.
12. Have you corrected the mistakes made in the test?
13. He jumped aside saving himself from the strike.
14. She told the child who had climbed up a tall tree to get down.
15. I knew I was merely wasting time doing this work.
16. Having read this article he decided to give up smoking.
17. Not having been forgiven he felt depressed.
18. Not having found out where exactly to go we lost our way.
19. The letter received in the morning was lying on the table.
20. Hearing cries for help he phoned the police at once.
21. Making terrible sounds the car drove away.
22. Hoping to find the will she searched the house.
23. Exhausted by the work he went to bed.
24. Having heard the story once she didn't feel like listening to it again.
25. The sleeping people were woken up by a terrible noise.

UNIT 23 COMPLEX OBJECT

23.1 Formation

23.2 The use of the construction

23.1 Formation

noun (in the Common Case) or pronoun (in the Objective Case)

+

Infinitive (with or without "**to**") or Participle I

23.2 The use of the construction

Infinitive with **to** is used after verbs:

to expect	**to believe**
to want	**to think**
would like	**to find**
to like	**to consider**
to hate	**to tell**
to know	**to allow**

УРОК 23 СЛОЖНОЕ ДОПОЛНЕНИЕ

23.1 Образование

23.2 Употребление конструкции

23.1 Образование

I want **you to do** it at once.	• Я хочу, чтобы вы это сделали сейчас же.
People watched **the plane land**.	• Люди наблюдали, как приземлился самолет.
People watched the **plane landing**.	• Люди наблюдали, как приземлялся самолет.

23.2 Употребление конструкции

She *would like* **us to meet** her.	• Она бы хотела, чтобы мы ее встретили.
He *believes* **the plan to be** good.	• Он считает, что план хороший.
I didn't *expect* **her to come**.	• Я не ожидал, что она придет.
I *hate* **you to speak** like this.	• Ненавижу, когда ты так говоришь.
She *told* **me to come** in time.	• Она сказала мне прийти вовремя.
I won't *allow* **Tom to go** there.	• Я не позволю Тому пойти туда.

Infinitive without **to** is used after verbs:

to make

to let

to have

Infinitive without **to** or **Participle I** is used after verbs:

to feel

to see

to watch

to notice

to hear

REMEMBER

Complex Object **isn't used** after the verbs of the last group if:

1) they aren't used in their direct meaning.
   I felt **that it was difficult for him to speak**.
   I hear **they are good people**.
2) emphasis is not placed on the action itself.
   Did you hear **what exactly he said**?

Exercise 1

Open the brackets using **Complex Object**.

1. The bad weather made… (we, to change) our plans.
2. I'd like… (he, to know) about what has happened.
3. He didn't hear … (she, to open) the door.

Don't *make* **the child eat** much. • Не заставляйте ребенка много есть.

She didn't *let* **me go** for a walk. • Она не разрешила мне пойти гулять.

I won't *have* **you behave** like that. • Я не потерплю такого поведения.

He *felt* **his hands tremble/trembling**. • Он почувствовал, что у него дрожат руки.

I *saw* **her buy/buying** the toy. • Я увидела, что она купила игрушку.

She *watched* **them playing**. • Она наблюдала, как они играли.

We didn't *notice* **Ann come in**. • Мы не заметили, как вошла Аня.

Did you *hear* **her cry**? • Вы слышали, как она плакала?

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

Сложное дополнение **не употребляется**, после глаголов последней группы, если:

1) они употреблены в переносном значении.
   Я почувствовал *(понял)*, что ему трудно говорить.
   Я слышала *(знаю)*, что они хорошие люди.
2) акцент сделан не на действии.
   Ты слышала, *что именно* он сказал?

Упражнение 1

Раскройте скобки, употребив **сложное дополнение**.

1. The bad weather made us change our plans.
2. I'd like him to know about what has happened.
3. He didn't hear her open (opening) the door.

4. You must let … (I/to have) some time to think it over.
5. I can't have … (you, to waste) time like that.
6. Everybody knows … (he, to be) very talented.
7. I hate … (they, to treat) their daughter so rudely.
8. I saw … (she, to put) up some notice.
9. Did you expect … (he, to prove) he wasn't guilty?
10. She doesn't like … (we, to come) so late.

Exercise 2

Paraphrase the following sentences using **Complex Object**.

MODEL: He will come by the 8 o'clock train. (we, expect)

1. It's good advice. (**I**, **to believe**)
2. You must promise never to do it again. (**I**, **want**)
3. She won't be back so soon. (**we**, **not expect**)
4. The teacher asked him to be the first to speak. (**to allow**)
5. The measures were rather effective. (**she**, **to consider**)
6. She was a very amiable woman. (**I**, **to think**)
7. Will you come to my birthday party on Sunday? (**would like**)
8. I don't think you should smoke here. (**not like**)
9. The committee will find a solution to the problem. (**we**, **expect**)
10. The occasion is worth celebrating. (**we**, **to find**)

Exercise 3

Combine two sentences into one using **Complex Object**.

MODEL 1: He got off the bus. We saw it.

1. She told another lie. Everybody heard it.
2. She looked up in surprise. I noticed it.

4. You must let me have some time to think it over.
5. I can't have you waste time like that.
6. Everybody knows him to be very talented.
7. I hate them to treat their daughter so rudely.
8. I saw her put up some notice.
9. Did you expect him to prove he wasn't guilty?
10. She doesn't like us to come so late.

Упражнение 2

Перефразируйте предложения, употребив **сложное дополнение**.

We expect him to come by the 8 o'clock train.

1. I believe it to be good advice.
2. I want you to promise never to do it again.
3. We don't (didn't) expect her to be back so soon.
4. The teacher allowed him to be the first to speak.
5. She considered the measures to be rather effective.
6. I thought her to be a very amiable woman.
7. I'd like you to come to my birthday party on Sunday.
8. I don't like you to smoke here.
9. We expect the committee to find a solution to the problem.
10. We find the occasion (to be) worth celebrating.

Упражнение 3

Соедините два предложения в одно, употребив **сложное дополнение**.

We saw him get off the bus.

1. Everybody heard her tell another lie.
2. I noticed her look up in surprise.

3. The house suddenly began to shake. We felt it.
4. A stranger climbed into your house through the open window. My husband saw it.
5. She whispered something to him. Nobody noticed it.
6. Somebody called my name. I heard it.
7. Somebody touched me on the sleeve. I felt it.
8. The car turned to the right. She saw it.
9. She got sad. He noticed it.
10. My son broke something in the kitchen. We heard it.

MODEL 2: The boys were playing volleyball. We watched them.

1. They were shouting at each other in the next room. We heard it.
2. The child was drawing in the book. I saw it.
3. She was crying. I noticed it.
4. He was walking away slowly. We watched him.
5. You were playing the piano when I came in. I heard it.
6. Some insect was crawling up my back. I felt it.
7. The children were fighting again. Their parents saw it.
8. Mum was cooking dinner. Ally watched her.
9. The boy was crossing the street in the wrong place. The policeman noticed it.
10. They were boasting about their success. Everybody heard it.

Exercise 4

Answer the following questions using **Complex Object**.

MODEL: How do you know that Jack has left?
(see, to wait for a bus)

1. Why do you think his teacher is strict? (**often**, **make**, **to rewrite his home task**)
2. How do you know they are on bad terms? (**to hear**, **to quarrel**, **several times**)
3. Why isn't Nick going on a hike with us? (**his mother**, **not**, **to want**)

3. We felt the house suddenly begin to shake.
4. My husband saw a stranger climb into your house through the open window.
5. Nobody noticed her whisper something to him.
6. I heard somebody call my name.
7. I felt somebody touch me on the sleeve.
8. She saw the car turn to the right.
9. He noticed her get sad.
10. We heard my son break something in the kitchen.

We watched the boys playing volleyball.

1. We heard them shouting at each other in the next room.
2. I saw the child drawing in the book.
3. I noticed her crying.
4. We watched him walking away slowly.
5. I heard you playing the piano when I came in.
6. I felt some insect crawling up my back.
7. The parents saw their children fighting again.
8. Ally watched her Mum cooking dinner.
9. The policeman noticed the boy crossing the street in the wrong place.
10. Everybody heard them boasting about their success.

Упражнение 4

Ответьте на вопросы, употребив **сложное дополнение**.

I saw him waiting for a bus.

1. She often makes him rewrite his home task.
2. I've heard them quarrel (quarrelling) several times.
3. His mother doesn't want him to go.

4. Are you sure he is for this suggestion? (**to hear**, **to insist on it**)
5. Why do you think it's her birthday today? (**to see**, **Alice**, **to give a present**)
6. Is Ann going skiing with us? (**her mother**, **not**, **to let**)
7. How do you know he likes children? (**often**, **to watch**, **to play**)
8. Did you enjoy the performance at the circus? (**the clown**, **to make**, **to laugh)**
9. Are you sure she was frightened? (**to notice**, **to get pale**)
10. How do you know they are great friends? (**to see**, **to walk together**, **every day**)

Exercise 5

Ask questions to the words in italics to make sure you got the person right.

MODEL: I heard him singing *an English song*.

1. I heard him speaking *on the radio*.
2. We saw the man turn *round the corner*.
3. I'd like you to do it *because you are responsible*.
4. I noticed them *exchange quick glances*.
5. She makes him eat *five times a day*.
6. He wants his son to be *a surgeon*.
7. She doesn't let the children *go to bed late*.
8. I saw him looking through *some magazine*.
9. They expect us to do it *very quickly*.
10. He likes to watch *snow* falling.

Exercise 6

Use the correct form of the Infinitive.

1. I saw George… (to turn) to Alice and… (to say) something.
2. We didn't expect him … (to behave) in such a way.
3. You'll never make me … (to do) it.

4. Yes, I heard him insisting on it.
5. I saw Alice give (giving) her a present.
6. No, her mother doesn't let her go.
7. I often watch him playing with them.
8. Yes, we did. The clown made us laugh.
9. Yes, I noticed her get (getting) pale.
10. I see them walking together every day.

Упражнение 5

Задайте вопросы к словам, выделенным курсивом, чтобы убедиться, что вы правильно поняли говорящего.

What song did you hear him singing?

1. Where did you hear him speaking?
2. Where did you see the man turn?
3. Why would you like me to do it?
4. What did you notice them do?
5. How many times a day does she make him eat?
6. What does he want his son to be?
7. What doesn't she let the children do?
8. What did you see him looking through?
9. How do they expect you to do it?
10. What does he like to watch falling?

Упражнение 6

Употребите правильную форму инфинитива.

1. I saw George turn to Alice and say something.
2. We didn't expect him to behave in such a way.
3. You'll never make me do it.

4. It was the only word I heard him … (to say) during the party.
5. Everybody thought you … (to be) a bit cleverer.
6. I'd like you … (to make) an appointment for me.
7. I won't let you … (to give in).
8. I noticed her … (to blush).
9. I believe him … (to be) a liar.
10. Do you want me … (to tell) you the story?

Exercise 7

Use the Infinitive or Participle I of the verbs in brackets.

1. I always admire her skill when I watch her … (to work).
2. She doesn't like people … (to argue) with her.
3. We saw them … (to jump) with parachutes.
4. He felt his heart … (to jump) with joy.
5. Don't make him … (to drink) milk.
6. I saw him still … (to stand) in the doorway.
7. Did you hear her … (to say) it?
8. I want you … (to take) me to the theatre.
9. He felt somebody … (to look) at him.
10. I know him … (to work) hard.
11. I saw my mother … (to look) at me and … (to turn) away.
12. I hate people … (to forget) about their duties.
13. I heard them … (to discuss) their plans for the summer.
14. When did you expect them … (to get) your letter?

Exercise 8

Translate into English.

1. Вы когда-нибудь наблюдали, как восходит солнце?
2. Я вижу, что вы не помните этих людей.
3. Он не мог заставить ребенка слушаться.

4. It was the only word I heard him say during the whole party.
5. Everybody thought you to be a bit cleverer.
6. I'd like you to make an appointment for me.
7. I won't let you give in.
8. I noticed her blush.
9. I believe him to be a liar.
10. Do you want me to tell you the story?

Упражнение 7

Употребите глаголы в скобках в форме инфинитива или причастия I.

1. I always admire her skill when I watch her working.
2. She doesn't like people to argue with her.
3. We saw them jump (jumping) with parachutes.
4. He felt his heart jump with joy.
5. Don't make him drink milk.
6. I saw him still standing in the doorway.
7. Did you hear her say (saying) it?
8. I want you to take me to the theatre.
9. He felt somebody looking at him.
10. I know him to work hard.
11. I saw my mother look at me and turn away.
12. I hate people to forget about their duties.
13. I heard them discussing their plans for the summer.
14. When did you expect them to get your letter?

Упражнение 8

Переведите на английский.

1. Have you ever watched the sun rising?
2. I see that you don't remember these people.
3. He couldn't make the child obey.

4. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы внимательно его выслушали.
5. Я слышала, как он несколько раз упомянул это имя во время обсуждения.
6. Я не ожидала, что он подвезет меня.
7. Они знали, что она хороший врач.
8. Я не потерплю, чтобы она так обращалась с моими детьми.
9. Я никогда не слышала, чтобы он говорил по-английски.
10. Ты слышала, КАК он с ней разговаривал?
11. Ненавижу, когда меня заставляют ждать.
12. Я видела, как ты с ним вчера разговаривала. Кто это?
13. Позвольте дать вам совет.
14. Я заметил, как женщина вздрогнула.
15. Она почувствовала, что его слова неискренни.
16. Все считают его трусом.
17. Гости наблюдали, как мы танцуем.
18. Мы ожидаем, что Джейн и Саймон поженятся.
19. Я не хочу, чтобы ты заболел, поэтому прошу тебя надеть пальто.
20. Она почувствовала, что на улице холодает.
21. Библиотекарь разрешила нам взять эти книги домой.
22. Я слышала, что они уже вернулись из отпуска.
23. Пусть он придет сюда завтра в 8 часов.
24. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы больше улыбались.
25. Я хочу, чтобы вы послушали, как моя дочь играет на пианино.

4. I'd like you to listen to him attentively.
5. I heard him mention this name several times during the discussion.
6. I didn't expect him to give me a lift.
7. They knew her to be a good doctor.
8. I won't have her treat my children like this.
9. I've never heard him speaking English.
10. Did you hear how he spoke to her?
11. I hate people to keep me waiting.
12. I saw you talking to him yesterday. Who is it?
13. Let me give you advice.
14. I noticed the woman start.
15. She felt that his words were insincere.
16. Everybody believes (thinks) him to be a coward.
17. The guests watched us dancing.
18. We expect Jane and Simon to get married.
19. I don't want you to fall ill that's why I ask you to put on your coat.
20. She felt the weather getting colder.
21. The librarian let us take (allowed us to take) the books home.
22. I hear that they have already returned from their vacation.
23. Let him come here at 8 o'clock tomorrow.
24. I like you to smile more.
25. I want you to hear my daughter playing the piano.

Exercise 9

REVISION

Find possible mistakes and correct them.

MODEL: We'd like you to explain your behaviour.
Did you expect him escaping?

1. We want that you explain everything at once.
2. Let us to know about your decision.
3. We heard the man shouting for help.
4. We heard them move to a new flat. I wonder if they have left the address?
5. She likes us to ask her questions.
6. Her parents make her to clean her room once a week.
7. I saw my father to be busy.
8. I watched the children to fly a kite.
9. I felt my temperature rising.
10. I noticed him picking something up and putting it into his pocket.
11. I know him good at telling jokes.
12. Dad watched us play chess.
13. I wouldn't like they to help us.
14. I see that you don't want to answer my question.
15. The events made the president came up with an official statement.

Упражнение 9

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

Найдите возможные ошибки и исправьте их.

RIGHT

WRONG — Did you expect him to escape?

1. WRONG — We want you to explain everything at once.
2. WRONG — Let us know about your decision.
3. RIGHT
4. WRONG — We hear that they have moved to a new flat.
5. RIGHT
6. WRONG — Her parents make her clean her room once a week.
7. WRONG — I saw that my father was busy.
8. WRONG — I watched the children flying a kite.
9. RIGHT
10. WRONG —I noticed him pick something up and put it into his pocket.
11. WRONG — I know him to be good at telling jokes.
12. WRONG — Dad watched us playing chess.
13. WRONG — I wouldn't like them to help us.
14. RIGHT
15. WRONG — The events made the president come up with an official statement.

UNIT 24 THE ARTICLE

24.1 The Article with countable nouns
- *The Article with countable nouns preceded by numerals*
- *Some special cases of the use of the Definite Article with countable nouns*
- *More cases of the use of the Definite Article with countable nouns*

24.2 The use of Articles with **such** and **what**

24.3 The Definite and the Indefinite Article in **of-constructions**

24.4 The generic use of the Definite Article

24.5 The use of Articles with names of seasons, times of the day, with the words **lunch, dinner, breakfast**.

24.6 The use of Articles with names of substances

24.7 The use of Articles with the words **school, college**, etc.

24.8 The use of Articles with uncountable nouns
- *The use of Articles with nouns which are always uncountable*
- *Cases of the use of the Indefinite Article with uncountable nouns*
- *More examples of the use of Articles with uncountable nouns*

24.9 The use of Articles with proper names
- *The use of Articles with personal names*
- *The use of Articles with geographical names*
- *The use of Articles with names of streets, airports, etc.*
- *The use of Articles with names of languages*
- *Some special cases of the use of Articles with proper names*

УРОК 24 АРТИКЛЬ

24.1 Артикль с исчисляемыми существительными
- *Артикль с существительными, которым предшествует числительное*
- *Особые случаи употребления определенного артикля с исчисляемыми существительными*
- *Другие случаи употребления определенного артикля с исчисляемыми существительными*

24.2 Употребление артиклей со словами **such** и **what**

24.3 Определенный и неопределенный артикли в конструкциях с **-of**

24.4 Определенный артикль с обобщающим значением

24.5 Употребление артиклей с названиями времен года, времени суток, со словами **lunch**, **dinner**, **breakfast.**

24.6 Употребление артиклей с названиями веществ.

24.7 Употребление артиклей со словами **school**, **college** и др.

24.8 Употребление артиклей с неисчисляемыми существительными
- *Употребление артиклей с существительными, которые всегда неисчисляемые*
- *Случаи употребления неопределенного артикля с неисчисляемыми существительными*
- *Другие примеры употребления артиклей с неисчисляемыми существительными*

24.9 Употребление артиклей с именами собственными
- *Употребление артиклей с именами людей*
- *Употребление артиклей с географическими названиями*
- *Употребление артиклей с названиями улиц, аэропортов и др.*
- *Употребление артиклей с названиями языков*
- *Особые случаи употребления артиклей с именами собственными*

24.1 The article with countable nouns

Singular		Plural	
a/an (one)	a teacher an apple a university	**no article**	teachers (some) apples universities
the (this)	the teacher the apple the university	**the (these)**	the teachers the apples the university

Singular	Plural
a/an + adjective + noun	no article + adjective + noun (some, a few, several)
the + adjective + noun	the + adjective + noun

The Article with countable nouns preceded by numerals

two (three, four, …) + noun (plural)
the two (three, four, …) + noun (plural)
the first (the second, …) + noun (singular)
a second (a third, …) + noun (singular)

BUT

never say “a first”.

NOTE:
room 3; bus 12; page 45

24.1 Артикль с исчисляемыми существительными

единственное число	**множественное число**
He is **a teacher**.	They are **teachers**.
This is **an apple**.	These are **apples**.
This is **a university**.	**Universities** provide education.
The teacher is in the classroom.	**The teachers** are in the classroom.
The apple is tasty.	**The apples** are tasty.
The university is old.	**The universities** of this city are good.

I need **a blue bag.** (*any blue bag*)
They need **new bags.** (*some new bags*)
A young man has just left the house. (*some young man*)
Young men fall in love quickly. (*young men in general*)

The young man *you told me about* has just left the house.
The young men *we spoke with* were very polite.

Артикль с существительными, которым предшествует числительное

Three people want to see the manager today.
The three people *I told you about* have come.
You are **the second person** who asks me about it.
The child wants **a second sweet.** (*one more*)

Exercise fourteen is on **page nine**.

REMEMBER

1. Never use articles with the word **both**.

2. once **a** week
   two times **a** month
   three weeks **a** year

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with **A/AN/THE** if necessary.

1. This is … very difficult article. There are a lot of unknown words in … article.
2. Ours is … very nice house. There is … garden in front of … house.
3. He has … interesting collection of stamps. He is … very proud of … collection.
4. … man you see there is … doctor. He is … doctor who treated me for pneumonia.
5. When I know English well enough I'll start learning … second foreign language.
6. Father has bought … new ball for … child … . … ball is red.
7. That's … first time I've seen him. He seems to be … agreeable man.
8. I usually visit him … three or four times … month. He is … sick man.
9. … three letters I received in the morning are on my table.
10. He still hopes to achieve … good results, though … both his parents and his friends say it's no use trying.
11. … two men you wanted to see are waiting for you in … room 2.
12. … both sisters like … noisy parties.
13. Is it … new bag? I like … bag. I'd like to have … bag like that.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

1. *Both children* were hungry.
   Both adults and children like to see cartoons.
   Both the teacher and the students were tired.

2. I call on him *once a week*.
   I usually go to the library *two times (twice) a month*.
   We usually spend *three weeks a year* there.

Упражнение 1

Заполните пропуски артиклями **A/AN/THE**, где это необходимо.

1. This is a very difficult article. There are a lot of unknown words in the article.
2. Ours is a very nice house. There is a garden in front of the house.
3. He has an interesting collection of stamps. He is very proud of the collection.
4. The man you see there is a doctor. He is the doctor who treated me for pneumonia.
5. When I know English well enough I'll start learning a second foreign language.
6. Father has bought a new ball for the child. The ball is red.
7. That's the first time I've seen him. He seems to be an agreeable man.
8. I usually visit him three or four times a month. He is a sick man.
9. The three letters I received in the morning are on my table.
10. He still hopes to achieve good results, though both his parents and his friends say it's no use trying.
11. The two men you wanted to see are waiting for you in room two.
12. Both sisters like noisy parties.
13. Is it a new bag? I like the bag. I'd like to have a bag like that.

14. We have … English lessons … three times … week.
15. There is … desk in his room. … desk is at the window.
16. What's the name of … man you've just greeted?
17. Let's take … bus to get there. • But I can't see … bus stop anywhere here. • … bus stop is round the corner. … bus 4 will take us there.
18. I have had … two visitors so far today. … first one seemed a bit strange to me. But … second one was all right.
19. Have you seen … dress she bought yesterday? • No, I didn't know she had bought … new dress.
20. There were two more passengers in my compartment, … woman and … boy. I believe … woman was a bit too old to be … boy's mother.
21. While walking down the street I noticed … strange man. I had a feeling … man was following me. I stopped and … man stopped. Then I saw … young woman join … man. Now … both … woman and … man were looking at me.
22. Do you keep … pets at home? • Yes, we have … dog. … dog is very clever. It is … collie. … collies are usually very clever and can even look after … children.
23. He saw … woman with … child in her arms stop … taxi and get in.
24. Did you get … question I asked you? Now I'm waiting for … answer.
25. … both women over there are teachers. … one wearing … dark dress teaches my son. He says she is … very good teacher.
26. That's … expensive hotel. … hotel is new.
27. What do you usually have for lunch, Bob? • … sandwich and … banana. Sometimes it is … meat sandwich and sometimes it is … cheese sandwich.
28. … story I'm going to tell you is rather long. But it's … interesting story. When I heard it for … first time I laughed a lot.
29. Has Pete got … car? • Yes, he has. • Does he keep it in … garage? • Yes, he does. • Where is … garage? • It's round … house.
30. Can you wait … minute? I must find … papers you need.

14. We have English lessons three times a week.
15. There is a desk in his room. The desk is at the window.
16. What's the name of the man you've just greeted?
17. Let's take a bus to get there. • But I can't see a bus stop anywhere here. • The bus stop is round the corner. Bus four will take us there.
18. I have had two visitors so far today. The first one seemed a bit strange to me. But the second one was all right.
19. Have you seen the dress she bought yesterday? • No, I didn't know she had bought a new dress.
20. There were two more passengers in my compartment, a woman and a boy. I believe the woman was a bit too old to be the boy's mother.
21. While walking down the street I noticed a strange man. I had a feeling the man was following me. I stopped and the man stopped. Then I saw a young woman join the man. Now both the woman and the man were looking at me.
22. Do you keep pets at home? • Yes, we have a dog. The dog is very clever. It is a collie. Collies are usually very clever and can even look after children.
23. He saw a woman with a child in her arms stop a taxi and get in.
24. Did you get the question I asked you? Now I'm waiting for an answer.
25. Both women over there are teachers. The one wearing a dark dress teaches my son. He says she is a very good teacher.
26. That's an expensive hotel. The hotel is new.
27. What do you usually have for lunch, Bob? • A sandwich and a banana. Sometimes it is a meat sandwich and sometimes it is a cheese sandwich.
28. The story I'm going to tell you is rather long. But it's an interesting story. When I heard it for the first time I laughed a lot.
29. Has Pete got a car? • Yes, he has. • Does he keep it in a garage? • Yes, he does. • Where is the garage? • It's round the house.
30. Can you wait a minute? I must find the papers you need.

Some special cases of the use of the Definite Article with countable nouns

the wall(s)	the yard	the world
the door	the garden	the sun
the floor	the street	the moon
the stairs	the ground	the sky
the bedroom	the theatre	
the kitchen	the cinema	
the beginning		the counter
the end		the assistant
the middle		the conductor
	the original	
the country *(сельская местность)*		the truth

NOTE:

Some of the nouns above can be used with the indefinite article.

More cases of the use of the Definite Article with countable nouns

the + adjective + noun

right	same	opposite
very	coming	necessary
usual	following	only (**but**: *an only child in the family)*
main	present	upper
left	former	lower
right	latter	
central	principle	

the + adjective in the superlative degree

BUT

a/an + adjective in the comparative degree

Особые случаи употребления определенного артикля с исчисляемыми существительными

There are a few pictures on **the walls**.
Close **the door**, please.
Somebody is waiting for you on **the stairs**.
The children are playing in **the garden**.
I enjoy going to **the theatre**.
He is at **the cinema**.
Start from **the beginning**.
Look! **The sky** is gray.
The world is running out of fuel.
The sun was bright.
She can read English books in **the original**.
I asked **the shop assistant** for help.
The conductor shouted "Fairs, please"

He is *a shop assistant*.
There is *a living-room* and two bed-rooms in his flat.
A new theatre is being built here.

Другие случаи употребления определенного артикля с исчисляемыми существительными

1. **The main thing** is to be ready with the work in time.
2. I put the book on **the upper shelf.**
3. I'd like you to collect **the necessary information**.
4. Don't worry, it's **the usual routine**.
5. I saw Tom and Mike in the street.
   The latter was wearing a funny hat.
6. **The right thing** to do in this situation is to apologise.
7. They met again **the following day**.

This is **the funniest story** I have ever heard.
This is **the most interesting book** I have ever read.

Could you think of *a better way out*?

24.2 The use of articles with SUCH and WHAT

Singular		Plural
SUCH	+ a/an	no article
WHAT		

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. Where are … children? • They are playing in … yard right behind … house.
2. I saw … both Jack and John yesterday. … latter was wearing … strange suit. • Well, he likes … extraordinary things.
3. My flat isn't very large but I like it. There is … living-room, two bedrooms and … kitchen in my flat. My room is very cozy. … walls are covered with white wallpaper. There is … carpet on … floor. … ceiling is painted white. …. windows are large.
4. Why are you looking for … book on … upper shelf? I saw you put it on … lower shelf yesterday.
5. Look at … sky. … moon is full tonight.
6. It's a pity but such … things happen to him very often. In fact he is … most unreliable person I have ever met.
7. This dictionary won't do. You'll have to buy … better dictionary. I saw … good one in … nearest book-shop.
8. He is such … spoilt child! • No wonder. He is … only child in the family. … only children are usually like that.
9. Who do you think will win in … coming election? • Such … things are usually unpredictable.
10. Will you close … door, please? I'm afraid of … draughts.

24.2 Употребление артиклей со словами SUCH и WHAT

1. It was such a boring book!
2. They are such boring people!
3. What an interesting detail!
4. What interesting details!
5. What wonderful weather we are having today!
   (**weather** is **never** used with the indefinite article.)

Упражнение 2

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где это необходимо.

1. Where are the children? • They are playing in the yard right behind the house.
2. I saw both Jack and John yesterday. The latter was wearing a strange suit. • Well, he likes extraordinary things.
3. My flat isn't very large but I like it. There is a living-room, two bedrooms and a kitchen in my flat. My room is very cozy. The walls are covered with white wallpaper. There is a carpet on the floor. The ceiling is painted white. The windows are large.
4. Why are you looking for the book on the upper shelf? I saw you put it on the lower shelf yesterday.
5. Look at the sky. The moon is full tonight.
6. It's a pity but such things happen to him very often. In fact he is the most unreliable person I have ever met.
7. This dictionary won't do. You'll have to buy a better dictionary. I saw a good one in the nearest book-shop.
8. He is such a spoilt child! • No wonder. He is an only child in the family. Only children are usually like that.
9. Who do you think will win in the coming election? • Such things are usually unpredictable.
10. Will you close the door, please? I'm afraid of draughts.

11. … main thing to do now is to collect … necessary information.
12. Can you think of … more convenient way to get to … theatre?
13. We have agreed to meet at … end of … week to discuss … further plans.
14. Is there … drugstore anywhere here? • Yes, there is. Walk straight on and turn to … right at … end of … street.
15. He is always late. It's … usual thing with him. He seems to be … laziest person in … world.
16. What are you doing here on … stairs? • I've lost … keys. So I'm thinking of … way out. • What … terrible thing to happen!
17. At … end of … month we are going to … country. We have … nice country house with … beautiful garden. … both my husband and I like growing … flowers.
18. Have you brought … necessary papers? • Of course, I have. What … strange question to ask!
19. We bought … new arm-chairs yesterday. We put one of them to … right of … sofa and … other in … corner of the room.
20. I'm tired of repeating … same thing over and over again. He is such … stubborn person.
21. Why do you always leave … car in … street? Why not look for … better place to park your car.
22. Don't sit on … ground. It's wet.
23. He is such … boring person. He thinks he always knows … best.
24. There is a good shop on … opposite side of … street. You can choose … umbrella there. I know there is … wide choice of … umbrellas there.
25. … only way to make him tell … truth is to convince him that nobody will do him any harm.
26. … ticket-collector asked us to show … tickets.
27. … young girl behind … counter asked what we wanted.
28. She was … only person I knew in that town and seemed to be … most wonderful person I had ever known.
29. He went into … house by … back door.
30. … waiter appeared carrying … tray and … napkins.

11. The main thing to do now is to collect the necessary information.
12. Can you think of a more convenient way to get to the theatre?
13. We have agreed to meet at the end of the week to discuss further plans.
14. Is there a drugstore anywhere here? • Yes, there is. Walk straight on and turn to the right at the end of the street.
15. He is always late. It's a usual thing with him. He seems to be the laziest person in the world.
16. What are you doing here on the stairs? • I've lost the keys. So I'm thinking of a way out. • What a terrible thing to happen!
17. At the end of the month we are going to the country. We have a nice country house with a beautiful garden. Both my husband and I like growing flowers.
18. Have you brought the necessary papers? • Of course, I have. What a strange question to ask!
19. We bought new armchairs yesterday. We put one of them to the right of the sofa and the other in the corner of the room.
20. I'm tired of repeating the same thing over and over again. He is such a stubborn person.
21. Why do you always leave the car in the street? Why not look for a better place to park your car.
22. Don't sit on the ground. It's wet.
23. He is such a boring person. He thinks he always knows best.
24. There is a good shop on the opposite side of the street. You can choose an umbrella there. I know there is a wide choice of umbrellas there.
25. The only way to make him tell the truth is to convince him that nobody will do him any harm.
26. The ticket-collector asked us to produce the tickets.
27. The young girl behind the counter asked what we wanted.
28. She was the only person I knew in that town and seemed to be the most wonderful person I had ever known.
29. He went into the house by the back door.
30. The waiter appeared carrying a tray and napkins.

24.3 The Definite and the Indefinite Article in the constructions with OF

the + noun + of…

the roof of the house

the top of the page

the cause of the problem

the result of the match

the son of a doctor

the city of Moscow

the face of a man

a/an + noun + of…

1. a sense of humour
   a waste of time
2. an area of 1000 sq miles
   a height of 50 metres.
3. a crowd of people
   a group of students
4. a dress of silk
   a ring of gold
5. a pack of cigarettes
   a cup of coffee
6. a child of three
   a man of forty

REMEMBER

the number of означает *определенное число, количество*

a number of означает *ряд, какое-то число, несколько*

24.3 Определенный и неопределенный артикли в конструкциях с OF

The roof of the house is flat.

The word is at **the top of the page**.

The cause of the problem is not clear yet.

The face of the man seemed familiar to me.

1. He is a man with **a perfect sense of humour**.
2. The country has **an area of 96,000 sq. miles**.
3. There is **a crowd of children** near the school-building.
4. He gave her **a scarf of silk** for her birthday.
5. Would you like **a glass of juice**?
6. She is **a woman of about thirty**.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

The number of questions they want to ask you *is* great.
• *Количество вопросов*, которые они хотят задать, велико.

There *are a number of* questions I want to ask you.
• Я хочу задать вам *ряд вопросов*.

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. He showed me … photo. … face of … man in … photo seemed familiar to me.
2. … worst thing is that she doesn't have … sense of humour.
3. Do you really think … idea of … article is original?
4. What's … point of your arrival? In my opinion it's … waste of time.
5. Now that you are … third-year-students you are supposed to read … English books in … original.
6. Have you got … scarf of wool? Cover your throat with it.
7. You should know that this isn't … right place to park your car. Now you'll have to pay … fine of $50.
8. … box of matches isn't … right thing for … children to play with. Take it away from … child.
9. … roof of … house is old. It needs mending.
10. We decided to stop at … foot of … mountain to have … rest.
11. … title of … book seems interesting. I think I'll buy … book.
12. Open … book at … page 4. … sentence is at … bottom of … page.
13. … owner of … company himself offered her this job. She got … position of … manager.
14. He is looking for … good designer to redecorate … front of … house.
15. I met him in … middle of June last. He arrived with … group of … students.
16. He is … good parachutist. … height of 1000 km can't have frightened him.
17. She is … young woman of about 25 but her life experience is great.
18. … country has … area of about 96, 000 sq miles.
19. She ordered two sandwiches and … cup of coffee. She ate one sandwich but didn't eat … other one.
20. … magazine is of great interest to me. It publishes … articles about … latest achievements in … field of science.

Упражнение 3

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где это необходимо.

1. He showed me a photo. The face of the man in the photo seemed familiar to me.
2. The worst thing is that she doesn't have a sense of humour.
3. Do you really think the idea of the article is original?
4. What's the point of your arrival? In my opinion it's a waste of time.
5. Now that you are third-year-students you are supposed to read English books in the original.
6. Have you got a scarf of wool? Cover your throat with it.
7. You should know that this isn't the right place to park your car. Now you'll have to pay a fine of $50.
8. A box of matches isn't the right thing for children to play with. Take it away from the child.
9. The roof of the house is old. It needs mending.
10. We decided to stop at the foot of the mountain to have a rest.
11. The title of the book seems interesting. I think I'll buy the book.
12. Open the book at page four. The sentence is at the bottom of the page.
13. The owner of the company himself offered her this job. She got the position of a manager.
14. He is looking for a good designer to redecorate the front of the house.
15. I met him in the middle of June last. He arrived with a group of students.
16. He is a good parachutist. A height of 1000 km can't have frightened him.
17. She is a young woman of about 25 but her life experience is great.
18. The country has an area of about 96,000 sq miles.
19. She ordered two sandwiches and a cup of coffee. She ate one sandwich but didn't eat the other one.
20. The magazine is of great interest to me. It publishes articles about the latest achievements in the field of science.

21. … mere thought that he could lose everything made him sick. It was … matter of life and death.
22. He is getting old. No wonder it's difficult for him to climb … stairs.
• Why doesn't he use … elevator?
23. Jane didn't think … jacket fitted her well. … sleeves of … jacket seemed a bit too long.
24. What's … big idea of your strange behaviour? Do you believe there is still … chance of improving … state of … things?
25. By the time he climbed to … top of … hill he was completely out of breath.
26. … surface of … Earth is uneven.
27. You can ask … shop assistant about … price of … arm-chairs.
28. He is … famous man and … millionaire. He bought this house at … price of $2 million.
29. He went to buy … pound of sugar in … nearest shop.
30. Looking at … clock above … door he saw it was 3 o'clock.

24.4 The generic use of the Definite Article

the + noun

the tiger	the nobility	the Democrats
the telephone	the public	the Protestants
the rose	the audience	the fascists
the piano	the police	the natural
	the ordinary	

REMEMBER

In this function **man** and **woman** are used without an article.

the + adjective

the old	the English
the young	the French
the rich	the Chinese

21. The mere thought that he could lose everything made him sick. It was a matter of life and death.
22. He is getting old. No wonder it's difficult for him to climb the stairs.
• Why doesn't he use the elevator?
23. Jane didn't think the jacket fitted her well. The sleeves of the jacket seemed to be a bit too long.
24. What's the big idea of your strange behaviour? Do you believe there is still a chance of improving the state of things?
25. By the time he climbed to the top of the hill he was completely out of breath.
26. The surface of the Earth is uneven.
27. You can ask the shop assistant about the price of the armchairs.
28. He is a famous man and a millionaire. He bought this house at a price of $2 million.
29. He went to buy a pound of sugar in the nearest shop.
30. Looking at the clock above the door he saw it was 3 o'clock.

24.4 Определенный артикль с обобщающим значением

The tiger is a strong animal. (But: There is a tiger in the zoo.)

My favourite flower is **the rose**. (But: This is a wonderful rose.)

He plays **the piano** very well. (But: I have a piano at home.)

The public greeted the actor with applause.

Many countries of Europe fought against **the fascists** in World War II.

The police are looking for him.

The ordinary never interested him.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

Man doesn't live by bread alone.
The country's government should take care of *the old*.
Nowadays *the young* know better.
The English are famous for their tea.
(**ВОТ**: He is **English**. He is **an Englishman**.)

Exercise 4

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. Colonel Green thought he would be able to learn to play … French horn well.
2. A lot of … Frenchmen fought against … fascists during …World War II though … country was occupied.
3. … police are looking for him. They say he is suspected of committing … crime.
4. … number of … injured isn't known yet.
5. I'm absolutely sure that … governments of … world should take care of … old and … disabled.
6. It's common knowledge that … English are fond of their weather as … weather in England is never … same two days running.
7. Unfortunately … public received my first book coldly.
8. Do you have … piano at home? • Yes, we do. My son is learning to play … piano.
9. There was a time when … woman was considered to be superior to … man.
10. … family is … basis of society.
11. … dollar is … currency in … number of countries.
12. There was … long war between … Catholics and … Protestants.
13. … actor is not only … profession. It's … life.
14. … theatre is something that has always fascinated him.
15. … Japanese suffered a lot from … "greatest" invention of … 20th century, … atom bomb.
16. … Swiss speak four languages, … German, … French, … Italian and … Romansh.
17. It was … first time in many years that … Tories failed to come to power.
18. … artist is someone who sees not only what is on … surface.
19. He is … Republican. Do you believe … Republicans will win in … forthcoming election?
20. … violet is my wife's favourite flower. You can find … violets in … house and in … garden.
21. They say that … dog is … friend of … man.

Упражнение 4

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где это необходимо.

1. Colonel Green thought he would be able to learn to play the French horn well.
2. A lot of Frenchmen fought against the fascists during World War II though the country was occupied.
3. The police are looking for him. They say he is suspected of committing a crime.
4. The number of the injured isn't known yet.
5. I'm absolutely sure that the governments of the world should take care of the old and the disabled.
6. It's common knowledge that the English are fond of their weather as the weather in England is never the same two days running.
7. Unfortunately the public received my first book coldly.
8. Do you have a piano at home? • Yes, we do. My son is learning to play the piano.
9. There was a time when woman was considered to be superior to man.
10. The family is the basis of society.
11. The dollar is the currency in a number of countries.
12. There was a long war between the Catholics and the Protestants.
13. The actor is not only a profession. It's life.
14. The theatre is something that has always fascinated him.
15. The Japanese suffered a lot from the "greatest" invention of the 20th century, the atom bomb.
16. The Swiss speak four languages, German, French, Italian and Romansh.
17. It was the first time in many years that the Tories failed to come to power.
18. An artist is someone who sees not only what is on the surface.
19. He is a Republican. Do you believe the Republicans will win in the forthcoming election?
20. The violet is my wife's favourite flower. You can find violets in the house and in the garden.
21. They say that the dog is a friend of man.

22. … telephone was invented by Bell. Nowadays there is … telephone in almost every house.
23. I believe that … dolphin is … kindest animal. I know that … dolphins very often save … seamen.
24. … airplane was invented … century ago. … first airplanes were slow and didn't fly very high. They can hardly be compared with … modern airplanes.
25. … unusual and … unknown always stirred his curiosity.

24.5 The of articles with names of seasons, times of the day, with the words lunch, dinner, breakfast

Day, night, morning, noon, afternoon, midnight, dawn, sunrise, sunset

a/an or **the** + **noun**

It is (was) + … **noun** (without any article)
It is (was) + late (early) + **noun** (without any article)

a/an + **adjective** (fine, rainy, cold, …) + **noun**

BUT: Monday morning, Tuesday evening

in (**through**, **during**) + **the** + **noun**

22. The telephone was invented by Bell. Nowadays there is a telephone in almost every house.
23. I believe that the dolphin is the kindest animal. I know that dolphins very often save seamen.
24. The airplane was invented a century ago. The first airplanes were slow and didn't fly very high. They can hardly be compared with modern airplanes.
25. The unusual and the unknown always stirred his curiosity.

24.5 Употребление артиклей с названиями времён года, времени суток, словами lunch, dinner, breakfast

I want to spend **an evening** with him.
The day seemed long.
The afternoon was hot.
We spent **a night** discussing it.

It was **night**.
It is **late morning**.

It was **a cold evening**.
It was **a good winter morning**. (**But**: Good morning! Good night!)
I met him on **a hot summer day**.
It happened on **a cold January afternoon**.

We spoke with him on **Monday morning** last.

I talked to him **in the morning**.
She tried to get him on the phone all **through the morning**.
He spoke little **during the evening**.

winter, spring, summer, autumn

the or **no article** + **noun**

I like **winter**. = I like **the winter**.
(The) summer is very short in these parts.

in/till/until/before/after + the or **no article** + **noun**

In (the) summer I enjoy riding my bicycle.
Let's wait **until (the) summer**.

through/during/for + the + noun

I have rented a cottage **for the summer**.
He worked a lot **during the winter**.

no article + **early (late)** + **noun**
a/an + **adjective** (fine, rainy, …) + **noun**

It was **early summer**. I like **late spring**.
It was **a rainy summer**.

breakfast, lunch, tea, dinner, supper

no article + **noun**

Dinner is ready. I expect **lunch** to be served in ten minutes.

after/before/at/to/for + **no article** + **noun**

What are we having **for breakfast**? Let's ask them **to lunch**.

a/an + an **adjective** (good, heavy, light, …) + **noun**

She cooked **a good dinner**. **A heavy supper** can do you harm.

the + **noun** + a **limitation**

The dinner *she made* was tasty.

24.6 The of use of articles with names of substances

no article	the	a/an or plural
ice-cream	the ice-cream	an ice-cream
stone	the stone	a stone
tea	the tea	a tea (a cup of tea or a blend of tea)

24.6 Употребление артиклей с названиями веществ

I like **ice-cream**. I like **strawberry ice-cream**. **The ice-cream** is delicious. I've only had **an ice-cream** today, I haven't eaten anything else.

It was a figure made **of stone**. He found **a stone**. **The stone** was unusual.

I drink **tea** in the morning. Two **teas**, please (two cups of tea).
I like **hot tea**. **The tea** is hot.

Exercise 5

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. It was … sunny morning. Frederick was having … breakfast on … terrace.
2. … sand was so hot that it hurt to walk barefoot. She was sitting under … tent and dreaming of … glass of … cold tea with … lemon.
3. What have you ordered? • Not much. … day is too hot to eat … big lunch. So, I have ordered … light French wine and … ice-cream. I like … ice-cream. • Could you ask for … salad and … bottle of … beer for me?
4. … doctors say that … fried meat is bad for children. I usually give my children … soup and … boiled meat or … fish for … dinner.
5. She ate … enormous lunch which consisted of … caviar, … salmon, … asparagus and … half … bottle of … wine. He himself ordered only … mutton chop.
6. It was … cold October evening. It had been snowing … whole day and … ground was covered with … snow.“What … terrible autumn,” he thought.
7. When Desmond woke up it was … late morning. “Get up! … breakfast is ready,” his wife said.
8. … Monday mornings were … worst mornings in … family.
9. … shop assistant wrapped … slippers in … paper and put them in … plastic bag.
10. It may seem strange but I like … rain. I feel so calm on … rainy days … hot sunny weather is not to my liking.
11. I’ve asked five people to … dinner on Sunday.
12. The flight was delayed so we had to spend the time from … midnight till 7 in … morning at … airport.
13. I spent … week in the library looking through … latest publications and now you say you don’t need … information I have.
14. I tried to get him on … phone several times during … morning but in vain.
15. How did you spend … day? • I spent … day playing with my children.

Упражнение 5

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где это необходимо.

1. It was a sunny morning. Frederick was having breakfast on the terrace.
2. The sand was so hot that it hurt to walk barefoot. She sat under a tent dreaming of a glass of cold tea with lemon.
3. What have you ordered? • Not much. The day is too hot to eat a big lunch. So, I have ordered a light French wine and an ice-cream. I like ice-cream. • Could you ask for a salad and a bottle of beer for me?
4. Doctors say that fried meat is bad for children. I usually give my children soup and boiled meat or fish for dinner.
5. She ate an enormous lunch which consisted of caviar, salmon, asparagus and half a bottle of wine. He himself ordered only a mutton chop.
6. It was a cold October evening. It had been snowing the whole day and the ground was covered with snow. “What a terrible autumn,” he thought.
7. When Desmond woke up it was late morning. “Get up! Breakfast is ready,” his wife said.
8. Monday mornings were the worst mornings in the family.
9. The shop assistant wrapped the slippers in paper and put them in a plastic bag.
10. It may seem strange but I like rain. I feel so calm on rainy days. Hot sunny weather is not to my liking.
11. I’ve asked five people to dinner on Sunday.
12. The flight was delayed so we had to spend the time from midnight till 7 in the morning at the airport.
13. I spent a week in the library looking through the latest publications and now you say you don’t need the information I have.
14. I tried to get him on the phone several times during the morning but in vain.
15. How did you spend the day? • I spent the day playing with my children.

16. He left right after … breakfast and said he would be back by … midnight.
17. I like to walk along the shore at … night watching … stars.
18. We had agreed to leave at … dawn so I decided to prepare … necessary things in … evening.
19. It rained … whole night but in … morning … sky was clear. … weather is so changeable in … early spring!
20. As the Butts were afraid they would be late for … dinner we decided to have … late dinner.
21. Animals are afraid of … fire.
22. We had made … fire and sat watching … dancing flames.
23. It was … cloudy morning and I was afraid … day would be rainy.
24. He worked from … early morning till late at … night to provide for … family.
25. It was … good idea to rent … cottage for … summer.
26. … late spring and … early summer are … best seasons in Great Britain.
27. … foam and … sand are often used to put out … fire.
28. Narzan is … mineral water. It's … best mineral water I have ever tasted.
29. She watched the child spreading … strawberry jam on … piece of … bread.
30. I like to swim in … cold water. One feels fit afterwards.

24.7 The use of articles with the words school, college, etc.

no article	+	school college hospital prison church town society	*in the meaning of activities associated with these places*

16. He left right after breakfast and said he would be back by midnight.
17. I like to walk along the shore at night watching the stars.
18. We had agreed to leave at dawn so I decided to prepare the necessary things in the evening.
19. It rained the whole night but in the morning the sky was clear. The weather is so changeable in early spring!
20. As the Butts were afraid they would be late for dinner we decided to have a late dinner.
21. Animals are afraid of fire.
22. We had made a fire and sat watching the dancing flames.
23. It was a cloudy morning and I was afraid the day would be rainy.
24. He worked from early morning till late at night to provide for the family.
25. I was a good idea to rent a cottage for the summer.
26. Late spring and early summer are the best seasons in Great Britain.
27. Foam and sand are often used to put out fire.
28. Narzan is a mineral water. It's the best mineral water I have ever tasted.
29. She watched the child spreading strawberry jam on a piece of bread.
30. I like to swim in cold water. One feels fit afterwards.

24.7 Употребление артиклей со словами school, college и другими

She goes **to school**. (She goes there to get knowledge.)
Pete is **in college**. (He is getting an education there.)
Why is Jane **in hospital**? She has had an accident. (She is injured.)
This man should be sent **to prison**. (to serve a sentence.)
She goes **to church** every Sunday. (She believes in God.)
I don't like to stay **in town** in summer. (I prefer to go to the country.)
We all live **in society**. (among people.)

a/an +
- school (college, …) *a building*
- town = *one town*
- society *a group of people*

the +
- school
- college
- hospital
- prison
- church
- town

REMEMBER

1. to go to work
   to be at work
   after (before) work
2. to go home
   to be (stay) at home

Exercise 6

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. Why are … children still running about … house? It's time they went to … bed.
2. He was forced to leave … school at … age of 16 and go to … work.
3. It was … late morning but Harold couldn't make himself get out of … bed.
4. Why do you always put your clothes on … bed? Do you think it's … right place for them?
5. They arranged to have … lunch in … town.
6. N. is … small town in … suburbs of London.
7. After he leaves … school he intends to go to … medical school.

There is **a school** not far from our house.
They are building **a new church** here.
N. **is a town** in the suburbs of Moscow.
They decided to organise **a society**.

He went to **the school** to speak with his daughter's teacher. (not to study)
Come to **the college**. I'll meet you. (not to study)
Are you going to **the hospital** to visit Ann? (not to take treatment)

I'm going to **the prison** to interview a few men. (not to serve a sentence.)
I went to **the church** to take some photos. (not to pray)
The town is so beautiful. (the one you like)

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

1. He doesn't have *to go to work* every day.
   He is *at work* now.
   I'll call you *after work*.
2. He is *at home* today, not *at work*.

Упражнение 6

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где это необходимо.

1. Why are the children still running about the house? It's time they went to bed.
2. He was forced to leave school at the age of 16 and go to work.
3. It was late morning but Harold couldn't make himself get out of bed.
4. Why do you always put your clothes on the bed? Do you think it's the right place for them?
5. They arranged to have lunch in town.
6. N. is a small town in the suburbs of London.
7. After he leaves school he intends to go to a medical school.

8. There is … new school in our street. They say … school is good.
9. It seems to be … comfortable bed. Let's buy it.
10. Charles was taken to … hospital last night. I'm going to … hospital tomorrow. Will you join me?
11. It's … old church. In fact it's … oldest church in … town.
12. If you don't stop concealing … truth you'll go to … prison.
13. The family go to … church every Sunday.
14. He is leaving … hospital in two days. But … doctor says he will have to stay in … bed another week.
15. I didn't go to … college as I had to earn my living since a very early age.
16. It was … first time the child had been inside … church.
17. … judge sentenced him to 5 years of … prison.
18. He sat down on … bed and closed his eyes.
19. I know … dangerous criminal has escaped from … prison and … police are looking for him.
20. What's the hurry? • I'm meeting Billy near … school.
21. … sea was calm.
22. What is John? • He is … office manager. He is at … work from eight in … morning till late at … night.
23. I can't get hold of her. Where is she? • She isn't in … town. She went to … country on … Friday.
24. What does his son do for a living? • He doesn't work. He is at … University.
25. She is … good doctor. At … hospital she often comes across difficult cases.
26. I expect him to drive us there after … work.
27. … work was to be done by … end of … week.
28. He wished he could buy … cottage near … sea and settle down there till … end of his life.
29. It's time we went … home. Mother is waiting for us at … home.
30. Unfortunately … school is often a torture for many children.

8. There is a new school in our street. They say the school is good.
9. It seems to be a comfortable bed. Let's buy it.
10. Charles was taken to hospital last night. I'm going to the hospital tomorrow.
11. It's an old church. In fact it's the oldest church in the town.
12. If you don't stop concealing the truth you'll go to prison.
13. The family go to church every Sunday.
14. He is leaving hospital in two days. But the doctor says he will have to stay in bed another week.
15. I didn't go to college as I had to earn my living since a very early age.
16. It was the first time the child had been inside a church.
17. The judge sentenced him to 5 years of prison.
18. He sat down on the bed and closed his eyes.
19. I know a dangerous criminal has escaped from prison and the police are looking for him.
20. What's the hurry? • I'm meeting Billy near the school.
21. The sea was calm.
22. What is John? • He is an office manager. He is at work from eight in the morning till late at night.
23. I can't get hold of her. Where is she? • She isn't in town. She went to the country on Friday.
24. What does his son do for a living? • He doesn't work. He is at University.
25. She is a good doctor. At the hospital she often comes across difficult cases.
26. I expect him to drive us there after work.
27. The work was to be done by the end of the week.
28. He wished he could buy a cottage near the sea and settle down there till the end of his life.
29. It's time we went home. Mother is waiting for us at home.
30. Unfortunately school is often a torture for many children.

24.8 The use of articles with uncountable nouns

The use of articles with nouns which are always uncountable

The following nouns are never used with the indefinite article but are used with the definite article or possessive pronouns.

	evidence experience	
progress permission		weather work
	nature nonsense news	
money luck		health information
	advice fun	

REMEMBER

work is used with the indefinite article if it is **a work of art** or **a work of literature**.

experience is used with the indefinite article if one means «случай из жизни».

Other uncountable nouns may sometimes be used with the indefinite article but as a rule they are not used with **a**.

24.8 Употребление артиклей с неисчисляемыми существительными.

Употребление артиклей с существительными, которые всегда являются неисчисляемыми

1. I like sunny **weather**. **The weather** is sunny today.
2. He has **money**. **The money** is on the table.
3. What interesting **news**! **The news** is very interesting.
4. It is **such** useful **information**. **The information** is so useful!
5. What **luck**! **The luck** he had is hard to come by.
6. It was **fun** for the children to play together. **The fun** we had at the seaside is unforgettable.
7. I like **nature. The nature** at this place is fascinating.
8. **Health** can't be bought for money. Take care of **your health**.
9. We are going to speak about scientific **progress. The progress** he made was great.
10. What useful **advice**! **The advice** he gave me was useful.
11. It's **difficult work**. **The work** is difficult.
12. Has he given you **permission** to leave? I don't need **your permission**.
13. What **nonsense**! He hardly realised **the** amazing **nonsense** of the situation.
14. We need **evidence**. **The evidence** we have is insufficient.
15. What you need to do the work is **experience**. **The experience** you have is enough.

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

It's *an outstanding work*. (произведение)

It was *a curious experience*. (случай из жизни)

He was white with *anger*. — *A dull anger* rose in his chest. *Impatience* is a bad trait of character. — There was *a certain impatience* in his voice.

Cases of the use of the Indefinite Article with uncountable nouns

The following nouns are used with the indefinite article in the constructions:

It's a
What a

pity
shame
pleasure
relief
comfort
disappointment
surprise

In other constructions they are used either without any article or with the definite article.

More examples of the use of articles with uncountable nouns

history	**physics**
music	**mathematics**
literature	**chemistry**
architecture	**biology**
law	**medicine**
science	**time**
poetry	**life**

These words are never used with the indefinite article when preceded by the adjectives:
modern
ancient
contemporary
English

or when we mean a sphere of people's activities. They can be used with the definite article.

Случаи употребления неопределенного артикля с неисчисляемыми существительными

It's a pity they are absent. He was filled with **pity** for them.
What a shame to behave like that! He is a person without **shame**.
It's a pleasure to have a rest. He took **pleasure** in saying it.
What a relief to know you are all right! His words brought **relief**.
It's a comfort to get a letter from him. He enjoys living in **comfort**.
It was a disappointment for him to learn the truth.
He was filled with **disappointment**.
What a nice surprise! He looked at me in **surprise**.

He felt nothing but *disappointment*.
The disappointment was great.

Другие примеры употребления артиклей с неисчисляемыми существительными

I'm interested in **English history**. I'm interested in **history**.
This is a house with **a strange history**. **The history** seemed quite credible. He isn't interested in **science**.

Physics is **a science**. (One of the many disciplines man studies).
He learned **the science** of lying and cheating in his childhood.
He likes to talk about the achievements of **modern science**.

He studies **medicine** at Oxford. Have you heard anything about the achievements of **modern medicine**? **The medicine** will help you.

NOTE:

Some of these words are used with the indefinite article in certain meanings.

a law (*a rule*)
a science (*a branch of knowledge*)
a medicine (*pills, mixtures*)
a history (*a story*)
a time (*a period of time*)
a life (*when preceded by a descriptive adjective)*

Exercise 7

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. It's … hard work to be … teacher.
2. It's … work of art. How can you be so careless with it?
3. He is … good lawyer. He has … great experience and … deep knowledge.
4. It was … funny experience. It is still fresh in my memory.
5. She wished her child … happiness.
6. … love and … pride don't usually go together.
7. He has always treated his parents with … great respect.
8. He is interested in … architecture and especially in … Greek architecture.
9. I wish you … good luck.
10. What … sunny weather we are having today!
11. But for … weather we would go for … walk.
12. … fear in his eyes made me shudder.
13. It's … pleasure to see you again.
14. Could you do it for me? • With … pleasure.
15. It's … pity that you won't be able to come.
16. I feel nothing but … pity for him.
17. It was … shame to lie to them.
18. Have … nice time!
19. … time we had there is unforgettable.
20. Five minutes is a short period of … time.

It's *a law* in our house.
Biology is *a fast developing science*.
This is *a good medicine*.
It's *an amusing history*.
There was *a time* when things were different.
They didn't have *an easy life*.

Упражнение 7

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где необходимо.

1. It's hard work to be a teacher.
2. It's a work of art. How can you be so careless with it?
3. He is a good lawyer. He has great experience and deep knowledge.
4. It was a funny experience. It is still fresh in my memory.
5. She wished her child happiness.
6. Love and pride don't usually go together.
7. He has always treated his parents with great respect.
8. He is interested in architecture and especially in Greek architecture.
9. I wish you good luck.
10. What sunny weather we are having today!
11. But for the weather we would go for a walk.
12. The fear in his eyes made me shudder.
13. It's a pleasure to see you again.
14. Could you do it for me? • With pleasure.
15. It's a pity that you won't be able to come.
16. I feel nothing but pity for him.
17. It was a shame to lie to them.
18. Have a nice time!
19. The time we had there is unforgettable.
20. Five minutes is a short period of time.

21. … time will show who is right.
22. The case is of … great importance to me.
23. He was given … permission to leave.
24. You are not supposed to ask for … permission every time you need it.
25. It's … strange advice.
26. … advice you gave me was invaluable.
27. Will you, please, sit in … silence and think?
28. … silence in … room made me nervous.
29. … life is full of … surprise.
30. It's … surprise to learn about it.
31. She looked at him in … surprise.
32. He had … interesting life.
33. … life is wonderful.
34. … life he leads makes me upset.
35. How is … life?
36. It was … disappointment to learn he had failed … exam.
37. He was filled with … disappointment with … life and with himself.
38. I can't say much about … modern literature and … modern poetry. It's … classical literature that I'm interested in.
39. She likes both … modern and … classical music.
40. … music in the distance reminded him of his childhood.
41. He took … sheet of … paper at … time and filled … paper with strange signs.
42. He appreciates … comfort.
43. It's … comfort to understand you are safe.
44. … health cannot be bought for … money.
45. Where is … money I gave you?
46. What … nonsense! I can't believe it.
47. … modern science has achieved … great results.
48. He studies … science at … university.
49. I prefer to stay at … home in … such rainy weather.
50. There was … pity in his eyes.
51. It's … pity you don't realise the danger.
52. I need … luck and … good advice.
53. He wants to study … law.
54. … History is what he has always been interested in.
55. It's … very tasty medicine.

21. Time will show who is right.
22. The case is of great importance to me.
23. He was given permission to leave.
24. You are not supposed to ask for permission every time you need it.
25. It's strange advice.
26. The advice you gave me was invaluable.
27. Will you please sit in silence and think?
28. The silence in the room made me nervous.
29. Life is full of surprise.
30. It's a surprise to learn about it.
31. She looked at him in surprise.
32. He had an interesting life.
33. Life is wonderful.
34. The life he leads makes me upset.
35. How is life?
36. It was a disappointment to learn he had failed the exam.
37. He was filled with disappointment with life and with himself.
38. I can't say much about modern literature and modern poetry. It's classical literature that I'm interested in.
39. She likes both modern and classical music.
40. The music in the distance reminded him of his childhood.
41. He took a sheet of paper at a time and filled the paper with strange signs.
42. She appreciates comfort.
43. It's a comfort to understand you are safe.
44. Health cannot be bought for money.
45. Where is the money I gave you?
46. What nonsense! I can't believe it.
47. Modern science has achieved great results.
48. He studies science at university.
49. I prefer to stay at home in such rainy weather.
50. There was pity in his eyes.
51. It's a pity you don't realise the danger
52. I need luck and good advice.
53. He wants to study law.
54. History is what he has always been interested in.
55. It's a very tasty medicine.

Exercise 8

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

"I never eat anything for … lunch," she said, "… little fish, perhaps. I wonder if they serve … salmon. And … little caviar I never mind … caviar." I told … waiter to bring her … caviar and for myself I chose … cheapest dish on … menu and that was … mutton chop. Then came … question of drink. "I never drink anything for … lunch. Except … white wine. … French wines are so light. My doctor won't let me drink anything but … champagne." I ordered … half … bottle. "What are you going to drink?" she asked. "… water," I said. She ate … salmon and she ate … caviar. She talked gaily of … art and … literature and … music. "… coffee?" I asked. "Yes, just … ice-cream and … coffee." So I ordered … coffee for myself and … ice-cream and … coffee for her.

24.9 The use of articles with proper names and personal names

No article is usually used with personal names. But sometimes if needed **the** or **a/an** can be used.

no article	the	a/an
Michael	the Michael (some particular Michael)	a Michael (some indefinite Michael)
Smith	the Smith	a Smith

Упражнение 8

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где это необходимо.

"I never eat anything for lunch," she said. "A little fish, perhaps. I wonder if they serve salmon. And a little caviar. I never mind caviar." I told the waiter to bring her caviar and for myself I chose the cheapest dish on the menu and that was a mutton chop. Then came the question of drink. "I never drink anything for lunch. Except white wine. French wines are so light. My doctor won't let me drink anything but champagne." I ordered half a bottle. "What are you going to drink?" she asked. "Water," I said. She ate the salmon and she ate the caviar. She talked gaily of art and literature and music. "Coffee?" I asked. "Yes, just an ice-cream and a coffee." So I ordered a coffee for myself and an ice-cream and a coffee for her.

From "Luncheon" by W. S. Maugham

24.9 Употребление артиклей с именами собственными, именами людей

His name is **Michael**. **Michael** has just phoned you. I'd like to meet **Michael**.

BUT:

This is **the Michael** *I told you about.* (*тот самый*)
There is **a Michael** in their group. (*какой-то*)

This is **(Mr.) Smith**. **(Mr.) Smith** phoned you yesterday. I'd like to talk to **Smith**.

BUT:

Is he *the (Mr.) Smith who phoned you yesterday?*
A (Mr.) Smith wants to talk to you.

REMEMBER

1. The is used to indicate a whole family. Mind the plural form of the name.
2. If a personal name is preceded by a title, a rank or a position no article is used.

Doctor Pole
Professor Gray
Queen Elizabeth
President Bush
Uncle Theo

The use of articles with geographical names

no article is used with

Names of

- continents
- countries (but for the cases when the name is used in the plural or consists of a word group)
- states, regions, etc.
- cities, towns, villages
- islands (if it is not a group of islands)
- mountains (if it is not a mountain range)
- lakes and waterfalls

NOTE: *Eastern Europe, South America*

BUT: *in the north of Europe, in the south of France*

ЗАПОМНИТЕ

1. Are *the Turners* coming? *The Turners* live in this house.
2. *Colonel Green* thought he played the horn well.

BUT:

The colonel thought he played the horn well.

Употребление артиклей с географическими названиями

The country is situated in **North America**.

He is from **Korea**. • Which **Korea**? • **South Korea**.

BUT: *the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United States, the United Kingdom, the Federal Republic of Germany*

Her parents live in **Colorado**. The country is situated **in northern Europe**.

BUT: *the Far East, the Middle East*

Moscow, **Denver**, **New York**

BUT: *the Hague*

Cyprus, **Sicily**

BUT: *the Bermudas, the British Isles*

Elbrus, **Everest**

BUT: *the Alps, the Rocky Mountains*

Lake Baikal, **Lake Ontario**, **Niagara Falls**

the definite article is used with names of

oceans
seas
rivers
straits and canals

The country is washed by **the Pacific Ocean**.
We are going to **the Black Sea** this summer.
The Volga flows into **the Caspian Sea**.
Great Britain is separated from Europe by **the North Sea**, **the English Channel** and **the Strait of Dover**.
the Suez Canal

The use of articles with names of streets, airports, etc.

no article is used with names of

streets
roads
squares
parks
colleges, universities

airports and stations
churches, castles, zoos, bridges

NOTE: *the White House*

the definite article is used with names of

theatres/cinemas
clubs
museums/picture galleries, halls
hotels
monuments
ships and boats
newspapers
parties and state institutions

NOTE: *Parliament*

BUT: t*he English Parliament*, *a new parliament*

Tverskaya Street in Moscow, **Fleet Street** in London
Leninskiy Prospect
Red Square in Moscow, **Trafalgar Square** in London,
Hyde Park
Oxford University, **Moscow University**
BUT: *the University of Moscow*, *the College of Arts and Science*
Hilton Airport, Victoria Station
Westminster Abbey, **London Zoo**, **Westminster Bridge**

Употребление артиклей с названиями улиц, аэропортов и др.

the Covent Garden (a theatre), **the Bolshoi Theatre**
the Rotary Club
the National Gallery, **the Albert Hall**
the Ritz
the Lincoln Memorial
the Titanic
the Times
the Republican Party, **the Ministry of Trade**, **the Department of Health**

The use of articles with names of languages

English

BUT:

the English language

Some special cases of the use of articles with proper names

a Van Gogh
a Volvo
a Sony

Exercise 9

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1. I met … Stephen Larson as I was walking down … street.
2. … USA has … area of about 3.5 million square miles. The country borders on … Mexico and … Canada.
3. … Doctor Miles phoned you when you were out.
4. … President Roosevelt is … only American President who served three terms.
5. … Taylors are coming to … dinner. • How about… Aunt Josephine? • She isn't.
6. … Little Billy often wakes up at … night.
7. Do you know that … Wests have bought … house in … Hawaii?
8. Where did you live in … Great Britain? • In … Devonshire.
9. … UK consists of … England, … Scotland, … Wales and … Northern Ireland.
10. … Volga is one of … longest rivers in … Russia.
11. … Greece is situated in … southern Europe. The country borders on … Albania, … Yugoslavia, … Bulgaria and … Turkey. … Greece is washed by … Mediterranean Sea, … Ionian Sea and … Aegean Sea.

Употребление артиклей с названиями языков

Do you speak **English**?

The English language seems rather difficult to me.

Особые случаи употребления артиклей с именами собственными

The museum bought **a Van Gogh** not long ago. (= a picture)
He drives **a Volvo**.
I've bought a new TV-set. • What is it? • It's **a Sony**.

Упражнение 9

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где это необходимо.

1. I met Stephen Larson as I was walking down the street.
2. The USA has an area of about 3.5 million square miles. The country borders on Mexico and Canada.
3. Doctor Miles phoned you when you were out.
4. President Roosevelt is the only American President who served three terms.
5. The Taylors are coming to dinner. • How about Aunt Josephine? • She isn't.
6. Little Billy often wakes up at night.
7. Do you know that the Wests have bought a house in the Hawaii?
8. Where did you live in Great Britain? • In Devonshire.
9. The UK consists of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.
10. The Volga is one of the longest rivers in Russia.
11. Greece is situated in southern Europe. The country borders on Albania, Yugoslavia, Bulgaria and Turkey. Greece is washed by the Mediterranean Sea, the Ionian Sea and the Aegean Sea.

12. … Cyprus is favoured by … tourists from different countries.
13. I know there was … time when … Niagara Falls stopped.
14. If you want to get to … England from … France you must cross … English Channel.
15. They spent their vacation in … Alps.
16. … Professor Tweed is arriving tomorrow. He has phoned to ask to meet him at … London Airport.
17. The residence of … British Queen is … Buckingham Palace.
18. The residence of … British Prime Minister is … Downing Street, 10.
19. Many people believe that … real Englishman always reads … Times at … breakfast.
20. There are fourteen bridges across … Thames. … most famous are … Tower Bridge and … Westminster Bridge.
21. … American President works in … White House.
22. We are going to spend three weeks on board … Victoria.
23. He speaks two languages, … English and … French. • Doesn't he speak … German language?
24. … Netherlands border on … Germany and … Belgium. The country is washed by … North Sea. … official language is … Dutch. … capital is … Amsterdam.
25. He graduated from … Oxford University two years ago.
26. The climate in … Crimea is rather mild.
27. At what hotel did he stop when he came to … Moscow? • At … President Hotel.
28. … British Museum in … London is famous all over … world.
29. This museum has bought … Matisse.
30. When you are in … Moscow go to … Pushkin Museum.
31. He has bought … new car. It's … Ford.
32. There was … terrible crash at … corner of … Park Road and … Carter Road.
33. … Stratford is … Shakespeare's birthplace.
34. … Prince Edward Island is … smallest province in … Canada.
35. … Charing Cross Road is … street in … London. It is famous for its shops.
36. … Regent's Park in … London is large. … London Zoo is there.

12. Cyprus is favoured by tourists from different countries.
13. I know there was a time when Niagara Falls stopped.
14. If you want to get to England from France you must cross the English Channel.
15. They spent their vacation in the Alps.
16. Professor Tweed is arriving tomorrow. He has phoned to ask to meet him at London Airport.
17. The residence of the British Queen is Buckingham Palace.
18. The residence of the British Prime Minister is Downing Street, 10.
19. Many people believe that a real Englishman always reads the Times at breakfast.
20. There are fourteen bridges across the Thames. The most famous are Tower Bridge and Westminster Bridge.
21. The American President works in the White House.
22. We are going to spend three weeks on board the Victoria.
23. He speaks two languages, English and French. • Doesn't he speak the German language?
24. The Netherlands border on Germany and Belgium. The country is washed by the North Sea. The official language is Dutch. The capital is Amsterdam.
25. He graduated from Oxford University two years ago.
26. The climate in the Crimea is rather mild.
27. At what hotel did he stop when he came to Moscow? • At the President Hotel.
28. The British Museum in London is famous all over the world.
29. This museum has bought a Matisse.
30. When you are in Moscow go to the Pushkin Museum.
31. He has bought a new car. It's a Ford.
32. There was a terrible crash at the corner of Park Road and Carter Road.
33. Stratford is Shakespeare's birthplace.
34. Prince Edward Island is the smallest province in Canada.
35. Charing Cross Road is a street in London.
36. Regent's Park in London is large. London Zoo is there.

Exercise 10

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

There is … river in … South America that runs both ways — up and down. It is called … Cassiquiare Canal, and it is … natural waterway. It sometimes flows into … Orinoco (a river) and sometimes into … Amazon. When … Amazon is in flood it flows into … Orinoco, and when … Orinoco is in … flood it flows into … Amazon.

It's interesting to know that … cotton was first cultivated and manufactured … hundreds of years ago in … India and … Middle East. It was cultivated and manufactured independently in … China and … Central and … South America. … Italy was … first country in … Europe that manufactured … cotton. … quality of … manufactures in … European countries was very poor as compared with … Indian textiles, which were made with … experience of … centuries.

Exercise 11

REVISION

Fill in the blanks with articles where necessary.

1. The accident happened because he had been driving at … speed of above 100 km.
2. … life is impossible without … water.
3. He knew a lot about … modern Literature.
4. I'd like to comment on … present state of things.
5. … man of about forty left … house five minutes ago.
6. The boy asked for … second sweet but his parents told him they had no more.
7. Where does … Professor Jones live? • In … Netherlands.
8. It was … early morning but she was already leaving … house.
9. What … pleasure it is to stay at … home on … wet day like this!
10. Everybody knows that … dog is … friend of … man.

Упражнение 10

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где необходимо.

There is a river in South America that runs both ways — up and down. It is called the Cassiquiare Canal, and it is a natural waterway. It sometimes flows into the Orinoco (a river) and sometimes into the Amazon. When the Amazon is in flood it flows into the Orinoco, and when the Orinoco is in flood it flows into the Amazon.

It's interesting to know that cotton was first cultivated and manufactured hundreds of years ago in India and the Middle East. It was cultivated and manufactured independently in China and Central and South America. Italy was the first country in Europe that manufactured cotton. The quality of the manufactures in European countries was very poor as compared with Indian textiles, which were made with the experience of centuries.

Упражнение 11

ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где это необходимо.

1. The accident happened because he had been driving at a speed of above 100 km.
2. Life is impossible without water.
3. He knew a lot about modern Literature.
4. I'd like to comment on the present state of things.
5. A man of about forty left the house five minutes ago.
6. The boy asked for a second sweet but his parents told him they had no more.
7. Where does Professor Jones live? • In the Netherlands.
8. It was early morning but she was already leaving the house.
9. What a pleasure it is to stay at home on a wet day like this!
10. Everybody knows that the dog is a friend of man.

11. He seems to know much about … Switzerland and … Swiss.
12. Do you know who invented … radio?
13. Who gave you … permission to leave?
14. I think that … young know more nowadays than … old though … old have … life experience.
15. There are … great number of disputes between … Russia and … Japan about … Kurils.
16. Do you know where … Philippines are situated?
    • Of course. In … south-eastern Asia.
17. I felt that I had given … right answer.
18. We discussed … latest news at … breakfast.
19. I'll supply you with … necessary information.
20. Are you sure this is … only way to do it?
21. He left … theatre at … end of … third act.
22. Have … second try.
23. She had … glass of … orange juice.
24. Are you sure he has … sense of humour?
25. How long will it take them to cover … distance of 10 miles?
26. You'll have to pay … fine of $100.
27. He went on climbing … stairs.
28. … Aunt Polly was always displeased with … Tom.
29. … weather is sunny today.
30. Once on … cold January afternoon he was sitting in my room drinking … tea.
31. … rose is … beautiful flower.
32. He has … great experience of such … work.
33. She spent … better part of her life looking after … sick.
34. I'm interested in … ancient philosophy.
35. … Mississippi is … longest river in … USA.
36. He has bought … new TV-set. It's … "Sony"
37. I wouldn't say this is … good news.
38. What would you like to eat?
    • … salad, … soup, … steak and … coffee, please.
39. My grandmother is in … hospital again.
40. … Browns live in … next house.

11. He seems to know much about Switzerland and the Swiss.
12. Do you know who invented the radio?
13. Who gave you permission to leave?
14. I think that the young know more nowadays than the old though the old have life experience.
15. There are a great number of disputes between Russia and Japan about the Kurils.
16. Do you know where the Philippines are situated?
    • Of course. In south-eastern Asia.
17. I felt that I had given the right answer.
18. We discussed the latest news at breakfast.
19. I'll supply you with the necessary information.
20. Are you sure this is the only way to do it?
21. He left the theatre at the end of the third act.
22. Have a second try.
23. She had a glass of orange juice.
24. Are you sure he has a sense of humour?
25. How long will it take them to cover a distance of 10 miles?
26. You'll have to pay a fine of $100.
27. He went on climbing the stairs.
28. Aunt Polly was always displeased with Tom.
29. The weather is sunny today.
30. Once on a cold January afternoon he was sitting in my room drinking tea.
31. The rose is a beautiful flower.
32. He has great experience of such work.
33. She spent the better part of her life looking after the sick.
34. I'm interested in ancient philosophy.
35. The Mississippi is the longest river in the USA.
36. He has bought a new TV-set. It's a "Sony".
37. I wouldn't say this is good news.
38. What would you like to eat?
    • A salad, a soup, a steak and a coffee, please.
39. My grandmother is in hospital again.
40. The Browns live in the next house.

Exercise 12

Fill in the blanks with articles if necessary.

1.

One afternoon I was sitting on … stone wall in front of … villa, looking out onto … sea when … man came up to me and asked if I was … American. I said I was and he pointed toward … villa and said his master wanted to see me. I followed … man up to … villa. To my surprise it was not … man on … verandah but … white-haired woman of about sixty.

"… young man, are you … American?" she asked.

"Yes, ma'am," I said.

"Well, what are you? … general?"

"No ma'am. I'm … lieutenant. I'm … lieutenant Loggins."

"I'm Mrs. Blair. I'm from … States, too. Would you join me for … cup of … tea, … Lieutenant?"

Without waiting for … answer she turned and walked towards … door. I followed her. … drawing room was just what I had expected. It was large and … furniture was heavy and expensive. … walls were covered with … paintings. There were … vases filled with … flowers everywhere. She offered me … chair, picked up … small silver bell and twinkled it. … middle-aged maid appeared. "We'll have … tea now, Anna," Mrs. Blair said, "and please tell Mr. Blair we have … company."

2.

… farm lay in … hollow among … Somersetshire hills, … old-fashioned house made of … stone and surrounded by … barns and … outhouses. Over … doorway … date when it was built was carved, 1673, and … house, grey and weather-beaten looked as much … part of … landscape as … trees that surrounded it. … George Meadows was now … man of fifty and his wife was … year or two younger. But … master of … house was not … George Meadows. It was his mother. She was … woman of seventy. Her word was … law in … house and on … farm.

Упражнение 12

Заполните пропуски артиклями, где это необходимо.

1.

One afternoon I was sitting on a stone wall in front of a villa looking out onto the sea when a man came up to me and asked if I was American. I said I was and he pointed toward the villa and said his master wanted to see me. I followed the man up to the villa. To my surprise it was not a man on the verandah but a white-haired woman of about sixty.

"Young man, are you American?" she asked.

"Yes, ma'am," I said.

"Well, what are you? A general?"

"No, ma'am. I'm a lieutenant. I'm Lieutenant Loggins."

"I'm Mrs. Blair. I'm from the States, too. Would you join me for a cup of tea, Lieutenant?"

Without waiting for an answer she turned and walked towards the door. I followed her. The drawing room was just what I had expected. It was large and the furniture was heavy and expensive. The walls were covered with paintings. There were vases filled with flowers everywhere. She offered me a chair, picked up a small silver bell and twinkled it. A middle-aged maid appeared. "We'll have tea now, Anna," Mrs. Blair said, "and please tell Mr. Blair we have company."

2.

The farm lay in a hollow among the Somersetshire hills, an old-fashioned house made of stone and surrounded by barns and outhouses. Over the doorway the date when it was built was carved, 1673, and the house, grey and weather-beaten looked as much a part of the landscape as the trees that surrounded it. George Meadows was now a man of fifty and his wife was a year or two younger. But the master of the house was not George Meadows. It was his mother. She was a woman of seventy. Her word was law in the house and on the farm.

3.

… Albert Edward was … non-smoker and … total abstainer, but he liked … glass of beer with his dinner and when he was tired he enjoyed … cigarette. And now he looked for … shop where he could buy … packet of … cigarettes. It was … long street with all sorts of … shops, but there was not … single one where you could buy … cigarettes. “I can’t be … only man that walks along this street and wants … smoke. If some fellow opened … little shop he might make … good money, … tobacco and … sweets, you know.” He opened … shop. He did very well and in … year it struck him that he could take … second shop and put … manager in. He found another long street that hadn’t got … tobacconist in it. This was … success too. He opened more shops and soon made … fortune of thirty thousand pounds.

3.

Albert Edward was a non-smoker and a total abstainer, but he liked a glass of beer with his dinner and when he was tired he enjoyed a cigarette. And now he looked for a shop where he could buy a packet of cigarettes. It was a long street with all sorts of shops, but there was not a single one where you could buy cigarettes. “I can’t be the only man that walks along this street and wants a smoke. If some fellow opened a little shop he might make good money, tobacco and sweets, you know.” He opened a shop. He did very well and in a year it struck him that he could take a second shop and put a manager in. He found another long street that hadn’t got a tobacconist in it. This was a success too. He opened more shops and soon made a fortune of thirty thousand pounds.

UNIT 25 REVISION

TEST

1. He enjoys … especially on a frosty day like this.
   ❶ skating ❷ to skate
2. It is such a wonderful painting. It … by a well-known artist.
   ❶ must have been painted ❷ must be painted ❸ must painted
3. … clothes must be very expensive. Do you know where he bought … .
   ❶ these, it ❷ this, them ❸ these, them
4. Much time … since we met last.
   ❶ passed ❷ has passed ❸ had passed
5. He himself told me he … us.
   ❶ will join ❷ would join ❸ is joining
6. I'm afraid I don't know when … .
   ❶ they come ❷ they will come ❸ would come
7. I can't tell you who … . It's the first time I … .
   ❶ is this man, I see him ❷ this man is, I've seen him
   ❸ this man is, I see him
8. The dish smells … . It tastes … too.
   ❶ delicious, good ❷ delicious, well ❸ deliciously, well
9. She had cooked … and was reading a paper.
   ❶ a dinner ❷ dinner ❸ the dinner
10. You didn't see me … the house as I used the back door.
    ❶ enter ❷ entered ❸ to enter
11. After … to him she felt more confident.
    ❶ having talked ❷ talking ❸ talked
12. It's five years since he … here, …?
    ❶ has been living, isn't it ❷ has been living, hasn't it
    ❸ lives here, isn't it ❹ lived, isn't it
13. He said he could afford … anything she wanted.
    ❶ buying ❷ to buy ❸ buy

УРОК 25 ПОВТОРЕНИЕ

ТЕСТ

1. ❶ He enjoys skating especially on a frosty day like this.
2. ❶ It is such a wonderful painting. It must have been painted by a well-known artist.
3. ❸ These clothes are very expensive. Do you know where he bought them?
4. ❷ Much time has passed since we met last.
5. ❷ He himself told me he would join us.
6. ❷ I'm afraid I don't know when they will come.
7. ❷ I can't tell you who this man is. It's the first time I've seen him.
8. ❶ The dish smells delicious. It tastes good too.
9. ❷ She had cooked dinner and was reading a paper.
10. ❶ You didn't see me enter the house as I used the back door.
11. ❷ After talking to him she felt more confident.
12. ❹ It's five years since he lived here, isn't it?
13. ❷ He said he could afford to buy anything she wanted.

14. In July we … many towns on … .
❶ visited, Volga ❷ visited, the Volga ❸ have visited, the Volga

15. He says he used … here. But now he hardly recognises the place.
❶ to living ❷ to live ❸ live

16. If he … so proud, he … our help. But he didn't.
❶ weren't, would accept ❷ weren't, would have accepted
❸ hadn't been, would have accepted

17. I … home when the telephone … .
❶ was leaving, rang ❷ had left, was ringing ❸ left, had been ringing

18. I have … news and it's the best news you have ever heard.
❶ a few ❷ several ❸ some

19. Who … you … come here without an invitation?
❶ told, can ❷ said, could ❸ told, could

20. The Cabinet … to vote on the question now.
❶ has decided ❷ decided ❸ decides

21. If I … a decision yesterday, I … you about it at once.
❶ took, would have told ❷ had taken, would have told
❸ had taken, would tell

22. He has got used to … late on his days off.
❶ sleeping ❷ sleep

23. Jack …yet. He … .
❶ hasn't come, must be oversleeping ❷ didn't come, must oversleep
❸ hasn't come, must have overslept

24. I … you the necessary sum of money, if I … it.
❶ would lend, had had ❷ will lend, had ❸ would lend, had

25. The doctor said he … morning exercises every day.
❶ must to do ❷ should do ❸ should have do

26. It sounds … . It's … thing I've ever heard.
❶ terrible, the most terrifying ❷ terribly, most terrifying
❸ terribly, the most terrifying

27. His poems are … the ones his brother writes.
❶ the most talented than ❷ as talented as ❸ more talented as

14. ❷ In July we visited many towns on the Volga.

15. ❷ He says he used to live here but now he hardly recognises the place.

16. ❷ If he weren't so proud he would have accepted our help.

17. ❶ I was leaving home when the telephone rang.

18. ❸ I have some news and it's the best news you've ever heard.

19. ❷ Who said you could come here without an invitation?

20. ❶ The Cabinet has decided to vote on the question now.

21. ❷ If I had taken a decision yesterday I would have told you about it at once.

22. ❶ He has got used to sleeping late on his days off.

23. ❸ Jack hasn't come yet. He must have overslept.

24. ❸ I would lend you the necessary sum of money if I had it.

25. ❷ The doctor said he should do morning exercises every day.

26. ❶ It sounds terrible. It's the most terrifying thing I've ever heard.

27. ❷ His poems are as talented as the ones his brother writes.

28. … you ask the doctor for help … for you.
❶ the sooner, the better ❷ sooner, better ❸ the soon, the good

29. He always has such interesting ideas that we couldn't help …
to him for help.
❶ turning ❷ to turn ❸ turn

30. … the reporters' questions we rose to leave the room.
❶ answering ❷ having answered ❸ on having answered

31. He stated he had never been there … .
❶ neither ❷ too ❸ either

32. The teacher wanted the class … a greater interest in the subject.
❶ taking ❷ to take ❸ take

33. This is a very difficult puzzle. Very … people were able to do it.
But … than I had imagined.
❶ few, more ❷ little, much more ❸ few, much more

34. What … last night? • I don't know.
❶ did happen ❷ had happened ❸ happened

35. He … know when the next meeting … place.
❶ didn't, will take ❷ didn't, would take ❸ doesn't, takes

36. If you … daily you would play the guitar well.
❶ practise ❷ practised ❸ will practise

37. Please, tell her … the room. Let her … .
❶ not to leave, stay ❷ not leave, to stay ❸ not leaving, staying

38. Is he still … examined? How long … examined?
❶ being, was he ❷ been, is he ❸ being, has he been

39. For her 30th birthday she … a ring of gold.
❶ has been given ❷ was given ❸ gave

40. She … something in the garden now. Do you want me to send for her?
❶ must plant ❷ must be planting ❸ must have planted

41. I went to bed early as I … for Madrid the next morning.
❶ would leave ❷ was leaving ❸ left

28. ❶ The sooner you ask the doctor for help the better for you.

29. ❶ He always has such interesting ideas that we couldn't help turning to him for help.

30. ❷ Having answered the reporters' questions we rose to leave the room.

31. ❸ He stated he had never been there either.

32. ❷ The teacher wanted the class to take a greater interest in the subject.

33. ❶ This is a very difficult puzzle. Very few people were able to do it. But more than I had imagined.

34. ❸ What happened last night? • I don't know.

35. ❷ He didn't know when the next meeting would take place.

36. ❷ If you practised daily you would play the guitar well.

37. ❶ Please, tell her not to leave the room. Let her stay.

38. ❸ Is he still being examined? How long has he been examined?

39. ❷ For her 30th birthday she was given a ring of gold.

40. ❷ She must be planting something in the garden now. Do you want me to send for her?

41. ❷ I went to bed early as I was leaving for Madrid the next morning.

42. … of two weeks was just what she wanted.
❶ the holiday ❷ holiday ❸ a holiday

43. When I came into the room I saw her … at the window.
❶ to stand ❷ stand ❸ standing

44. … unpleasant news!
❶ what an ❷ how ❸ what

45. What time … meet him? • The plane … at 5.
❶ do I have to, will arrive ❷ am I to, arrives ❸ will I, is arriving

46. The play had an unexpected ending, … ?
❶ didn't it ❷ hadn't it ❸ had it

47. The man … to five years of prison for what he … .
❶ sentenced, had done ❷ sentenced, did ❸ was sentenced, had done

48. In case anything … you … in touch with me.
❶ happens, should get ❷ will happen, should get ❸ will happen, should have got

49. He wouldn't be cross with her if she … his umbrella.
❶ didn't lose ❷ hadn't lost ❸ had lost

50. There was … in the house yesterday and one person died in it.
❶ a fire ❷ fire ❸ the fire

51. … I couldn't join you last night.
❶ What pity ❷ How a pity ❸ What a pity

52. She … the receiver when the telephone rang again.
❶ just removed ❷ has just removed ❸ had just removed

53. You … me from the station. I'll walk.
❶ needn't collect ❷ needn't have collected ❸ don't need to collect

54. By the time they … to the theatre the play … .
❶ had got, began ❷ got, had begun ❸ got, began

55. … letters have been answered yet.
❶ none of this ❷ none of these ❸ no of these

56. Have you asked … to come?
❶ someone more ❷ any more ❸ anyone else

57. When he woke up he realised that he … a shirt and trousers.
❶ was still wearing ❷ still wore ❸ has still been wearing

42. ❸ A holiday of two weeks was just what she wanted.

43. ❸ When I came into the room I saw her standing at the window.

44. ❸ What unpleasant news!

45. ❷ What time am I to meet him? • The plane arrives at 5.

46. ❶ The play had an unexpected ending, didn't it?

47. ❸ The man was sentenced to five years of prison for what he had done.

48. ❶ In case anything happens you should get in touch with me.

49. ❷ He wouldn't be cross with her if she hadn't lost his umbrella.

50. ❶ There was a fire in the house yesterday and one person died in it.

51. ❸ What a pity I couldn't join you last night.

52. ❸ She had just removed the receiver when the telephone rang again.

53. ❶ You needn't collect me from the station. I'll walk.

54. ❷ By the time they got to the theatre the play had already begun.

55. ❷ None of these letters have been answered yet.

56. ❸ Have you asked anyone else to come?

57. ❶ When he woke up he realised he was still wearing a shirt and trousers.

58. It's important to … clearly and distinctly.
❶ can speak ❷ be able to speak ❸ can to speak

59. He … admitted that he had never done any work in his life.
He was absolutely … .
❶ free, freely ❷ freely, free ❸ free, free

60. He insisted … and I obeyed. What else could I do?
❶ on me to leave ❷ on my leaving ❸ my leaving

61. As soon as I … the money I … the picture.
❶ saved, will buy ❷ save, will buy ❸ will save, will buy

62. I was given … to think things over.
❶ more two days ❷ two else days ❸ two other days

63. I know they … of … to another place.
❶ are thinking, moving ❷ think, move ❸ think, to move

64. The man the police … has left the country.
❶ are looking for ❷ looks for ❸ is looking for

65. She hardly spoke, … ?
❶ doesn't she? ❷ didn't she ❸ did she ❹ did she not

66. How … !
❶ hard does he work ❷ he works hard ❸ hard he works

67. I wish I … more time.
❶ would have ❷ had ❸ have ❹ will have

68. … he gets, … .
❶ the richer, the more friends he has ❷ more rich, more he has friends
❸ richer, more friends he has ❹ the richer, the more he has friends

69. It's … if you go by plane.
❶ more quickly ❷ quicker ❸ the quicker ❹ quicklier

70. That … be Roger — it's too early.
❶ can't ❷ mustn't ❸ shouldn't

71. I wonder if John … tonight.
❶ calls ❷ will call ❸ is calling

72. Who … you this picture?
❶ has given ❷ had given ❸ gave

58. ❷ It's important to be able to speak clearly and distinctly.

59. ❷ He freely admitted that he had never done any work in his life.
He was absolutely free.

60. ❷ He insisted on my leaving and I obeyed. What else could I do?

61. ❷ As soon as I save the money I'll buy the picture.

62. ❸ I was given two other days to think things over.

63. ❶ I know they are thinking of moving to another place.

64. ❶ The man the police are looking for has left the country.

65. ❸ She hardly spoke, did she?

66. ❸ How hard he works!

67. ❷ I wish I had more time.

68. ❶ The richer he gets, the more friends he has.

69. ❷ It's quicker if you go by plane.

70. ❶ That can't be Roger — it's too early.

71. ❷ I wonder if John will call tonight.

72. ❸ Who gave you this picture?

73. This is the first time I … in a large city.
❶ am driving ❷ drove ❸ have driven ❹ drive

74. I can't use my room yet. It … .
❶ is still repaired ❷ is still being repaired ❸ is still repairing
❹ is still been repaired

75. Nobody liked it, … ?
❶ did he ❷ did they ❸ didn't he ❹ didn't they

76. I'm looking forward … you.
❶ visiting ❷ to visiting ❸ to visit

77. Try … be late.
❶ not to ❷ to not ❸ don't

78. People can't live very long without … .
❶ to eat ❷ not eating ❸ eating ❹ eat

79. His parents don't want … married.
❶ him to ❷ that he gets ❸ him to get ❹ him get

80. I'm not sure what … .
❶ do they mean? ❷ they mean ❸ they are meaning

81. The manager … me to come in.
❶ said ❷ told ❸ told to

82. The Browns have … money.
❶ much ❷ a lot of ❸ many

83. Though I felt … I tried to smile … .
❶ angrily, friendly ❷ angry, friendly ❸ angry, in a friendly way

84. How many books by this writer … ?
❶ have you ❷ have you got ❸ are you having

85. Alice … have a baby.
❶ shall ❷ is going to ❸ will

86. My husband is much taller … me.
❶ than ❷ then ❸ that ❹ as

87. This is … summer for the last several years.
❶ the most bad ❷ the worse ❸ the worst ❹ worst

73. ❸ This is the first time I have driven in a large city.

74. ❷ I can't use my room yet. It is still being repaired.

75. ❷ Nobody liked it, did they?

76. ❷ I'm looking forward to visiting you.

77. ❶ Try not to be late.

78. ❸ People can't live very long without eating.

79. ❸ His parents don't want him to get married.

80. ❷ I'm not sure what they mean.

81. ❷ The manager told me to come in.

82. ❷ The Browns have a lot of money.

83. ❸ Though I felt angry I tried to smile in a friendly way.

84. ❷ How many books by this writer have you got?

85. ❷ Alice is going to have a baby.

86. ❶ My husband is much taller than me.

87. ❸ This is the worst summer for the last several years.

88. Is there anything … you'd like me to do?
❶ more ❷ else ❸ other

89. Has it stopped … yet?
❶ raining ❷ to rain ❸ rain

90. They lived … happy life.
❶ the ❷ a ❸ an

91. Do you know how long St. Petersburg … the capital of Russia?
❶ has been ❷ is ❸ was ❹ had been

92. I see you … what I … .
❶ don't understand, say ❷ aren't understanding, am saying ❸ don't understand, am saying

93. I don't need such a large suitcase. I'm going to take … clothes with me.
❶ little ❷ a little ❸ few ❹ a few

94. … no need to discuss it again.
❶ there is ❷ it is ❸ there isn't ❹ there are

95. His answer was excellent, as … .
❶ usual ❷ usually

96. They were glad to watch the children … .
❶ playing and laughing ❷ to play and laugh ❸ play and laugh ❹ played and laughed

97. By the time we … , everybody … asleep.
❶ had returned, was ❷ returned, had been ❸ returned, was ❹ returned, was being

98. What time … home today?
❶ have he come ❷ has he come ❸ did he come

99. I was told when … .
❶ would he be back ❷ he will be back ❸ he would back ❹ he would be back

100. I haven't spoken to him for the … few days.
❶ last ❷ latest ❸ late

101. There're a lot of alligators in … Nile.
❶ a ❷ the ❸ an ❹ —

88. ❷ Is there anything else you'd like me to do?

89. ❶ Has it stopped raining yet?

90. ❷ They lived a happy life.

91. ❸ Do you know how long St. Petersburg was the capital of Russia?

92. ❸ I see you don't understand what I am saying.

93. ❸ I don't need such a large suitcase. I'm going to take few clothes with me.

94. ❶ There is no need to discuss it again.

95. ❶ His answer was excellent, as usual.

96. ❶ They were glad to watch the children playing and laughing.

97. ❸ By the time we returned, everybody was asleep.

98. ❸ What time did he come home today?

99. ❹ I was told when he would be back.

100. ❶ I haven't spoken to him for the last few days.

101. ❷ There're a lot of alligators in the Nile.

102. Did you hear me come in last night? • No, I … asleep.
❶ should have been ❷ must have been ❸ must be ❹ can have been

103. I'd rather go there tomorrow. • … I.
❶ so do ❷ so had ❸ so would ❹ so did

104. Which of them … the answer?
❶ does know ❷ know ❸ knows

105. I was sorry I … nicer to him.
❶ wasn't ❷ hadn't been ❸ wouldn't be

106. One day everybody … to hear the story.
❶ can ❷ will be able to ❸ may

107. … how to do it properly.
❶ They explained us ❷ We were explained ❸ It was explained to us

108. He hoped that they … to get away if Nick … fast enough.
❶ will manage, drives ❷ will manage, will drive
❸ would manage, would drive ❹ would manage, drove

109. I … upset.
❶ felt she ❷ felt her to be ❸ felt that she was ❹ felt her be

110. It's started raining. You … the flowers.
❶ needn't have watered ❷ mustn't have watered
❸ didn't have to water ❹ shouldn't have watered

111. His … brother works at a bank.
❶ eldest ❷ elder ❸ older ❹ oldest

112. I was nearly late for work this morning.
I … for the bus for half an hour.
❶ waited ❷ was waiting ❸ had been waiting ❹ have waited

113. Each present was just what she … .
❶ wanted ❷ had wanted ❸ had been wanting ❹ has wanted

114. When I entered, he … his clothes and … dinner.
❶ changed, had ❷ had changed, had had ❸ had changed, was having
❹ was changing, having

102. ❷ No, I must have been asleep.

103. ❸ So would I.

104. ❸ Which of them knows the answer?

105. ❷ I was sorry I hadn't been nicer to him.

106. ❷ One day everybody will be able to hear the story.

107. ❸ It was explained to us how to do it properly.

108. ❹ He hoped that they would manage to get away if Nick drove fast enough.

109. ❸ I felt that she was upset.

110. ❶ It's started raining. You needn't have watered the flowers.

111. ❷ His elder brother works at a bank.

112. ❸ I had been waiting for the bus for half an hour.

113. ❷ Each present was just what she had wanted.

114. ❸ When I entered, he had changed his clothes and was having dinner.

115. Do you know … of these people?
❶ somebody ❷ some ❸ any ❹ anybody

116. I don't remember how old … .
❶ his sister is ❷ is his sister ❸ his sister

117. This accident … for several days already.
❶ has been talked ❷ has being talked about
❸ is being talked about ❹ has been talked about

118. Our plane … at 10 o'clock.
❶ leaves ❷ is leaving ❸ is going to

119. Whose … ?
❶ books is this ❷ are these books ❸ books are these ❹ books are this

120. You've made great progress. You have … mistakes now.
❶ a few ❷ a little ❸ less ❹ fewer

115. ❸ Do you know any of these people?

116. ❶ I don't remember how old his sister is.

117. ❹ This accident has been talked about for several days already.

118. ❶ Our plane leaves at 10 o'clock.

119. ❸ Whose books are these?

120. ❹ You have fewer mistakes now.

ПРАКТИКУМ ПО ГРАММАТИКЕ АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА —

это общий курс английской грамматики, позволяющий:

- сформировать грамматическую компетенцию;
- систематизировать ранее полученные знания английского языка;
- организовать работу дома и в аудитории;
- расширить словарный запас и развить коммуникативные навыки.

Пособие подходит для:

- учащихся школ, колледжей, лицеев, слушателей курсов, преподавателей;
- лиц, изучающих английский язык самостоятельно.

ПРАКТИКУМ ПО ГРАММАТИКЕ АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

Зверховская Елена Владимировна, доцент кафедры второго иностранного языка педагогических факультетов Московского государственного лингвистического университета (МГЛУ), педагогический стаж более 20 лет. Соавтор книг «Секреты английской грамматики» и «Грамматика английского языка. Теория. Практика».

Косиченко Елена Федоровна, кандидат филологических наук, доцент, профессор кафедры второго иностранного языка педагогических факультетов МГЛУ, педагогический стаж более 20 лет. Соавтор пособий для преподавателей и студентов «Expand Your Horizons», соавтор книг «Секреты английской грамматики» и «Грамматика английского языка. Теория. Практика», автор более 30 научных публикаций.

Предлагаемый практикум по грамматике английского языка является одновременно кратким систематическим справочником, содержащим объяснения правил употребления грамматики, и сборником упражнений. Особенностью книги является ее структура, в соответствии с которой левая сторона разворота содержит правила и упражнения, а правая — примеры, иллюстрирующие употребление правил, и ключи к упражнениям. Основополагающим принципом построения книги выступает опора на родной язык, что делает работу с грамматикой более эффективной и предупреждает возникновение типичных ошибок.

Начало каждого раздела предваряют таблицы, в которых схематично изложены основные положения соответствующей грамматической темы, что дает возможность учащимся повторить правило прежде, чем приступать к выполнению упражнений. Параллельно таблицам на правом развороте книги даны примеры использования этого правила. В конце отдельных тематических разделов помещен урок на повторение, содержащий упражнения повышенной трудности, которые могут быть использованы для закрепления изученных тем и контроля. Универсальность пособия-справочника и наличие ключей к упражнениям позволяет эффективно использовать его как для групповых, так и для индивидуальных занятий.

ISBN 978-5-9775-3578-6

БХВ-ПЕТЕРБУРГ
191036, Санкт-Петербург,
Гончарная ул., 20
Тел.: (812) 717-10-50,
339-54-17, 339-54-28
E-mail: mail@bhv.ru
Internet: www.bhv.ru